Gc
942.0001
H35w
v.3
1438390

M. L

REYNOLDS HISTORICAL
GENEALOGY COLLECTION

ALLEN COUNTY PUBLIC LIBRARY
3 1833 00668 8904

THE

WORKS

OF

Thomas Hearne, M. A.

PRINTED FOR SAMUEL BAGSTER, IN THE STRAND. 1810.

VOL. III.

HEARNE

CONTAINING THE FIRST VOLUME OF

PETER LANGTOFT'S CHRONICLE.

Gc
942.0001
H35w
v. 3

Mercier and Chervet, Printers,
Bartholomew Close, London.

Peter Langtoft's CHRONICLE,

81, Strand,
April 21, 1810.

ADVERTISEMENT.

Should a sufficient number of Subscribers be obtained, the WHOLE of Hearne's Publications will be reprinted uniformly with the Chronicles of *Robert of Gloucester* and *Peter Langtoft*.

Such Gentlemen or Public Libraries as intend subscribing to the Set are requested to be early in the communication of their Names, as the number of copies to be printed will be confined to the number subscribed for.

No name can be received after the first of the succeeding publications is gone to press, nor will any copies be printed for extra sale.

The ACTA APOSTOLORUM will be published early in the Series.

IN THE PRESS,

An exact Reprint, *(in Folio, Page for Page,)* from the Edition of 1661, of *Cambria Triumphans, or, Brittain in it's Perfect Lustre;* by PERCY ENDERBIE, *Gent.*

The impression is but small—it consists of 150 Copies on a Paper rather larger than Super Royal Quarto, and 100 Copies on a larger Paper.

IN TWO VOLUMES.

OXFORD,
Printed at the THEATER, M. DCC. XXV.

Mercier and Chervet, Printers,
Bartholomew Close, London.

Peter Langtoft's CHRONICLE,

(as illustrated and improv'd by ROBERT OF BRUNNE) from the Death of Cadwalader to the end of K. Edward the First's Reign.

TRANSCRIB'D,
and now first publish'd, from a MS. in the
INNER-TEMPLE LIBRARY
By THOMAS HEARNE, M.A.

TO WHICH ARE ADDED,
Besides a Glossary and other curious Papers,

(1) A Roll concerning Glastonbury Abbey, being a Survey of all the Estates belonging to that House at the Dissolution, taken by King Hen. the Eighth's order and for his use. (2) An Account of the Hospital of St. Mary Magdalen near Scroby in Nottinghamshire, by John Slacke, Master of that Hospital. (3) Two Tracts by an anonymous Author; the first relating to Conquest in Somersetshire, the second concerning Stone-henge.

IN TWO VOLUMES.

OXFORD,
Printed at the THEATER, M.DCC.XXV.

1725

Plinius *in Præfatione Natural. Histor. ad* Vespasianum *Augustum.*

Res ardua, vetustis novitatem dare, novis auctoritatem, obsoletis nitorem, obscuris lucem, fastiditis gratiam, dubiis fidem, omnibus vero naturam, & naturæ suæ omnia.

1438390

THE CONTENTS.

I. THE Publisher's Preface. pag. IX.

II. De Petro Longatosta [lege *Longatofta.*] E Pitseo de illustrib. Angliæ Scriptoribus. XCIV.

III. De eodem. E Lelandi Comm. de Scriptorib. Brit. XCV.

IV. De eodem. E Bibliotheca Gesneri. *ibid.*

V. Concerning Peter de Langetoft. Out of Bp. Nicolson's Eng. Historical Library. XCVI.

VI. Robert of Brunne's Prologue to his Chronicle. *ibid.*

VII. Extract of a Letter, relating to Robert of Brunne and Peter de Langtoft, written

from London to the Publisher by the late learned John Bridges, Esq. Nov. 28. 1723. ci.

VIII. Robert of Brunne's Transition (called a Prologue by Mr. Bridges) from the first to the second Part of his Chronicle. cv.

IX. The Proceedings of the Abbat and Convent of Winchester against Joan of London, *A. D.* 1285. From an old MS. Fragment of that Age, given to the Publisher by Thomas Ward of Longbridge near Warwick, Esq. cvii.

X. A Letter concerning the reputed Nunnery at Little-Gidding in Huntingtonshire. From a MS. lent to the Publisher on July 6th. 1724. by the foresaid Thomas Ward, of Longbridge near Warwick, Esq. cix.

XI. A Copy of the printed Pamphlet about the reputed Nunnery at Little-Gidding in Huntingtonshire. cxxv.

XII. Dr. Wallis's Account of some Passages of his own Life. E Coll. MSS. Smithianis penes Editorem, Vol. 22. p. 38. cxl.

XIII. An Extract of a Letter from Dr. John Wallis to Dr. John Fell, then Lord Bishop of Oxford, dated April 8. 1685. concerning the Report spread about of Dr. Wallis's deciphering King Charles the Ist's Letters. E Coll.

Coll. MSS. Smithianis penes Editorem, Vol. 22. p. 54. CLXX.

XIV. Inscriptiones singulares hactenus ineditæ, Hadriano Beverlando collectore. E Coll. nostris MSS. Vol. 75. p. 1. CLXXII.

XV. Robert of Brunne's account of the raising of Stone-henge, from the French of Master Wace, who followed Geffry of Monmouth. CLXXXVIII.

XVI. An Account of St. Wenefride, from an old MS. of the Book call'd Festival or Festial in the hands of the above mentioned Thomas Ward, of Longbridge near Warwick, Esq. CXCVI.

XVII. Extract of a Letter, written to the Publisher from Winchester July 4th. 1724. by the Reverend Mr. Richard Furney, relating to the Election of an Abbess of Rumsey Nunnery in Hampshire, *Anno D.* 1333. which confirms what is asserted in Peter Langtoft, that the said Nunnery was founded by K. Edgar for an hundred Nunns. CCI.

XVIII. Extract of another Letter, written to the Publisher from Winchester Aug. 15. 1724. by the said Mr. Furney, relating to the Number of the Nunns at Rumsey some time before the Dissolution, and to a Note,

about our old Historians, in a MS. of Trivet at Winchester. ccIII.

XIX. A Copy of Dr. Richardson's and Mr. Thoresby's Letters about the Hospital of St. Mary Magdalen, treated of by Mr. Slacke, in the Account mentioned below, Num. XXIV. CCVI.

XX. Bishop Wren's Narrative, touching Prince Charles's Judgment and Affection to the Religion of the Church of England. From a MS. in the Ashmolean Muséum. CCVIII.

XXI. Extract of a Letter to the Publisher from Mr. Graves of Mickleton in Gloucestershire, concerning Campden in that County. With a remarkable Passage, upon that occasion, out of an old anonymous MS. Author (stiled John Bever by Dr. Powell) in Trinity College Library Oxon. CCXIII.

XXII. Peter Langtoft's Chronicle, (as illustrated and improv'd by Robert of Brunne) from the Death of Cadwalader to the End of K. Edward the First's Reign. From a MS. in the Inner-Temple Library. 1

XXIII. The Copy of a Roll concerning Glastonbury Abbey, being a Survey of all the Estates belonging to that House at the Dissolution, taken by King Hen. the Eighth's order

der and for his use. From a MS. in the Hands of a Friend at Colchester. 343

XXIV. An Account of the Hospital of St. Mary Magdalen near Scroby in Nottinghamshire, by John Slacke, Master of that Hospital. From a MS. in the Hands of Thomas Frewin, of Lincoln's-Inn, Esq. 389

XXV. A Discourse about some Roman Antiquities discover'd near Conquest in Somersetshire, supposed to be the Place where the Romans Conquest of Britain was compleated. By an anonymous Author. Transcrib'd from a MS. lent to the Publisher by Mr. James West of Balliol-College, *A. D.* 1722. 441

XXVI. A Discourse concerning Stone-Henge. From another MS. lent to the Publisher by the same Friend, Mr. James West, of Balliol-Coll. written in the same hand, and by the same anonymous Author. 480

XXVII. Glossary. 518

XXVIII. Index. 690

THE PUBLISHER'S

PREFACE.

THE Robert of Gloucester, mentioned in the printed Life of St. Thomas Cantilupe, different from the Author of the Chronicle, and even from the other Roberts of Gloucester spoke of in my Preface to that Chronicle. §. 1. *Yet he seems to have been in the vigour of his Age at the time of the Chronicler's Death. A Mistake of Bishop Godwin's.* §. 11. *No reason, from the time in which they lived, to take Robert of Gloucester the Historian and Robert of Gloucester the Secretary to be one and the same person. The Historians in former Times were the Religious, who often lost their first Sirnames, and, upon compiling their famous Works, were sirnamed anew from the Houses of which they were Members.* §. III. *Yet there were rather more that retain'd their first Sirnames, after they became noted for their Writings. John Wethamstede of a greater character than Matthew Paris. The Historical Passages in Dr. Gascoigne's Theological Dictionary*

should be published. §. IV. *Among others that retain'd their original Sirnames was Peter Langtoft, who, besides his Translation into French Rhythms of Bosenham or Boscam's Life of Thomas à Becket, compiled a Chronicle of England in French.* §. V. *This Peter Langtoft seems to have died in the beginning of K. Edw.* II^d's *Reign, and to have been buried at Bridlington with much such another Epitaph as that to the memory of* Robertus Scriba. §. VI. *Were the Obituaries, or Obit Books of Bridlington now remaining, it is probable something certain about his Death might be learned from them. The Diligence of the Monks in registring. Many old Chartularies still in private hands, that ought to be search'd by men of a true genius. The Chronicle of England written by Thomas Blount, Esq;* §. VII. *Notwithstanding the French Tongue was so much in vogue in Peter Langtoft's Time, yet there were multitudes besides that despised it. The Normans not able utterly to extirpate the Saxon Language. The ill Consequence from the Endeavours that were us'd to that purpose.* §. VIII. *Robert of Brunne one of those that cultivated the English Tongue, and he gained a great Reputation upon that score. This Robert of Brunne lived to a great age, tho' the year in which he died doth not yet occur.* §. IX. *He was not descended from the Founder of St. Mary Spittle* extra *Bishop's Gate. His Translation of Peter de Langtoft had it's intended Effect. Many Copies of it formerly, tho' it be now scarce. The*

The Stories in it us'd in old time instead of Ballads. §. x. *Robert of Brunne a Man of a facetious merry Temper, yet without any Mixture of Immorality. The diligence of the Monks of Winchester in obstructing the Design of Joan of London. A Passage relating to the* sedes stercoraria *at Rome from an anonymous MS. Author.* §. xi. *'Tis impossible to give a particular Account of the Life of Robert of Brunne. There are Precedents, as well in ancient as later Times, to justify any one in leaving behind him Memoirs of his own Life. Dr. Wallis left some particulars of this nature. The D^r's. Memorandum at the Beginning of a Book (in the Bodleian Library) containing many Things that he deciphered.* §. xii. *If Robert of Brunne had any Epitaph, it seems to have been short, agreeable to those times, and to be now irretrievable.* §. xiii. *Peter Langtoft's Original, as well as Robert of Brunne's English Work, consists of two Parts, the first Part of which is here omitted, as containing nothing but Geffry of Monmouth. A Passage out of Rastall's Chronicle about Stone-henge.* §. xiv. *The exactness made use of in publishing this piece of ancient History. To gratify some Readers, several Specimens of the French are also made publick with it.* §. xv. *And, for further Satisfaction, the Conclusion of the French MS. that belongs to the Heralds Office, is here inserted in this Preface.* §. xvi. *Out of which MS. is here likewise published a Note concerning* Hugo Car-

Cardinalis. Actor *for* auctor *in many MSS. The Author of* liber festivalis *or* festialis. *A Remark relating to St. Wenefride.* §. XVII. *Many Things in this Chronicle, that are different from what is related by other Historians.* §. XVIII. *Some of which are here enumerated.* §. XIX. *In lieu of the first Part of Robert of Brunne, several Things are here published of greater use and service. An account of Mr. Andrew Paschal. A Note about Mr. John Gibbon's MSS. Papers in the Heralds Office. A short Account of Dr. Walter Charleton. An Interpolation in Camden, which Mr. Webb did not discover to be such. A Passage relating to Stone-henge from Mr. Camden's MS. Supplement in the hands of the publisher.* §. XX. *Stone-henge perhaps a British Monument, notwithstanding it might have been a Roman Work. Mr. Camden's Approbation of, and Assistance in, Dr. Holland's Additions, may justify such as cite them for Mr. Camden's own.* §. XXI.

The Robert of Gloucester, mentioned in the printed Life of St. Thomas Cantilupe, different from the Author of the Chronicle, and even from the other Roberts of Gloucester spoke of in my Preface to that Chronicle.

§. I. JUST after I had published Robert of Gloucester, I had the good fortune to see and converse with a learned, modest and honest Friend of Hereford-shire, (the same, I mean, that, besides his other great assistance

ance[1] in the Work, drew up the Indexes to the celebrated Dr. Hickes's *Thesaurus Linguarum Septentrionalium*, and is so excellently well qualify'd to compile the Antiquities of that County[2], about which he hath many curious Materials) at which time he was pleased to lend me the Life[3] of St. Thomas Cantilupe Bishop of Hereford, which tho' a printed Book, yet is very rare and seldom to be seen, as many Books of the same kind are also very scarce, and, therefore, greedily and industriously pick'd up by such curious Collectors as was the famous Mr. Richard Smith, that writ about Christ's Descent into Hell, and collected most of his Rarities[4] out of the Library of H. Dyson, a person of a very strange, prying and inquisitive genius in the matter of Books, as may appear from many Libraries, there being[5] Books, (chiefly in old English) almost in every Libra-

---

[1] See the General Preface to Dr. Hickes's *Thesaurus*, p. V. [2] Vide Præf. ad Lelandi Coll. §. 10. [3] Intit'led, *The Life and Gests of S. Thomas Cantilupe Bishop of Hereford and some time before L. Chancellor of England. Extracted out of the authentique Records of his Canonization us to the maine part, Anonymus, Matt. Paris, Capgrave, Harpsfeld, and others. Collected by R.S.S.J. At Gant, Printed by Robert Walker, at the Sign of the Annunciation of our B. Lady.* 1674. 8vo. [4] See pag. 371, 372. alias p. 401, 402. or the last leaf save one of his Auction Catalogue. [5] So in a MS. Note, written by my very learned Friend Mr. Thomas Baker, B. D. of St. John's-Coll. in Cambr. at the beginning of my Copy of Mr. Smith's Auction Catalogue, which was given me by the said Mr. Baker.

ry,

ry, that have belong'd to him, with his name upon them. I perus'd and read over this Life of Cantilupe with some considerable pleasure and attention, there being many things in it handled in a true rational way, such as becomes a Christian Historian. But the main reason of my speaking of it now is, upon account of the Author's mentioning[1] a Robert of Gloucester, that was Secretary to the said venerable and most holy Bishop at the time of the Bishop's Death, and was afterwards Chancellor of Hereford. At first one would think, that this Robert of Gloucester (whom the Writer of the Life met with in the very Process of his Canonization) was the Author of the Chronicle that bears his name, but, upon a serious and deliberate consideration of the matter, I conclude him to be a quite different person, and even different also from all the Roberts of Gloucester, that I have mentioned in my Preface[2] to that Work. Neither is it likely, that, had the Secretary been the Author, he would have passed over in silence his holy Master's Life, and not brought the thread of his History down to that Period, and given a very distinct and particular Account of the Acts of so worthy, religious and conscientious a Prelate, who equall'd in

[1] See this Life, pag. 195, *&c.* [2] §. xxiv.

the

the great Sanctity and Severity of his Life, and in the exercise of all virtuous and religious Duties, many of the most eminent of the primitive Christians.

Yet he seems to have been in the vigour of his Age at the time of the Chronicler's Death. A Mistake of Bishop Godwin's.

§. II. It must, indeed, be granted, that there was so little difference with respect to the time, in which these two Roberts (the Historian and the Secretary) flourished, that the Secretary seems to have been in his full vigour when the other died, which was, as I take it [1], some little time after the VIth. year of K. Edward the First's Reign, which could not, therefore, be long before the Death of Bishop Cantilupe, who was consecrated [2] in Christ Church Canterbury *anno Christi*, 1275. and of his Age about 56, and was cut off by a Feaver [3], in the 63^d^. year of his Age, at, or rather near to, a Place known by the name of *Monte Fiacone* near Florence, on the 25th. [4] of August, though his Festivity were kept on the 2^d^. [5] of October. This I note the rather, because, tho' Bishop Godwin [6] be right with respect to the time of his Death, yet he is

[1] See my Preface to Rob. of Gloucester's Chron. §. XVII. [2] So the Life, Chap. XI. p. 120. [3] Ibid. Chap. XVII. p. 190. [4] Ibid. p. 195. [5] So in that most rare printed Book, call'd the Missal of Hereford, whereof I have a Copy in Vellum, in which also his Death (called there *depositio*) is made to happen on the 25th of August, or the day after St. Bartholomew's. [6] De Præsulib. Angl. p. 537.

mistaken

mistaken in saying [1], it was at *Civita Vecchi*, and in his way to Rome, whereas it was really [2] in his way from Rome (after he had happily gained the Point he went thither for) and at the Place I have assigned. Nor does Matthew Westminster [3], notwithstanding what Godwin says [4], inform us, that his Death happened as he was going to Rome; which particular is so much the more worthy of notice, because it would otherwise take away that part of the honour which is due to the Bishop, for accomplishing a noble Action in behalf of the Rights of the Church of Hereford, against John Peckham Archbishop of Canterbury, a business, I believe, that no one could have carried with the Pope, but one of Cantilupe's extraordinary Piety, Sincerity, and Learning.

No reason, from the time in which they lived, to take Robert of Gloucester the Historian and Robert of Gloucester the Secretary to be one and the same Person. The Historians in former Times were the Religious, who often lost their first Sir-

§. III. I am aware, that from what I have said about the Age of the Historian and the Secretary, it will be inferr'd by some, that they were one and the same person. But, unless I am much mistaken, they will be presently satisfy'd to the contrary, when they have impartially considered, that the original Sirname [5] of the Histo-

[1] Ibid. [2] Of which the Author of his Life mentions undenyable Proofs, pag. 195. [3] See his Chron. sub an. MCCLXXXVII. [4] P. 537. [5] See my Preface to Rob. of Glouc. §. XXIV.

rian

rian is at present unknown to us, notwithstanding I do not doubt but the Secretary might have his even from the time of his Infancy. The Writers of History in those times (to say nothing of other Authors) were the Religious, and when they became famous that way, they often lost their first Sirnames, and receiv'd new ones from the respective religious Houses of which they were Members. Hence William of Malmesbury[1] (whose true Sirname, it seems, was Somerset[2]) and Matthew of Westminster[3] (commonly called[4] *Florilegus* from the Title[5] of his Work,) to say nothing of *Guilielmus Neubrigensis* (whose true Sirname was Petyt[6]) were thus denominated from their Monasteries, after they became eminent in History. So also John of Glastonbury was so named upon account of the History or Chronicle of Glastonbury,

names, and, upon compiling their famous Works, were sirnamed anew from the Houses of which they were Members.

---

[1] Lelandus de Scriptorib. p. 195. Item Lelandi Coll. Vol. II. p. 303. Pitseus de illustrib. Angliæ Scriptorib. p. 208. Guil. Cavei Hist. Lit. p. 577. *Genev.* 1720. [2] Pitseus ibid. Thomæ Galei Præf. ad XV, Scriptores *Oxoniæ* 1691. fol. Henrici Whart oi Præf. ad Vol. II. *Angliæ Sacræ*, p. I. Ger. J. Vossius de Historicis Lat. p. 389. *Lug. B.* CIↃ. DCXXVII. [3] Joannis Joscelini Catalogus eorum, qui scripserunt historiam gentis Anglorum, & ubi extant. Ad calcem Roberti de Avesbury à nobis editi, p. 292. Append. ad Guil. Cavei Hist. Lit. p. 50. Ed. Gen. [4] Pitseus de Scriptorib. p. 518. Vossius de Hist. Lat. p. 491. [5] I. e. *Flores Historiarum.* [6] De quo fusissime ad initium editionis nostræ hujus Guilielmi, quam videsis.

of

of which he was a Confrere and Monk [1], as himself hath assured us in the Prologue to that usefull and excellent Work, which was never yet printed, tho' some things have been extracted from it by Mr. Dodsworth, and are published in the beginning of the *Monasticon Anglicanum* [2]. Now had Robert of Gloucester the Secretary been as famous as Robert of Gloucester the Historian, the better to distinguish the one from the other, it would have been proper, to have stiled the latter, *Robert the Monk of Gloucester*, and the former barely *Robert of Gloucester*. But as it happened, there was no occasion for that nicety, since the Secretary, (however, after his Master's Death, Chancellour of Hereford, tho' the published *Fasti* [3] do not mention him as such) was not celebrated upon account either of his writings, or any other great Undertaking, that might render his name famous to Posterity.

Yet there were rather more that retain'd their first Sirnames

§. IV. But now tho' there were so many that lost their original Sirnames

[1] *Johannes abjectissimus & humilimus ejusdem venerabilis loci* [monasterii scilicet Glastoniensis] *indignus confrater & monachus*, id quod de se ipso testatur noster Johannes, quemadmodum è Codice colligo eximio penes nobilissimnm Dominum, Carolum Dominum Bruce, qui mihi perquam benevole mutuo dedit. Et quidem jam alibi monui, Johannem hunc operis esse auctorem. Vide Lelandi Coll. Vol. VI. p. 97. [2] Vol. I. p. 1, &c. [3] Vide Fastos Ecclesiæ Anglicanæ per Johannem Le Neve, p. 116. ubi de Roberto nostro ne verbum.

after

after they became noted for their Writings, yet there were others, and those too as famous, and as many, yea more, that retain'd them, notwithstanding the Characters they had established for the Works compiled by them. Matthew Paris was Author of a very noble History, in which he took in what Roger Wendover had done before him[1], tho' others say 'tis all the genuine Work of Matthew Paris[2]. Yet the great Abbey, of which he was Monk, did not take away from his primitive Sirname. Neither indeed did John Whethamstede, or Wethamstede, *alias* Bostok[3], (stiled in Latin *Joannes Frumentarius*, or *Joannes de loco Frumenti*) loose his first Sirname, altho' he was even of greater note than Matthew Paris, as he was a great Writer[4], and a great Benefactor to the Abbey of St. Alban,

names, after they became noted for their Writings. John Wethamstede of a greater character than Matthew Paris. The Historical Passages in Dr. Gascoigne's Theological Dictionary should be published.

[1] Vide Guil. Watsii Præfationem ad Ed. suam Matthæi Parisiensis; uti etiam v. cl. Joannis Seldeni (nam is collegit scripsitque, quamvis non observaverit Antonius à Wood) testimonia (cum notis) de eodem Parisiensi ad initium Editionis Watsianæ. [2] Nicolson's Engl. Historical Library, p. 62. Ed. fol. [3] Lelandi Coll. Vol. VI. p. 278. [4] Baleus de Scriptorib. Majoris Brit. 4to. fol. 200. b. Pitseus, p. 631. [5] Lelandi Coll. Vol. VI. p. 135. Acta Joannis Whethamsted, Abbatis monasterii S. Albani, per Joannem Agmundishamensem, Monachum S. Albani, per singulos annos ipsius regiminis, MS. in Bibl. Cott. Claud. D. I. 2. See also another MS in the said Cottonian Library (Otho B. IV.) containing abundance of curious Things relating to Whethamstede, as they are specified by my late very learned

of which he was at length Abbat, whereas Matthew Paris was only a Monk of it. But how does it appear, that this Wethamstede was as celebrated a Writer as Paris? He is certainly characteriz'd as such. His Works were of more general learning, which shew him, therefore, to have been a more general Scholar. He was in great Reputation among all good and learned men. He was honoured by Humphrey Duke of Gloucester [1], that religious, good and learned Prince, whose Hand writing I us'd, whenever I saw it in the Bodleian Library (where it occurs several times) to shew a sort of particular respect to, as some little Remains of a truly great Man, one that was both a Scholar himself and the chiefest Promoter of Learning and Scholars at that time, by condescending to whose Death his Nephew K. Henry VIth. (otherwise generally esteemed for a gentle and innocent Prince) drew on himself and this Kingdom (if the Observation of a very wise Historian [2] may be regarded) the greatest joyntlosse and dishonour, that ever it sustained since the Norman Conquest. Nor do I take Wethamstede to have been a worse Historian than

---

learned Friend Dr. Thomas Smith in pag. 70. of his Catalogue. [1] Lelandus de Scriptoribus Brit. p. 437. Baleus Ed. 4to. fol. 200. b. Pitseus, p. 630. [2] Sir Walter Raleigh's Preface to his *Hist. of the World.*

Paris,

Paris, tho' he did not confine himself so closely to the Affairs of this Kingdom. His *Granary*, as it is a Proof of his extraordinary Diligence, so 'tis, withall, an Instance (and that too a very noble one) of his Abilities in History. There are Remains of it in many Places. Some I have seen, and often consulted, formerly in the Bodleian Library. The most material Historical Passages, especially such as concern our own Affairs, (particularly those *de viris illustribus*, which Leland[1] admired) should be extracted by those, that have the best opportunity of doing it, and made publick, as should likewise those in Dr. Gascoigne's *Theological Dictionary* in Lincoln-College Library (as was many years ago noted by Dr. Gerard Langbaine[2]) a Specimen of which I have lately given in the Antiquities of Glastonbury[3], written by a very worthy and pious Gentleman[4], who had he lived to improve the Book as he design'd, would have inriched and adorned it with abundance of other very curious Remarks and Observations, such as Men of his genius are capable of making, whenever they employ themselves up-

[1] Lelandus de Scriptorib. p. 437. [2] See a Letter of his to Mr. Selden, that I have published in Leland's Coll. Vol. V. p. 287. [3] Pag. 290. [4] Vide Præf. ad Hemingi Chartularium Ecclesiæ Wig. §. I.

on Subjects, to the Study of which they are naturally inclin'd.

Among others that retain'd their original Sirnames was Peter Langtoft, who, besides his Translation into French Rhythms of Bosenham or Boscam's Life of Thomas à Becket, compiled a Chronicle of England in French.

§. V. But 'twill be endless here to multiply Instances of such as have retain'd their Sirnames after their becoming noted Writers. They will be obvious enough to such as deal in Antiquity. Waving, therefore, others, I shall mention only one more, which indeed is more material than any other I either have named or can name, and that is Peter Langtoft, or Peter de Langtoft, the Person that hath occasioned this present undertaking of mine. He was so called from Langtoft in Yorkshire, and was not, as some have thought [1], a Frenchman by birth, notwithstanding his being so very well vers'd in the French Language, that was in his time so much in vogue both at Court and elsewhere, especially among Lawyers and great Scholars, a thing which King James the I. look'd upon as of no true Advantage to Britain [2]. It does not appear to me, how he was originally educated; but without question, there was nothing wanting, that might render him a compleat Scholar, as well as a Man of honesty and good Morals. After he had obtain'd a good

[1] See the Appendix to this Preface, Num. I. [2] See *The Royal Law* by Richard Eburne, p. 40.

fair

fair Character, he became a Canon Regular [1] of the Order of St. Austin at Bridlington, or Brellington[2], a Priory of Black Canons in Yorkshire, founded by Walter de Gant, *(temp. Hen.* I.) and dedicated to S. Mary and S. Nicholas[3]. He was a person naturally addicted to History and Poëtry, and spent a good deal of his time that way; insomuch that, besides his Translation out of the Latin Tongue into French Rhythms of Herebert Bosenham, Boscam, or Hoscham's [4] Life of Thomas à Becket, he compil'd in French a Chronicle of England[5], written in Rhythem, and is preserv'd still in several Libraries.

§. VI. The Author begins this History at the very Original of the Britains, even as early as the Trojans, in the same manner as many others do, that have no better Vouchers than the old Brittish Historian (and I look upon him as good[6] as those dark Times can

This Peter Langtoft seems to have died in the beginning of K. Edw. II^ds Reign, and to have been buried at Bridlington with much such another Epitaph as that to the memory of *Robertus Scriba.*

[1] See the Appendix to this Preface, Num. I. II. III. [2] Lelandi Coll. Vol. III. p. 363. [3] Lelandi Coll. Vol. I. p. 123. & Vol. IV. p. 35. Tanner's Notitia Monastica, pag. 252. [4] Nicolson's Eng. Hist. Library, p. 112, 113, Fol. [5] See the Appendix, Num. I. II. III. IV. [6] For which reason Geffry of Monmouth (who took from him) hath been vindicated by many great men, and among others, that used to speak well of him, was the learned Mr. Thomas Thompson, Rector of Montgomery, in the Year 1628. as I find by the following Particulars, that I have entered at pag. 86. of Vol. 103. of my MSS. Collections: "Mr. Brome [of "Ewithington, near Hereford]

produce) from whom [1] first Alfred of Beverley, and afterwards Geffry of Monmouth (tho' Mr. Dodwell was not sufficiently aware of this [2]) took their Histories. He brings the Story down to the end of the Reign of K. Edward the first after the Conquest; but carrying it no lower, I take it for granted, that he died towards the beginning of the Reign of K. Edward II. but in what Year, or in what Place, it was that he finished his days, I cannot pretend to determine, unless I could meet with some good Authority on which to ground an

---

"hath got *Gyraldus Cambren-*
"*sis* of Dr. Powell's Edition,
"with *Ponticus Virunnius* at
"the beginning, at the end of
"which *Ponticus Virunnius* is
"the following MS. Note:

Θεῷ δόξα. ἀμην.

"*Legi, nec video qua ratione improbetur hæc historia, cùm*
"*nil sapiat, quod non sit & probabile & possibile, non obstanti-*
"*bus invidiosis illis pseudepigraphis prolatis à Polydor Voirgilio*
"*& Guilielmo Cambdeno, Viris alioquin apprime doctissimis:*
"*uti sentio Ego Dei servus humillimus his in studiis à pueritia*
"*versatus,*

"*Thomas Thompson, Rector Eccl. parochialis de*
"*Montgomeria, 20°. Febr. 1628°.*

"Immediately after which is a spare Leaf, on the back "side of which is this MS. Note in another hand.

"*The beginning of the Giralds family in Ireland, was from*
"*one Girald, which took to wife Nesta, Sister to Gruffin the*
"*prince, of whom he begate a goodly faire progeny, from*
"*whom descended Giraldus Cambrensis. Cambden: Britan:*
"*in Pembroksh: 652. P.*

"*Giraldus Cambrens: was Archdeacon of Brechnock: above*
400 *yeeres since. Cambden: in Brechnocksh: p.* 627.

[1] Vide Præf. nostram ad Aluredum Bev. §. VII. [2] Exercit. de Ætate Phalaridis, p. 25.

Asser-

Assertion. I am, however, of opinion, that he continued Canon of Bridlington till the time of his Death, and that he was buried in the Priory, with some short Epitaph upon him, much such another as that to the memory of *Robertus Scriba,* or *Robert the Scribe* (so sirnamed from the many great Works, that were written and compiled by him[1]) who was the fourth Prior of Bridlington, and, upon his Death, was buried in the Cloyster just before the Chapter-House Door with this Inscription, as we are assured by Leland[2] who saw it, at the same time that he curiously look'd over his Writings, as they were then preserved in the Priory Library: *Robertus Scriba, quartus Prior;* or, as Leland gives it elsewhere[3], ROBERTUS, COGNOMENTO SCRIBA, QUARTUS PRIOR.

§. VII. It is not at all improbable, but, if there be any of the Obit Books of the Priory of Bridlington now in being, upon a due Search, some note might be found about the exact time, when Peter de Langtoft died. For the Monks were exact in their Registring things of this nature, as may appear e-

Were the Obituaries, or Obit Book of Bridlington now remaining, it is probable something certain about his Death might be learned from them. The diligence of the Monks in registring. Many old Chartularies still in private

[1] Lelandus de Scriptorib. p. 202. Pitseus, p. 242. [2] Coll. Vol. IV. p. 35. Vide etiam Pitseum, p. 243. [3] De Scriptorib. Brit. p. 263.

hands, that ought to be search'd by men of a true genius. The Chronicle of England written by Thomas Blount, Esq;.

ven from the Obituaries, or Obit Books, that I have seen, particularly one [1] that belong'd to Eovesham Abbey. They exceeded, in many respects, what hath been done since the Reformation, notwithstanding the strict Injunctions and Orders for keeping true and accurate Registers. Men of distinction and character were then appointed for looking after such things. They did not commit such kind of business to an illitterate common person, no more than they did the care of their Chartularies, in many of which too Notes may be occasionally found, immediately relating to the great and famous Men of those Times, such as would be of very good use to those that are concern'd about our ancient Worthies. But what advantage then, it will be ask'd, will this be of, if, after abundance of time spent in searching, nothing of moment should occur, directly belonging to the subject which gave occasion to the Searches? Or what Compensation will be made for so much pains, and the laying out so much time upon dry Inquiries? In answer to which it must be noted, that none but persons, naturally inclined to these Studies, should be imploy'd in searching,

[1] Cujus apographum penes se habet antiquarius amicissimus doctissimusq; Richardus Graves, de Mickleton in agro Gloucestriensi, armiger.

who

who if they do not meet with much about the Lives and Deaths of eminent Men, besides what is already known, will, nevertheless, find a vast deal about our Monasteries and our ancient History not yet divulged, which as it will prove of unspeakable satisfaction to themselves (for no Study can be more pleasant to Persons of a genius than that of our National History and Antiquities) so it cannot but be of wonderful service to the Publick. The single Chartulary of the Church of Worcester, that I lately published, is an undenyable Proof of this. And that there are many Chartularies, very little known, in private hands, is, I think, agreed amongst all. We only want the benefit of them, by having persons of a genius imploy'd to turn them to publick Use. Thomas Blount, of Orleton in Herefordshire, Esq.; was extremely curious this way, and in the year 1669, he met with a Chartulary of the Priory of Leominster, in that County, with some other choice Antiquities, in the hands of a Friend of his [1]. I do not know, that there hath been as yet any publick use made of this Chartulary, but, without doubt, Mr. Blount read it all over, and extracted many things out of it, some of which, perhaps, he might have in his Eye,

[1] In quod de seipso testatur in litteris quibusdam ad Antonium à Wood scriptis, quas in Muséo Ashmoliano, perlegi.

(not

(not only in his *Antiquities of Herefordshire*, a Book never yet printed [1], but) in the Chronicle of England that he compiled, a Work in which, I am informed, he inserted many Things about our Religious Houses, and the Sacrilegious Destruction of them (what the Clergy and the Poor ought to lament[2]) that was made by K. Henry VIII. of whom a very faithfull and judicious Historian writes, among other remarkable Particulars, that if all the Pictures and Patterns of a merciless Prince were lost in the World, they might all again be painted to the Life, out of the Story of this King[3]. But, it seems, this Chronicle was never yet printed; nor do I exactly know where it now is, tho' some Extracts [4] from it were, a few years since, in the Hands of a late ingenious Friend: of which Extracts, as well as of many other curious Things, I should have had a free use, had he lived longer, he being sollicitous for me to go to his Seat, and to peruse whatever he had concerning our History and Antiquities.

Notwithstanding the French Tongue was so much in vogue in Peter Langtoft's Time, yet there were multitudes be-

§. VIII. I have observ'd above, that the French Tongue was much in vogue in the time of Peter Langtoft. Yet notwithstanding this there were very

[1] Coll. nostr. MSS. Vol. 94. p. 136. [2] Richard Eburne's *Royal Law*, p. 44. [3] Sir Walter Raleigh's Preface to his History of the World. [4] Coll. nostr. MSS. Vol. 68. p. 61. [5] §. V.

many

many exquisite Scholars, that had a particular regard to their own native Tongue, and as for the inferior and more illitterate sort of people [1], they wholly despised the French Language. And 'twas a piece of great wisdome to do so. The introduction of the French Tongue was of very great disadvantage. It brought a disuse of the Scriptures, which having been translated into Saxon, were commonly read among the Vulgar, as well as others, (that did not understand the Originals,) 'till after the Normans came among us, who did all they could possibly to destroy every thing, that look'd like Saxon; and yet they were not able to bring their ill design to perfection. The Saxon Princes and great Men had granted abundance of Charters in their own Language. These (notwithstanding some, tho' a very few, have been suspected [2]) were look'd upon as genuine and authentick. Extraordinary care, therefore, was to be us'd in preserving them. Great Immunities and Privileges depended thereupon. The Monks knew this very well. They, therefore, imploy'd all their Skill in securing them from a People, that was as diligent to destroy them, as the Rebells of Somersetshire were in 1685 [3].

sides that despised it. The Normans not able utterly to extirpate the Saxon Language. The ill Consequence from the Endeavours that were us'd to that purpose.

[1] Rob. of Gloucester's Chron. p. 364. [2] Henr. Whartoni Præf. and Part. II. Angl. Sacr. p. III. [3] H. Whartoni Præf. ad Part I. Angl. Sacr. p. XII.

to

to destroy very many ancient Writings, that belong'd to the Church of Wells. This being so, we may fairly conclude, that the ignorance, which appeared after the Conquest, was owing to a Conflux of Forreigners, that were against that very Language, in which were written great Numbers of excellent Books, among which were the Scriptures, that were afterwards very diligently kept from the knowledge of the vulgar, and all others, that were not acquainted with the Originals. This was of dismal Consequence, as will be readily own'd by those, that consider, that the Saxon Version of the Scriptures was excellent, and the Words very significant, as will sufficiently appear to such, as shall consult what MSS. are remaining, relating to it, even to this day, or if they do not have recourse to the MSS. (one of which is the ancient Rushworth one in the Bodleian Archives) they may be fully satisfied of the truth of it, from the Saxon Gospels, first printed by Mr. Fox, and afterwards, more correctly, by Dr. Marshall, to say nothing of some other printed Books. John Wickliff and others had weigh'd this matter well, and upon that account partly they set upon another Version, agreeable to the Language in use in their own Times, and were very industrious in divulging it, which is the reason that we have

so many MSS. of it at this time, in which many Words appear, that are originally Saxon, and, therefore, it would be proper for any, that shall read over one Version, to compare it with the other, by which they will the more readily perceive and find out, the Alterations that have crept into the old Saxon Tongue.

Robert of Brunne one of those that cultivated the English Tongue, and he gained a great Reputation upon that score. This Robert of Brunne lived to a great age, tho' the year in which he died doth not yet occur.

§. IX. Among such as were concern'd for cultivating the English Tongue, Robert of Brunne is deservedly to be reckoned, he being the very person, to whom we owe that Piece of obsolete English, that is now here published. He was well apprized of the Credit, that Peter Langtoft's Chronicle had obtained: but then being written in French, it was far from being of general use in England. Upon which he was importuned to translate it into English for the sake of such, as did not understand either Latin or French. I say *importuned*, because himself hath assured * us, that he was requested to do it. Nor is there any wonder, that he should be pitched upon above any other, since he had, many years before, obtained a very great character for several Rhythmical Translations that he made, one of which was

* See his Prologue *de Historia Britanniæ*, in the Appendix to this Preface, Num. V.

Ro-

Robert Grosthead's Manuel de Peche, begun by him in the year 1303. 13. Edw. I. about four years before he feasted (upon account of some honour done him) and made Observations at Cambridge [1]. An excellent Copy of the said Manuel de Peche, as translated by Robert of Brunne, is in the Harleyan Library [2], as there is another in the Bodleian [3], in which are some other Things probably to be ascribed to him. The true Sirname of this great Man was Mannyng [4], but being (as I believe at present) born at Malton in Yorkshire, he was from thence frequently call'd Robert of Malton [5]. He lived [6] for some time in the House of Sixhill, Sixill, Syxille or Sixle, a Gilbertine Priory in Lincolnshire, founded by one Greslei, or Grelle, in the time of King John, and dedicated to the Blessed Virgin Mary [7]. Hence 'tis, that he afterwards express'd himself so hearty a Friend [8] to the Gilbertine or Sempringham Order. After he had left Sixhill, he became a Canon of Brunne [9], or

[1] See below in this Chronicle, p. 337. [2] See my Preface to Rob. of Gloucester's Chron. § xiii. [3] Catal. MSS. in Bibl. Bodl. n. 2313. [4] See the Appendix to this Preface, Num. V. Also my Preface to Rob. of Glouc. §. xxiv. and my Glossary to that Work, p. 706. [5] See the Appendix to this Pref. Num. V. and my Glossary to Rob. of Glouc. loc. cit. [6] Ibid. [7] Mon. Angl. Tom. II. p. 810. Tanner's Notitia Mon. p. 129. [8] See my Pref. to Rob. of Glouc. p. lx. [9] Vide Append. ad hanc Præf. Num.

Bourne, a Priory of Black Canons in the same County, founded by Baldwin de Wake (*temp. Hen.* I.) and dedicated to the honour of St. Peter[1], tho' others [2] say (and even Camden himself[3] seems to imply, tho' he does not directly say, that it was dedicated) to the B. Virgin. Here he lived a great many Years, continuing there, unless I am mistaken, to the time of his Death. It doth not yet appear to me in what year he died; but that he must have lived to a great age, is clear from the Notes himself hath left us. He had been of Brunne Abbey fifteen Years[4], when he began to translate Manuel de Peche, and 'twas more than thirty Years after that, before he finished his Task about Peter Langtoft, according to this Memorandum that is put in red Letters (but in the same hand) at the End of it.

Expliciunt gesta Britonum & Anglorum in lingua materna per Robertum Mannyng transumpta anno Christi millesimo. CCC^mo^. *tricesimo* VIII. *Idus Maij, littera dominicali* D. *Prima* IX. *tempore Regis Edwardi tercii à conquestu.* XI°.

Num. V. item Præf. ad Rob. Glouc. p. LX. & Gloss. ad Rob. Glouc. p. 706. [1] Mon. Angl. Tom. II. p. 235, &c. Lelandi Coll. Vol. I. p. 96. [2] Tanner's Notit. Mon. p. 119. [3] In his Defence of himself against Brook, p. 27. publish'd by way of Appendix in some Copies of his Britannia in 4to. 1600. [4] Præf. ad. Rob. de Glouc. p. LX.

§. X. Af-

He was not descended from the Founder of St. Mary Spittle *extra* Bishop's Gate. His Translation of Peter de Langtoft had it's intended Effect. Many Copies of it formerly, tho' it be now scarce. The Stories in it us'd in old time instead of Ballads.

§. X. After he became famous for his Writings, he was generally called Robert of Brunne, which was partly occasioned also by his living so long in that Priory; so that I should not think that he was descended from Walter Brune, or Broune, who, with Roisia or Rosia his Wife, founded St. Mary Spittle *extra* Bishop's Gate for Canons Regular or Black Canons [1] *an.* 1197. an House of such relief to the needy, that there were found standing at the surrender thereof, nine-score beds, well furnished for receipt of poor people [2]; of which kind I might (were it my proper business now) give other instances in those times, when Bishops also were Men of diffusive Charity, insomuch that Richard Redman, first Bishop of St. Asaph, then of Exeter, and afterwards of Ely, where he died and was buried *A°.* 1505. as he was a person of great liberality and bounty, and of a virtuous and godly life, so when [4] he travell'd through any Towns where he stay'd but an hour, he caused a Bell to be rung, that the poor and indigent might come and partake of his Charity, which he plentifully bestowed amongst them. Now

[1] Lelandi Coll. Vol. I. p. 36. Monast. Angl. Vol. II. p. 383. [2] Stow's Survey of London, p. 86. b. 176. a. Ed. 1633. fol. [3] Godwin de Præs. p. 331, 473, 662. Le Neve's Fasti, p. 21, 70, 83. [4] Coll. nostr. MSS. Vol. 80. p. 54.

as

1438390

as Robert of Brunne undertook the Translation of Langtoft, not for Praise and Vain-Glory, but with a design of doing good, so what he proposed had it's intended Effect. He adapted himself to the Capacity of the Vulgar, and did not affect a high-flown Stile, nor hard Words, such as were complained of in the Stories of Erceldoun, of Kendale, and of Tristram[1], celebrated Rhythmical Books (but [2] full of lyes) in Robert of Brunne's time, tho' little known since. Now as Robert of Brunne's Translation was much cryed up, so there is no doubt, but there were many Copies of it formerly, notwithstanding it be so scarce since, there being, at present, only two MSS. that I know of, one in Vellum in the Library of the Inner-Temple, the other (which is imper-

[1] See the Appendix to this Pref. Num. V. [2] And it was to such Romantick Books, that the Rhythmical Author of the Lives of the Saints (who, it may be, was Robert of Brune) had regard in the beginning of his Work, where is this Passage, as I find it in a very fine, but imperfect MS. thereof (written, as I take it, in Edward the III time) that was lent me by my very worthy Friend, Edward Sheldon of Weston-house, near to Long-Compton, in Warwickshire, Esq;.

Mel auht we loue Cristendom, þat is so dere y bouzt
With oure Lorde's herte blode, that þe spere hath y souzt.
Den wilneþ more y heze of bataile of kyngis,
And of knyztis hardy, that mochel is lesyngis;
Of Roulond and of Oliuere, and Gy of Warewyke,
Of Watwayen and Tristram, þat ne foundde here y like.
Who so louetheþ to here tales of suche þyng,
Here he may y here thyng þat nys no lesyng,

feet[1]) in Paper in that of Lambeth[2]. The former of these MSS. belong'd lately to William Petyt, Esq;. who gave it to the Inner-Temple, from whence I have had the Loan of it by the Grant of that learned Society, at the Interest of my learned Friend, John Anstis, Esq;. Garter-Principal King of Arms, who put it into the Hands of my late very worthy Friend John Bridges, Esq;. from whom I receiv'd it a

---

Of poſtoles and marteres, that hardi knyghtes were,
And dedefast were in bataile, and dedde nogt for no fere.

[1] "The Chronicle" [of Peter Langtoft in MS. in Lambeth Library] "is written at "one time, on the same "Paper by two different "hands. There is no modern "mark of any Addition or "Alteration to be seen throo- "out the whole MS. At "the end indeed there is this "remark added by a late "hand:

"*Note this Book imperfect. The French Copies of Lang-*
"*toft in the Cotton Library, and also in the Herald's*
"*Office end with the Reign of King Edward the first*".

E litteris amici pereruditi Edvardi Burtoni, armigeri, datis ad me Londini Mar. 5. 1724.

[2] "*Robert Brunne* was a "Canon of the Abbey of "*Brunne* or *Bourn* near "Depyng in Lincolnshire— "flourish'd in the latter end "of K. Ed. I. reign, and "translated into English "verse the History of Eng- "land, writ in French by "Peter de Longatofta, Ca- "non of Bridlington, a Spe- "cimen of which you'l find in "Stow's Hist. in *A.D.* 1279. "where and in 1266. he is "join'd in the margin with "*Peirce Longton* or *Long- "rofe*; but his true Name "*Brunne* has described thus:

Peres of Langtoft a Chanoun
Schaven y the houſe of Bridlingtoune
On Romaunce al this ſtory he wrote
Of Engliſh kynges as we wel wote &c.

"This

little before his Death[1]. But tho' there were many intire Copies of the Work formerly, yet others were very imperfect. For notwithstanding most people then (as well as they are now) were very desirous of hearing the Acts of their famous Ancestours related, yet much the greater part were not of ability to get compleat Copies of this Book, and for that reason were contented with Transcripts of some particular Stories out of it, which for recreation (a thing aimed at by Robert of Brunne) they used to recite, and very often to sing by way of Ballads. Which method we ought not to wonder at, since our more ancient Ballads were nothing but such Rhythmical Historical Accounts, done by Persons of note for Learning, who proposed Truth in their Relations; and such Relations were stiled ancient Gests, which Word Gests was opposed to the French Romance[2], a Word it seems that was apply'd to whatever History was compiled in French Rhythms.

§. XI. Now from Robert of Brunne's calculating this Work for the Diver- Robert of Brunne a Man of a facetious merry Temper, yet

[1] "This translation is yet ex- "tant MSS. in Lambeth Li- "brary n. 131. folio."—— E litteris viri cujusdam pereruditi ad amicum. [1] See the Appendix to this Pref. Num. VI. [2] See pag. 205. of this Chronicle. See also the Appendix to this Preface, Num. VII.

without any Mixture of Immorality. The diligence of the Monks of Winchester in obstructing the Design of Joan of London. A Passage relating to the *sedes stercoraria* at Rome from an anonymous MS. Author.

sion and Recreation of the respective Readers, and such as met together for Mirth and Pleasure, we may easily gather, that he himself was of a chearful, pleasant humour, and that he was very blithe and merry whenever he saw a proper occasion; at all which times, however, he behav'd himself without any immoral or indecent Expressions. He was naturally addicted to virtue, and his being engaged in a religious course of Life made him have a stricter Guard upon himself. But 'twill be objected, that in the younger part of his Life, as hath been already noted [1], he was a Member of Sixille, a House that consisted of Women [2] as well as Men. Can we, therefore, think, that, since he was of a jocular Temper, he could be wholly free from Vice? or that he should not sometimes express himself loosely to the Sisters of that Place? This Objection would have some weight, had the Priory of Sixille been any ways noted for Luxury or Lewdness; but whereas every Member of it, both Men and Women, were very chast, we ought, by no means, to suppose, that Robert of Brunne behaved himself otherwise than became a good Christian

[1] §. IX. [2] See pag. 243. of this Work. See also the Appendix to this Work, Num. VI.

dur-

during his Abode there. Had his Life been sullied during that time, he would have been branded for it afterwards, and 'twould have been impossible for him to have obtained a Canonry at Brunne. Had the Friers and Nunns of Sixille acted against the Rules of Chastity and good Manners, they had Enemies enough to have marked them for it, not only in those more early Times, but even of late, when some, particularly a very fabulous Historian, have spared no pains to rake up all the scandalous Stories they could against Religion, tho' I do not know, that they have particularly accused the Priory of Sixille. 'Tis indeed no wonder, that there should be always such fictitious Writers, when they have some wicked Designs to carry on. Malice hath always been at the bottom, and tho' it hath oftentimes prevailed to the utter ruin of whole Societies, yet it hath frequently likewise discovered it self so palpably, as to baffle and quite overthrow such as have promoted it. 'Twas nothing else but the virtue of the Monks of Winchester, and their Diligence to secure their Reputation, that obstructed the Designs of one Joan of London, in the time of K. Edward I. She pretended to be a religious Convert, and had obtain'd, at least got forged, an Order from Rome and Canterbury, to have a yearly Maintenance allow'd her, dur-

ing life, in the Monastery of Winchester, claiming the same Pittance, *viz.* 8s. (or, as it should be perhaps, 8 *libs.*) a year *pro alimentis*, that every Monk had, a thing which so exasperated the Monks, that they prosecuted her in the Court of Arches, and I doubt not but they carried their Point, the matter being of pernicious consequence, if they had acquiesced and permitted such an Innovation. I did not meet with this Piece of History, 'till lately, when I read over an old Parchment Fragment [1], that was given me by my ingenious Friend Thomas Ward, of Longbridge near Warwick, Esq;. The like Attempts were made, without dispute, upon other Religious Houses, which, I suppose, met with the like Success. Envy accompanies Virtue, and, therefore, there will never be wanting persons, that will be ready to calumniate the most innocent. 'Tis what is complain'd of among all Persuasions. Even the Roman-Catholicks (who, to give them their due, and to hint what hath been long since observ'd, in the point and practice of Charity, and in the provision for those that serve at God's Altar, several of which are forced to put their hands to many a servile labour and base Employment, have shew'd themselves more

[1] See the Appendix to this Pref. Num. VIII.

sound

sound and constant, more righteous and religious, more reasonable and conscionable than some of us Protestants, that in profession and knowledge go far before them [1]) assert, that what many eminent Protestants affirm of the *sedes Stercoraria*, in the procession of a new Pope to Lateran, is meer Fiction and Calumny. A learned anonymous Author, therefore, which I have now before me in MS. [2] but imperfect, being lent me by the just now mentioned ingenious Mr. Ward, tells the Story thus [3]:—*When the pope cometh to Laterane, he entreth into the galerie or cloyster of the church, wher he is receyved of the canons of the same church in theyr habites honorablye with the crosse, whych the prior of the canons offreth to be kyssed of hym descendinge from his horse, which he doth, the cardinall deacon takynge it of the prior, and houldynge it to the pope's mouth takynge of his crowne and kyssynge it. The crowne is geven to the auditors to be houlden, and he takynge his miter, is by the same prior and canons receyved and conducted unto a marble seat, standinge without the principall gate at the left hand, which seat is called (of the ceremonie there done)* sterco-

[1] Rich. Eburne's Royal Law, p. 44, 48. [2] Intit'led, *The Ceremonyes of the holy Church of Rome.* It is in 4to. and consists of two Books, *the first booke* whereof *is of the thynges done only at Rome: the second of thynges done, as occasion serveth, at Rome or elsewhere.* But there is only one Chapter (and that too imperfect) of the second Book of this MS. the rest being wanting. [3] L. I. chap. 7.

raria, the stercorarie. *for syttynge down in that seat, and leanynge a little on one syde, so that he may seme rather to lye than to syt, the cardinales come to hym, and lyftynge hym up, say:* suscitat de pulvere egenum, & de stercore erigit pauperem; he lifteth up the nedie from the dust, and exalteth the poore from the dunghill, that he may syt amonge the princyes, and possesse the throne of glorie. *Then the Pope rysynge up, taketh out of the bosym of his chamberlayne so much money, as he can grip (and yet ther is nether gould nor sylver) & casteth it amonge the people sayinge:* argentum & aurum non est mihi, quod autem habeo hoc tibi do: I have nether sylver nor gould, yet such as I have I geve the. I know what is usually said on this occasion; but I am not concerned, at present, either way any farther, than to represent the Author's words, as I have done, faithfully, and to leave them to the consideration of all such, as are willing, and judge it very reasonable, to examin things fairly, before they accuse any of notorious Immoralities, and among such I am sure Robert of Brunne will be look'd upon as a Man of probity and virtue; especially since the same ingenuous persons (who are far from taking up with Calumnies) cannot be ignorant, what an aspersion some wicked men were pleased to cast upon a very pious and devout Family at Little Gid-

Ps. 112. ut sedeat cum principibus, & solium gloriæ teneat.

it is a certeyne coyne, neither of sylver nor of gould.

Gidding in Huntingtonshire, and to print a libellous Pamphlet upon the occasion, (on purpose to expose a most worthy and excellent Design as superstitious and popish) which was extracted, in good measure, though with unwarrantable Alterations, from a Letter that is now in MS. in the hands of the foresaid Mr. Ward, from which I shall print it in the Appendix [1] to this Preface, that it may be compared with the printed Book, of which, because it is now extremely scarce, I shall, at the same time, give [2] a new Impression (according to the former, provided it may be call'd, Orthography) from a Copy, the loan of which was obtain'd for me by my very learned and judicious Friend Thomas Baker, B.D. of St. John's-College in Cambridge, who, upon this occasion, was so kind, among other particulars, to write to me in this manner: *If an account of that reputed Nunnery* [of Little Gidding] *be what you want; you have the best and most authentic account, in Bp. Williams's Life (then Bp. of the Diocese) by Bp. Hacket, Par. 2d. pag.* 50, 51, *&c. Fol. & somewhat in Mr. Oley's Preface to Mr. Herbert's* Country Parson, *who was of the same College with Mr. Ferrer,* viz. *Clare-Hall, where Mr. Nich. Ferrer was first Fellow-Commoner, and after Fellow, where he commenc't*

[1] Num. IX. [2] See the Appendix to this Pref. Num. X.

Mr.

Mr. of Arts 1613. *He was so great and so good a man, that the late Bp. of Ely (Bp. Turner) had a design to write his Life, but what Collections he had made, or where log'd, I do not know: His Library was sold.*

'Tis impossible to give a particular Account of the Life of Robert of Brunne. There are Precedents, as well in ancient as later Times, to justify any one in leaving behind him Memoirs of his own Life. Dr. Wallis left some particulars of this nature. The Dr's. Memorandum at the Beginning of a Book (in the Bodleian Library) containing many things that he deciphered.

§. XII. But I must not pretend to enter into the minute Circumstances of the Life of Robert of Brunne, who although he was so well known in his own time, yet is now, as it were, quite forgot, even among our best Antiquaries. Stow indeed hath quoted him [1], and given us a remarkable passage out of him [2]. Otherwise I do not remember, that he hath been cited by any noted Writer. A thing much to be wonder'd at, especially since Selden was very diligent this way, and hath given [3] us a Passage out of the original Langtoft, whom Brunne calls [4] his Master. And what is still stranger is, that he should not have been known to Leland, who had been at Bourne, and had taken special notice of the Place [5] for it's pleasant Situation. But it seems this Author's Works were not then at Bourne, having been, it may be, convey'd off in that time of Plunder, otherwise Leland, without question, would have

[1] Annals pag. 196. Ed. fol.
[2] Ibid. p. 201. See also my Preface to Rob. of Glouc. § XIV.
[3] Diss. upon Fleta, p. 548.
[4] See pag. 206, 285.
[5] Lelandi Coll. Vol. IV. p. 31.

judged

judged them worthy his notice. Neither was there then, when Leland was there, as I believe, any Obit Book about the time when Robert of Brunne died, at least if there were, 'tis probable there was no note in it about his being a celebrated Writer, which particular, however, the Members of the Priory might have acquainted Leland with, had they had any inclination to gratify him, as I am apt to think they had not, upon Account of the mischiefs they wisely foresaw Henry VIII. (from whom Leland had his Commission) was apt to bring upon them. For want, therefore, of particulars, we must not think of writing a full account of Brunne's Life, the only Memoirs about him being what he hath given himself in his Prologue[1] to this work, in his Transition [2] from the first Part thereof to the second, and in what he writes [3] in the Harleyan MS. of Manuel de Peche, which are indeed but slender, and yet such as give us some (and that no despicable) Idea of him. I wish he had been fuller of himself, as I do likewise lament, that some other of our ancient Worthies had not left us Memoirs of their Lives. But this, it may be, was neglected by them, as disagreeable to the Rules of Modesty, which, not-

[1] See the Appendix to this Pref. Num. V. [2] See the Appendix, Num. VII. [3] See my Preface to Rob. of Glouc. §. XIII.

with-

withstanding, was a false notion, especially if they took care to conceal what they committed to writing of that kind 'till after their death, and put it into the hands of some faithfull Friends, that might make use of it in defence of their posthumous Fame against malicious Enemies. Some of the greatest Men did not look upon it as immodest to do themselves this piece of Justice, not excepting even that good man venerable Bede. And Posterity hath imitated them. Thence Sir Thomas Bodley was pleased also to leave behind him an Account written by himself of his own Life [1]; and, to name no others, since his time the learned Dr. John Wallis writ an Account of some Passages of his own Life, by way of Letter to my late learned Friend Dr. Thomas Smith, from whose Papers I shall publish it in the Appendix [2], with part of a Letter [3] of the Dr's. to Bp. Fell concerning the Report of his deciphering King Charles the First's Cabinet, in reference to which I shall only here remark, that the Dr's. original Book (in his own hand) is now in the

---

[1] Published first in 4to at Oxford *anno D.* 1647. and afterwards, at the Beginning of *Reliquiæ Bodleianæ*, at London in 8vo. *A.D.* 1703. This Life was translated into Latin, and 'tis still preserved in that Language both in the Bodl. Library, and in the learned Dr. Thomas Smith's MSS. in my possession, Vol. 22. p. 60. [2] Num. XI. [3] Num. XII.

Bod-

Bodleian Library, with this Memorandum (in his own hand also) at the beginning of it:

Hanc Epistolarum Collectionem, quas Ciphris scriptas Ipse exposuerat, Celeberrimæ Bibliothecæ Bodleianæ in Illustrissima Academia Oxoniensi dedit Johannes Wallis, ibidem Geometriæ Professor Savilianus. Reservatâ sibi in posterum potestate addendi vel emendandi.

A Collection of several Letters and other Papers, which were at several times intercepted, written in Cipher, Deciphered by John Wallis, Professor of Geometry in the University of Oxford---Given to the Publick library there, Anno Domini 1653.

Which Memorandum I the rather take notice of, because the being acquainted with the liberty, that Dr. Wallis reserved to himself, may be of service to such, as are concerned to defend, as well the Title of this Book in the printed Catalogue [1], as what hath been said of this MS. by Henry Stubbe [2] and Anthony à Wood [3], who (as other honest men have done [4]) look'd upon

---

[1] Tom. I. Part 1. n. 3524.

[2] In pag. 7. of *A severe enquiry into the late Oneirocritica; or an exact account of the grammatical part of the Controversie between Mr. Thom. Hobbes and John Wallis, D. D.* Lond. 1657. 4to.

[3] Ath. Oxon. Vol. II. col. 415. See also pag. 61. of the Life of Dr. John Barwick in English, Lond. 1724: 8vo.

[4] See pag. 156. of a Book, intit. *The Civil Warres of Great*

this business of deciphering as a base act. And it may be the learned Dr. Smith would have spared his note on the occasion, had he been either aware of the beforesaid Memorandum, or given any credit to what Anthony à Wood had said[1] of the Dr's. being *able at any time to make black white, and white black, for his own ends,* and of his having *a ready knack of sophistical evasion,* a character which Anthony afterwards enlarged, notwithstanding it does not appear in the late spurious Edition of his *Athenæ Oxonienses,* in which he is made to have written Things transacted after his Death.

If Robert of Brunne had any Epitaph, it seems to have been short, agreeable to those times, and to be nowirretrievable.

§. XIII. But to return to Robert of Brunne, it is very well known, that Leland in his Travells made it his business, not only to seek out and inspect MSS. but to view and consider ancient monumental Stones, in which he shew'd a great deal of Judgment. For he did not think it worth his while, to take notes of all Inscriptions and Monuments that he happen'd to light upon, but of such only that were to the memory of persons of worth; and among other Places that

---

Great Britain and Ireland. Containing an Exact History of their Occasion, Originall, Progress, and Happy End. By an Impartiall Pen. Lond. 1661. fol. The Author subscribes himself J. D. at the End of his Dedication, *To the most noble Charles Duke of Richmond and Lenox,* &c. [1] Vol. II. coll. 816. of the genuine Edition of his *Athenæ Oxon.*

he

he nicely examined, was this of Brunne, tho' his Notes upon that occasion do not now occur. Tho' therefore I am of opinion, that Robert of Brunne was buried in the Priory of Brunne, and had some Epitaph over him, yet in what part it was, and what the Epitaph said of him, is now uncertain, unless the Stone were still preserved, as I do not think that it is, or unless such Papers as Mr. Leland's were forthcoming to inform us. If he had any Epitaph, I do not at all doubt but it was short, far from the modern way of writing Inscriptions. A good man deserves praise; and the speaking often of such is of great use for promoting virtue. But then to represent ill men as good, is one effectual way to encourage wickedness; and yet this is what is now adays too often practised. A lewd vicious wretch shall have a fine Epitaph (and too often an Harangue from the Pulpit) and be characteriz'd as an exceeding good man, tho' at the same time, perhaps, he did not deserve the least share of so great an Encomium. Our Ancestors, no question, had their Defects; but then they were not guilty of such Extravagancies in their Characters of the Dead. A plain Monument, and a plain Inscription was then common. Their Names and Offices, with a *cujus animæ propicietur Deus*, was then generally the Subject of their

their Epitaphs; but should such a Conclusion be made use of at this time, the Outcries would be great, and nothing but Curses denounced: The Favourers thereof should be called the worst of men, and be condemn'd as injurious to the Dead, as if the Defunct needed either prayers or pity, notwithstanding, it may be, none ever stood in greater need of such mercifull Offices. But what is this to Brunne? or what occasion was there to speak of the custom of writing Epitaphs? A Question that may be soon resolved by those, that will consider, that Brunne lived in an age, when the custom of writing concise Epitaphs was much practised, and that therefore, in all probability, the Epitaph, if there were any at all, upon him, did not deviate from the then receiv'd custom, when even the Date of the respective persons Deaths was frequently omitted, which is what might also be left out in that of Brunne. This Brevity and Simplicity is agreeable to Antiquity, tho' it must be granted, that some of the short Roman Inscriptions carry Tokens in them of their being spurious; and whether there be not such in (some, at least, of) the *Inscriptiones singulares ineditæ* of Hadrian Beverland, I shall leave to the Judgment of the Reader, after he hath perus'd them in the Appendix [1].

[1] Num. XIII.

Peter Langtoft's Original, as well as Robert of Brunne's English Work, consists of two Parts, the first Part of which is here omitted, as containing nothing but Geffry of Monmouth. A Passage out of Rastall's Chronicle about Stonehenge.

§. XIV. Now since we have no more Memoirs, relating to the Life of Robert of Brunne, I shall leave the farther discussion of that Point, and will confine my self to the Historical Work he hath left behind him. This consists of two Parts, as likewise does the French Original of Peter Langtoft. The first Part brings the History down from the most early Times to the Death of Cadwalader, the second from that Period of time to the Death of K. Edward the First. But then whereas both Parts in the French are written in long Verse, and in one Column, on the contrary the second Part only in the English Book is in long Verse, and in one Column, and the first Part is in short Verse, and makes two Columns: which Remark, however, is not so worthy of notice, as another, which I must by no means omit, and that is this. Peter Langtoft himself had carefully read over Geffry of Monmouth, and resolved to make him his Standard for the first Part of his Work; but then, instead of representing him intire, he abridg'd him, and left only a Rhythmical Epitome of him; which when Robert of Brunne well perceiv'd, instead of following Peter Langtoft in that point, he judged it more adviseable to represent Geffry at large, but

not according to the compendious Account in Langtoft, but in the manner he found done in French Rhythms to his hands by one Master Wace (the same, as I take it, that others [1] call Wate) whose Translation being approved of, Robert of Brunne thought it a piece of prudence to follow him, without regard to the Original Latin of Geffry. The first Part, therefore, of Robert of Brunne is nothing but Geffry of Monmouth, and that too translated into English from a French Author; but then the second Part contains a Translation of Peter Langtoft's second Part, yet with many Insertions that do not appear in the Original. After I had read over the whole Work, (which, take it all together, may be properly call'd *Robert of Brunne's Chronicle*, a Title I have call'd it by lately [2]) I concluded it to be a needless piece of service to publish any of the first Part, (excepting the Prologue [3] to the whole Work, and the Transition [4] from the First to the second Part thereof, in both which he speaks of himself and the Work) and all my Friends, that I consulted upon the occasion, readily concurr'd with me. For which reason I have kept

---

[1] See Aaron Thompson's Preface to his Translation of Geff. of Mon. pag. xxv. [2] *Viz.* in several Places of my Ed. of Rob. of Glouc. [3] See my Appendix to this Preface, Num. V. [4] See my Appendix, Num. VII.

to,

to, and made publick, the latter Part only, as containing a great many Things not commonly known, such as all, that are curious in our English History, will be glad to be acquainted with, especially since Peter Langtoft, the original Author, flourished in Edward the First's time (whose Story he tells at large) and Robert of Brunne, his Translator and Improver, was not long after him. But then, tho' the First Part be deservedly pass'd over by me, yet the Reader may meet with several Specimens of it, if he be pleased to have recourse to my Glossary to Robert of Gloucester's Chronicle, and another Specimen also I shall annex here in the Appendix [1], for the sake of those who shall undertake to write about Stone-henge, which our old English Historians unanimously affirm to have been a British Work, which opinion Rastall himself seems likewise to have espoused, notwithstanding he did not readily agree with those, that held them to be natural Stones. His words [2] are worth reading, and therefore I shall here transcribe them, as I found them in the Copy of his Chronicle, that was lent me by my Friend the ingenious Mr. John Murray of London; and indeed they are the rather fit to be considered, because Camden [3], as

[1] Num. XIV. [2] In his Chron. C. ii. a. [3] Brit. p. 184. in Wiltshire, Ed. Lat. fol.

I believe, had them in his view at the same time that he was writing about their being artificial, notwithstanding he hath not been pleased to make any mention of his author.

¶ Thys Aurylambrose dyscroyd the panym lawys & reedyfyed churchys of cryscendome he was poysonyd at wyncheſter & was buryed at stoneheng vnder the grete stonys whych stonys the bryttons say that one Merlyon which was begotin of a woma by the deuyll brought out of yreland by the craft of magyk whych dyuers men thynk stondyth nother with good fayth nor reason & also the bryttons say that thys Marlyon told & wrote many prophesyes wheron they gretely beleue But other clerkis and grete lernyd men gyue lyttyll credence to them | & also they sey that those stonis were neuer brought out of yreland by merlion but that they were made by craft of men as of lement & morter made of flynt stonys | one reason they alege therto because those stonis be so hard that no tryn tole wyll cut them without grete bysynes and also they be of one facyon and bygnes saue only there be. jj. sortis | & so most lykly to be caste and made in a molde & that men thynke it a thyng almoste vnpossyble to get so many grete stonys owte of anny quarre or rokk that shold be so herd so equall of bygnes & fassyon | a nother reason they sey that it is not well possyble to haue so many gret stonis to be all of one color & of one greyn throw and in euery place but that some stone shuld be more darker of colour in one place or another or at the lest haue some vaynys of other colours in them as grete stonis of merbell and other gret stonis commynly haue | But these stonis at stoneheng be all of one gryt without chaunge of colour or vayne & all of one facyon therfore many grete wyseemen suppose them to be made of a morter of flynt or other stonys.

§. XV.

§. XV. In publishing this old Piece of History, I have aim'd at the same accuracy and exactness as I have done in my other publick Works, and as in Robert of Gloucester, so also in this Piece of Antiquity I have made use of four Saxon Characters, *viz.* ȝ or ᵹ, þ or th, ƿ or w (which, however, very rarely occurs) and ẏ or ỿ, letters that are met with in most MSS. of that age, as well as in those of the times afterwards quite down to the Beginning of printing, nay even to the Destruction of the Religious Houses, which put a stop to many laudable Employments, among which was also the Elegancy of writing, (which was much encourag'd in Abbeys,) and the profession of the Saxon Tongue, which was kept up, with more than ordinary diligence, in some of those Houses of Religion. This exactness I have always been cautious in, because 'tis what the most judicious Readers exspect, and where they meet with it, they never fail to set the greater esteem upon the Writings that are so set out. And because some curious persons will be ready to inquire, what sort of French it is, that Peter Langtoft made use of; partly to gratify them on that account, and partly to illustrate some expressions of Robert of Brunne, I have given many Specimens of that

The exactness made use of in publishing this piece of ancient History. To gratify some Readers, several Specimens of the French are also made publick with it.

Language in the Notes, that I have put at the bottom of the page, in order to which I have perus'd three French MSS. of Peter Langtoft, that were sent me, after I had begun to print this Translation of Robert of Brunne's, by that most excellent and accomplished Herald, the learned Mr. Anstis. One of these MSS. (which is the most ancient) belongs to the College of Arms, the Members whereof, as they are Men of curious Learning, and ready to promote Works of this kind, generously consented, that I should have the loan of it, just in the same manner as (a thing I have hinted before[1]) the Members of the Inner-Temple (who are equally ready to advance Undertakings of this nature) most willingly agreed, that I should have the benefit of the MS. of Robert of Brunne. This MS. of the Heralds Office belong'd once to that truly great, good, and generous man (a person of an unaffected Plainness and primitive Spirit) Raphe Sheldon, of Beoly in Worcestershire, Esq; as appears from this Note, written at the beginning of it by the late industrious Antiquary Mr. Anthony à Wood, to whom Mr. Sheldon was a very great and liberal Friend[2]:

---

[1] §. X. [2] See *Athenæ Oxon.* Vol. I. col. 364, 604. Vol. II. col. 449, 866. One Instance of the said Raphe Sheldon's Affection for Mr. Wood is this, that not long before he died (as I am inform'd by an excellent Friend) he gave Mr. Wood,

Given to the Heralds office at London *by* Raphe Sheldon *of* Beoly *in* Worestersh. *Esq;* who *died* 24 June 1684.

The other two French MSS. belong to Mr. Anstis himself, and are both bound in one and the same Volume; but then whereas one continues the Story to the Death of K. Edward I. the other (which contains only the second Part of Langtoft) ends before that Period at these Words in pag. 287.

He granted for to gyue þe fifte penie to þe kyng,
In his werre wele to lyue, & save þer oþer þing.

And, for further Satisfaction, the Conclusion of the French MS. that belongs to the Heralds Office is here inserted in this Preface.

§. XVI. Tho' the French Passages at the bottom of the page are sufficient for my purpose, yet, as a farther Satisfaction to the inquisitive and curious Reader, I shall here publish, in this Preface, the Conclusion of the French Peter de Langtoft, as 'tis express'd in the MS. of the Heralds Office, especially since the last Lines are the Scribe's own, which will, in some measure, confirm what I have observ'd [1] formerly about Chaucer's Revocation of the Par-

Wood, by word of mouth, an hundred Pounds towards printing his *Athenæ Oxonienses*, which the Father (a person of great virtue and honour) of the present Edward Sheldon, Esq;. confirm'd to him (tho' not oblig'd) when he came into possession of the estate. [1] See my Appendix to Rob. of Gloucester, p. 601, 602, 603.

son's Tale, and the same might be withall confirm'd from other MSS. where the like Additions have been added by the Scribes or Librarians.

En lan auaunt nome cum nous auouns oÿe,
Le iour ſerÿme de Jule, pur veir vous certifÿe,
Ke noſtre Reis Edward, ki alme dieu benÿe,
A Burg ſuȝ les sablouns, alaunt vers Albanÿe
En uerraȳ creaunce, ſon ſecle ad finÿe.
Maindenaunt apre ſa mort eſtait puplÿe,
Tranſlatez eū le cors, par barnez e clerzÿe,
A Waltham pres de Loundȝes ſa demene abbeÿe,
[1] Quatre Maȳs enteres ſolempneint ſeruÿe,
Baunez iuſt ſur bere, ſaunz auoȳz eſpaȝnÿe,
Partiſaunt a pouers, qe puȝ cele alme prÿe.
" Trent [2] & quatre annȝ. vjjj. Maȳs. v. iours vous dÿe
Regnaȳt [3] ſuȝ Engletere par leȳ eſtablÿe,
Et reſoun & dreit maȳntint la monarchÿe.
De vigour & value de ſen replenÿe,
[4] Pere nul auoȳt dount gwiez ſeȳgnorÿe.
En pȝede ſon lȳgnage oȝe eū [5] le cors ſenelye
A Weſtmonſter en toumbe de marbre bien polÿe.
Le prince, qi puȝ nous ſuȝ Pilate ſu punÿe,
Le Reis ſire Edwaȝd reſceÿue en ſa mercÿe,
Reſele al alme face des foȝfetz en ſa vÿe,
En regal manſioun la mene a compaȳgnÿe
Dn ſeȝuiſe nȳ ad fors ioye & melodÿe. A.

[1] Matre moys enters ſolempnement Cod. Anstisianus. [2] Robert of Brunne (pag. 341.) hath wrongly express'd this, by telling us that he reigned only 24 *years* 8 *months and* 5 *days*. Our later Chronicles are more exact, which tell us, that K. Edward I. reigned 34. years 7 months and 21. days. For he began his reign Nov. 16. 1272. and died July 7. 1307. [3] Sur Cod. Anst. [4] Par nul auayt Cod. Anst. [5] Son cors pro le cors in Cod. Anst.

Cy finiſt Peres ſon liuez en honour,
Et Jon qe leſcrit parfet ad ſon labour,
Al terme de ſa vie Dieu luy face ſocour,
Et mette ſalme en repoſe oue Seintz en Dotour,
Jon qe leſcrit ordre porte de preſtre,
Le diſcipe de Atlyngflete Sire Jon qe fu ſon meſtre,
Le pria del eſcriuer par ſa mayne deſtre,
Dieus i mene lour almes en la ioye celeſtre.

§. XVII. And this is all I have to observe with respect to the French MSS. made use of by me in this Work, unless it be, that at the end of that belonging to the Heralds Office is a Note, written in an old hand, (but different from that of the MS.) concerning *Hugo Cardinalis*, a Person of great Sanctity and Learning, which I shall also take the liberty of publishing here.

Out of which MS. is here likewise published a Note concerning *Hugo Cardinalis*. *Actor* for *auctor* in many MSS. The Author of *liber festivalis*, or *festialis*. A Remark relating to St. Wenefride.

" Tempore Regis H. tercij.

" Hiis temporibus floruit vita & sciencia Dns. Hu- Anno Domini MCC. LXVII. De Hugone Cardinali, qui concordancias Bibliæ composuit.
" go Cardinalis, fratrum Prædicatorum ordinis,
" qui doctor eximius doctrina sana & perlucida
" totam Bibliam postillavit. Concordanciarum
" eciam Bibliæ primus actor fuit, quem, propter
" vitam bonam & scienciæ famam, papa Inno-
" cencius Sanctæ Sabinæ instituit Cardinalem,
" in quo statu licet esset de ordine fratrum
" Prædicatorum, omnibus tamen Religionibus
" ac eciam secularibus placidus extitit." In

which

which Note *actor* is the same with *auctor*, and *Religionibus* the same with *Religiosis*. The same way of writing *auctor* I have very often seen in old MSS. and so 'tis written in an excellent MS. of the Book called Festival or Festial, lent me by my very kind Friend Thomas Ward, of Longbridge, Esq;. At the top of the first page of which MS. an old, but later, hand hath written, This boke is called The Festial of Englisshe Sermones. necessari to simple Curates and parisshe prestes. per. and at the bottom of the same (first) page, in the same later hand, is written, *actor libri dicitur fuisse.*

plommer. I cannot tell who is meant by *Plommer*. Mr. Ward (and I am not willing to dissent from so candid a Gentleman) conjectures him to have been *Robertus Plimmodunensis* or *Plymton*, so sirnamed from Plympton in Devonshire, of which he was a black Canon, and is said [1] to have written *Conciones Dominicales*. But then I find by my late learned Friend Dr. Thomas Smith's Catalogue, that the MS. in the Cottonian Library [2] ascribes this Work to John Mirkus a black Canon of Lulshul or Lilleshull in Shropshire; and it may be very truly. This is certain, that there is but just room or time, for Plympton's being the Author or Col-

[1] Baleus, p. 379. Ed. fol. Pitseus, p. 409. [2] Claudius A. II. 1.

lector.

lector. For the Author says himself in the Prologue or Preface, **this treatys is drawen oute of legenda aurea,** the Author whereof *Jacobus de Viragine* or *Voragine* flourished [1] *anno* 1290. and died *circa an.* 1300. and Robert Plympton seems (from Le Neve's *Fasti* [2]) to have been Archdeacon of Totton *an.* 1310, *&c.* Mr. Ward's MS. is in many respects different from the printed Book, spoken of by me in my Glossary [3] to Robert of Gloucester, but then these Variations chiefly relate to the Orthography, which is much changed in the Print for more modern Expressions, as less lyable to stop the Reader. And yet there is one Omission I find in the print, which I cannot forbear taking notice of here, and that is the Account of St. Wenefride, which is intirely left out in the print, and for that reason I shall subjoyn it in my Appendix [4], as a Specimen of the MS. and that it may be the better compared with the old Rhythmical Life of this holy Virgin, printed at the End of the late Bp. Fleetwood's Book [5] about her from a Copy that I transcribed and sent to his Lordship, at the same time that I sent him a Transcript of *Robertus Salopiensis*'s Life of her, when I should likewise have communicated to him

[1] Cavei Hist. Lit. p. 654. Edit. Genev. [2] Pag. 96. [3] Pag. 739. [4] Num. XV. [5] Intit. *The Life and Miracles of St. Wenefrede, together with her Litanies; with some Historical Observations made thereon.* Lond. 1713. 8vo.

this

this Account in the Festival, had I then had the command of the MS. tho' at the same time I cannot forbear noting, that my sentiments are widely different from the Bishop's with respect to this Virgin. For whereas the Bishop hath insinuated, that there never was any such holy person, and that all which is reported of her is fiction, on the contrary, I not only believe, that there was such a virtuous, pious and holy young woman, (nor can I imagine, that she would have been inserted either in the Calendar, or in the Offices of the Missal of Hereford, had the Compilers thought otherwise) but that she perform'd many uncommon acts of Devotion, which occasion'd many Speculations; and tho' I am far from believing many Things alledg'd about her, yet I think, that the very same Arguments that his Lordship hath offer'd in this Affair (if they should be judg'd valid, as I cannot think that they ever will) may as well serve to cut off abundance of other holy persons that are celebrated in History, whose Examples conduce much to the advancement of Piety and good Works. Arguments drawn from Inconsistence in Chronology are but weak, since it appears, that the Monks were generally but indifferent Chronologers. Neither are negative Arguments of any greater Force. *Robertus Salopiensis* was Prior of

of Shrewsbury, a man of a devout life, and, without doubt, followed other Writers notwithstanding they be lost since; and yet at the same time it must not be questioned, but he followed Tradition in several Things. Which we need not wonder at, since the Brittish History, in very great measure, depended, in the more early Times, upon Traditions delivered from Father to Son; so that in this case it was very difficult to adjust the exact years, such as accurate Chronologers exspect. A thing that will be readily allow'd by such as consider the uncertainty of the ancient γενεαί. Nor do I see any thing incredible in what is said of a Cripple's being restored to his limbs, that had pray'd and watch'd all night at the shrine of St. Wenefride, whatever the latitudinarians and libertines of this Age may think. In old time Vigils were strictly observ'd, and 'twas not look'd upon as Superstition and Foppery to continue in devotion all night, and to render Thanks to Almighty God for Founders and Benefactors, and for the good Examples of pious Persons. The Name of Vigils is still retain'd, but the practice too much laid aside. The Founders of, and Benefactors to, Churches are (alass!) generally forgot, and little care is now adays taken about Thanksgivings for them.

§. XVIII.

Many Things in this Chronicle, that are different from what is related by other Historians.

§. XVIII. Such as are studious of our History and Antiquities will the more readily peruse this Chronicle, and consider the particulars with the greater attention, when they shall understand, that there are many Things in it, that are different from what is related by other Historians. The reader himself will be much more able to collect all these together, and afterwards to pass a Judgment upon them, than I am. Nor indeed is it properly my business to point out such Passages, my immediate province, in Affairs of this kind, being to act the part of a faithfull Editor, not that of an Annotator or Commentator. And yet, for the sake of some, that have occasionally consulted me about such Passages, I shall here take notice of several of them, as I have observed a few at the bottom of the Page of the Text, and will leave the rest to those that shall take the opportunity of reading over and considering this obsolete Chronicle, which will be esteemed (unless I am very much mistaken) as such another Curiosity as that of Robert of Gloucester, to which as I added a Glossary (that hath given great satisfaction, and been well receiv'd) so I have likewise perform'd the same piece of service for Peter Langtoft, by which his Language (which is now often very difficult and intricate, notwithstanding

in

in his own time it was the vulgar speech) will be render'd the more intelligible.

§. XIX. In pag. 5. the Author tells us, that K. Ina had a son named Adelus, and that he died before his Father, a particular which I do not, at present, remember to be mentioned by others. In pag. 8. he calls Eadbald K. of Lyndesay, tho' he was really K. of Mercia. He uses this stile, it may be, because Lindsay in Lincolnshire was the chief part of his Residence, and therefore afterwards[1] he makes use of the word Lyndesay for *Mercia*. In p. 13. he tells us, that Brightrick, K. of the Westsaxons, was buried at Tewksbury, whereas others say it was at Wareham. In p. 17. he acquaints us, that Wilaf, K. of Mercia, was slain by K. Egbert at Doncaster. Others make him only vanquished, and observe that he was afterwards an obedient tributary Subject to Egbert. In p. 20. he notes, that K. Ethelwulph was buried at Winchester, and this is what the generality of Historians agree in, tho' Speed tells us[2], that he was first buried at Stamrige, and afterwards removed to Winchester, which seems very true, since even Asser Menevensis, according to Archbishop Parker's excellent Edition in Saxon Characters, agrees in the very same thing, as

Some of which are here enumerated.

[1] Pag. 9. [2] Pag. 659.

may

may be seen in my Discourse[1] upon some Historical Fragments (lent me by Mr. Murray) at the end of Heming's Chartulary of the Church of Worcester, to which I shall refer the Reader. In p. 21. he tells us, that Eadbald was buried at Shirburn; but then others tell us, that he was afterwards removed to Salisbury, which was the Roman *Sorbiodunum:* and whereas in p. 20. he makes Ethelbert to be uncle to the said Edbald, and brother of K. Ethelwulf, on the contrary Ethelbert was really brother to K. Edbald, and Ethelwulf the father of both. In the same page Elfrith (or, as others, Ethelred) is made to be son of K. Egbright, or Egbert, whereas he was his grandson. In p. 22. he tells us, that the town where S. Edmund, King of the East-Angles, was slain, was in old time called Dren. Others say Hegleſdune[2], Egleſdene[3], Egleſdon[4], Ægleſtoun[5], Hoxtoun[6], or Horon[7]. In p. 23. he says, that K. Elfride, or Ethelred, was buried at Driffeld (or Driffield in Yorkshire) whereas others say, he was interred at Winburn in Dorsetshire; but then he hath confounded the said Elfride with Alkfryd, or A-

[1] P. 659. [2] Mon. Angl. T. I. p. 284. a, b. [3] Mon. Angl. T. I. p. 291. a. [4] Legend of the Saints (pr. by W. de Worde 1495.) fol. cccxxxix. b. in the lyf of saynt Edmond kyng and martyr. [5] Lelandi Coll. Vol. I. p. 219. [6] Ibid. [7] Mon. A. Tom. I. p. 285. b.

lured,

lured, the most learned K. of Northumberland, who was really buried at Driffield [1]; and 'tis with no less errour, that he makes [2] that to belong to K. Elfrid or Ethelred, with respect to his spending his time, which belong'd really to Ælfred the Great. In p. 25. is something added by Robert of Brunne himself about Hanelok the Dane, which is not in the original Peter Langtoft, nor our common Historians, but 'tis, however, very imperfect, occasioned, I suppose, for want of Vouchers. In p. 27. he makes Edward the Elder have 14 children by two Wives. Others say three Wives. His Notes about these Wives are short but singular; yet he did not know the Names of some of these Daughters. In pag. 28. he makes K. Athelstan cast his brother Edwin headlong into the Thames, which is different from what is taught us by other Historians, as may be seen in pag. 337. of the third Ed. of Speed. In p. 29, 30. he tells us, that Charles, K. of France, married Ilde or Edhild, sister of K. Athelstan, whereas, according to others [3], she was married to Hugh Earl of Paris. Authors differ mightily about the Names of Edward the Elder's Daughters and their Marriages. From p. 29. we learn,

[1] Camdeni Brit. p. 635. Ed. 4to. 1600. [2] Pag. 23, 24. [3] Guil. Malmesb. p. 28. & Speed p. 338.

that Peter Langtoft cannot tell us, where K. Athelstan was buried. Robert of Brunne says at Hexham; but others report it to be at Malmsbury. The Saxon Chronicle tells us not. In p. 33. he tells us, K. Edred was crowned at London. Others say at Kingston. In p. 34. he makes Edwy brother to K. Edred, whereas he was his nephew. In p. 35. he remarks, that Rumey or Rumfey Nunnery in Hampshire was founded by K. Edgar for an hundred Nunns. This was a large number. And I began to suspect, that it was a Mistake, especially when the Valuation at the Dissolution did not, as I thought, answer so many. But, upon my writing to my learned Friend Mr. Richard Furney, I was soon convinced, that there could not be fewer than are assigned in this Chronicle, from an Election of an Abbess of this Place in the year 1333. being the seventh year of the Reign of K. Edw. III. at which time there being very near 90 Nunns present, that gave their Votes, it is an undenyable Proof of what is asserted by the Historian. Mr. Furney extracted his Account from an authentick Register, and I shall beg leave to insert it at large from his Letter in my Appendix[1]. There is no doubt but the Provision was every way equal to the Number, as well as to the Quality, of those that

[1] Num. XVI.

were

were educated and lived here, notwithstanding the Valuation I have spoke of, tho' I believe the Revenues, upon some Accidents or other, had been much altered from what they had been originally, as the Number of the Nunns was also very much decreased some time before the Dissolution, as may appear from what my before mentioned Friend Mr. Furney hath observ'd in another [1] Letter to me, in which he hath been pleased likewise to insert a Note, about our old Historians, from a valuable MS. of Trivet. There is now a fair Church at Rumsey, being the remains of the dissolved Nunnery [2]. In the same page (viz. 35.) tho' the Author tells us that Edmund, Son of K. Edgar, died at Peterburgh, yet he hath not been pleased to inform us, where he was buried, which others assure us was at Rumsey Nunnery, that I have been speaking of. Whence we read in the Saxon Chronicle [3], An. DCCCCLXXI. Heꝛ ꝼoꝼð-ꝼeꝛðe Eaðmunð æþelinȝ. ⁊ hiꝛ lic lið æt Rumeꝛ-iȝe. With which agrees Florence of Worcester. *Clito Eadmundus*, (saith he [4],) *regis Eadgari filius obiit, & in monasterio Rumesiæ honorificè est sepultus.* Nor is there any variation in that most excellent Copy of Florence that I have with

[1] See my Appendix to this Preface, Num. XVII. [2] See Sir Thomas Herbert's Memoirs, p. 95. [3] P. 121. [4] Pag. 358. Ed. 4to. sub anno 971.

Dr. Langbaine's MSS. Notes. This Nunnery had been founded but the year before by his Father K. Edgar, and so this was one of the first Bodies of the Royal Family with the Sepulture of which it was ever honoured. In p. 36. he tells an odd miraculous Story of K. Edgar. This K. Edgar died, according to our common Chronicles (tho' there is a difference in some Writers) in the year 975. Our Author informs us, that twenty four years after his Death (which must be *A. D.* 999.) one Edward was Abbat of Glastonbury, and that this Edward made a Tombe for K. Edgar, but that the Tombe being too little, the King's shanks were broke by the direction of the Abbat, in order to fit the Tombe for the Royal Remains. Hereupon Bloud and Water, it seems, came out of the shanks, and the Abbat became blind. Which being look'd upon as a Miracle, Bishop Oswald (the same that became Bishop of Worcester *A. D.* 960. and being translated to the Archbishoprick of York in 971. or 972. held both 'till his Death in 992. [1]) ran and laid the Bones in a rich Shrine; and that was (as our Author asserts) in *A. D.* 973. (at which time Sigegarus, and not Edward, whose Name I do

[1] Godwin de Præs. Part. I. p. 504. & Part. II. p. 17. Isaacson's Chron. Le Neve's Fasti Ecclesiæ Angl. p. 294, 306.

not

not find in the List, was Abbat of this Monastery) which could not be, if the thing happened, as our Author himself assures us it did, twenty four years after the King's Decease. But I think, after all, that the Story is to be understood of Egelward, (abbat of Glastonbury) it being reported of him by John of Glastonbury in his MS. Chronicle, and placed by him under the year 1052. a little after which sacrilegious act (for such the violence shew'd to K. Edgar's Body was esteem'd) the said abbat (as we are assured by that Author) died distracted. In p. 37. he tells us, that Edward the Martyr was buried in a Shrine at Westminster. Others tell us, that he was first buried at Warham, and afterwards removed to the Minster of Shaftsbury; tho' the Saxon Chronicle and Florence of Worcester say, that he was interr'd at Warham, without adding any thing about his being removed to Shaftsbury. Nor do they place his Death under the year 976. as our Author doth, but under 978. In p. 40. he makes Edmund Ironside to be Son of K. Ethelred by his Queen Emma, whereas others make him his Son by his first Wife Elgiva. In p. 43. he speaks of Kurkille Earl of the Danes, where, at the Bottom of the page, I have noted, that he is commonly called Turkille. and indeed it is Turkille in the French MSS. In p. 44. he

makes Suane die at Gainesborough; and so also some others: but then others relate, that it was at Thetford. In p. 46. he speaks of K. Eilred or Ethelred's falling sick at Euesham, whereas others say it was at Cosham. In p. 47. he makes mention of the Tower of Northampton, (and 'tis tour also in the French;) by which word Tower I take it for granted, that he means the Castle of Northampton, concerning which Leland writes thus [1]: *The Castel stondith hard by the West Gate, and hath a large Kepe. The Area of the Residew is very large, and bullewarkes of Yerth be made afore the Castelle Gate.* In p. 49. he tells us, that Edmund Ironside had no other Child besides one Son, he means Edward sirnamed the outlaw; whereas 'tis well known from other Historians, that he had another Son (younger than Edward) called Edmund. Passing over what he says in p. 50. of Harold Harefoot (the Son of K. Cnute) his being a Bastard (for the best Historians affirm the same) I cannot but remark, that whereas in p. 51. he makes the said Cnute to be buried at Westminster, others assure us it was at Winchester. In the same page (*viz.* 51.) he says, that the Assembly or Meeting about Harold Harefoot and Hardeknute was under (or near) Southampton. Others tell us it was at

[1] Itin. Vol. I. p. 6.

Ox-

Oxford. In p. 58. he tells us, that Earl Godwyn's Wife, that was banished by the Earl her Husband, was named Engle. Others call her Gytha. In p. 73. he stiles William the Conqueror's Queen by the name of Elianor, whom others call Maud. In p. *ead.* he calls Harold of Kent's Sons Edmund and Edwyn. Others call them Edmund and Godwyn. In p. 82. he calls that the third year of William the Conqueror's Reign, which was the thirteenth, and that the fourth, which was the fourteenth. In p. 105. he informs us, that Maud, K. Hen. the First's Queen, was buried in a Tomb at St. Paul's, and refers us to Westminster for her Story. Others make no mention of her being buried at St. Paul's, but tell us it was at Westminster, and so in particular the Register of the Priory of the Blessed Trinity (commonly called Christ-Church) at London, as may be seen from what I have published out of it in my Ed. of *Guilielmus Neubrigensis*[1], where her Epitaph also occurrs; which Epitaph, it may be, our Author had in view, when he directed us to Westminster for a particular Account of her, tho', I suppose, he had also some other Record (that was much fuller) in his mind, that is since quite lost. In p. 127. he tells us, that it was reported, that Maud the Empress

[1] P. 702.

was buried at Feversham; but others more truly observe, that it was at Bec in Normandy. The Mistake arose from Maud the Wife of K. Stephen's being buried there, and it was K. Stephen's Queen (and not the Empress Maud, as our Author would insinuate) that built the Offices of Feversham Abbey, which Performance, perhaps, occasioned the Author of the Prose Additions [1] to Robert of Gloucester, as well as Henry Huntingdon [2], to ascribe the Foundation of the whole Abbey to her, whereas it was really built by her Husband K. Stephen. In p. 128. he observes, That Thomas à Becket's Father (Gilbert à Becket, Portgrave of the City of London, then the highest Governour of the City [3]) was rich, being able to spend 300 *libs.* that is, as I take it, *per annum*, which, indeed, was a very great Sum for those days. In p. 157. he quotes the Romance, and the Romancer, of Rich. I. A Romance is a Story or Tale. But I have said enough, relating to the Romance of that King's Reign, in my Preface [4] to Robert of Gloucester, whither I shall, therefore, refer the Reader. In p. 205. he tells us, that K. Richard was wounded the

---

[1] F. 227. b. [2] P. 467. [3] See pag. 137, 138. of a very scarce Book, intit. *The Life or The Ecclesiasticall Historie of S. Thomas Archbishope of Canterbury. Colloniæ.* M.DC. XXXIX. 8vo. [4] Pag. LV. &c.

fourth

fourth day next before Palm-sunday, and died nine days after. Others differ from this. In p. 206, 211. he calleth K. John's Wife (by whom the King had two Sons, and two Daughters) Elizabeth for Isabell. In p. 207. he calls Arthur Earl of Britain's Sister Margaret, that is call'd Elianor by others. In p. 210. he speaks of K. John's making the Walls, (or, as he expresses it, the Groundwalle) of Berwick Castle very thick; a Thing which Fordun should have spoke of in particular, had he thought fit to have mentioned the Works of K. John distinctly. In p. 212. he makes K. John's Daughter Isabell to have no Children. Others say she had Children; and here, upon this occasion of the mention of K. John, I cannot but take notice of a singular Remark of John Ross, who in p. 199. of his Chronicle, that I published, calls Richard K. of Almayn *the Brother*, instead of *the Son, of K. John.* In p. 217. he tells us, that K. Hen. III. and his Retinue lodged in the Priory of Lewes, immediately before the Battle of Lewes, (for which Priory, I believe, he had a particular regard) a Thing which tho' noted by Stowe (who had perused Brunne and other old MSS.) yet is passed over by many other of our Historians. In p. 248. he says, he *thinks* Q. Elianor, Wife of Edw. I. was buried at Westminster. He might have been positive,

sitive, since 'tis certain she was buried there. In p. 323. he tells us, that the Court of Rome is not to be trusted, and so the French MSS. too. This was a bold Stroke, and is what is alluded to by Mr. Bridges about Pope Boniface in the Fragment of his Letter, printed in the Appendix [1]. In p. 333. is mention made of Eymer, or Aymer, of Valence, Earl of Pembroke, a Man of great Valour, and very serviceable both to K. Edw. I. and K. Edw. II. and had suitable Rewards from each. This is the same Aymer de Valence, that, in the 8th. year of K. Edw. II. (to note this by the way) obtained licence [2] to make a Castle of his House at Bampton in Oxfordshire, a Thing which if Dr. Plot had considered, he would not have conjectur'd, (or rely'd, I believe, upon tradition, which informs us,) that it was built by K. John.

In lieu of the first Part of Robert of Brunne, several Things are here published of greater use and service. An Account of Mr. Andrew Paschal. A Note about Mr. John Gibbon's MSS. Papers in the Heralds Office. A short Account of

§. XX. After I had, upon mature deliberation, and with the Advice and Concurrence of learned Friends, resolved to pass over the first Part of Robert of Brunne, as being a Translation of a French Version of Geffry of Monmouth (whose Story may be best learned from the original Latin)

[1] Num. VI. [2] Pat. 8 E. 2. p. 2. m. 22. Dugdale's Baronage, T. I. p. 777.

I de-

I determined with my self, in lieu thereof, to publish some things besides, that would be of more benefit and service to the Reader, and be, withall, less bulky, (for both the Parts, with the Glossary, would have made III Volumes.) Accordingly, therefore, besides the curious Remains, that are to be met with in the Appendix to this Preface, and in the Glossary, I have published at the End of Peter Langtoft these four Pieces following, *viz.* (1.) *The Copy of a Roll concerning Glastonbury Abbey, being a Survey of all the Estates belonging to that House at the Dissolution, taken by the King's Order and for his Vse, at the Dissolution.* This Copy was transcrib'd from a noble and beautifull Original in the Hands of a Friend (personally unknown to me) at Colchester, who was pleased afterwards very kindly to present me with the said Copy, and to express himself with many particular Marks of Affection and Esteem for whatever I undertake for the publick. (2.) An *Account of the Hospital of St. Mary Magdalen (near Bautre) in Nottinghamshire, by John Slacke, Master of that Hospital.* It was written at the Command of the most Reverend Father in God Richard Neile, Lord Archbishop of York, as appears from the Author's Letter (at the beginning of it) to the Archbishop. I transcrib'd it

Dr. Walter Charleton. An Interpolation in Camden, which Mr. Webb did not discover to be such. A Passage relating to Stonehenge from Mr. Camden's MS. Supplement in the hands of the publisher.

it from a MS. in the hands of a modest ingenious Gentleman, who is one of the subscribers to what I publish. 'Tis a very faulty MS. But it being the only one I know of, I could not correct it otherwise than by conjecture. What Corrections and Notes I have made occur at the bottom of the page. Only I must here beg leave farther to note, that whereas in p. 394, l. 19. it is 250. *l.* in the English, in the Latin, immediately following, it is (p. 395. l. 26.) at large *pro ducentis & quadraginta libris;* that the Robert Archbp. of York, mentioned p. 398. l. 4. was Robert Halgate or Holgate; that for *Commissioner* in p. 400. l. 2. perhaps should be read *Commissioners;* and that in p. 405. l. 2. may be also read *vacancy* as well as *vacante,* tho' *vacante* be nearest the MS. After I had proposed to print this MS. I writ to my ingenious and worthy Friend Mr. Thoresby of Leedes in Yorkshire, in order to get some farther Information about this Hospital, much about which time I also writ to my learned and accomplished Friend Dr. Richardson of North Bierly near Bradford in that County, that I might, if possible, get some Intelligence about the nature of Earth-horns, mentioned in this Chronicle. But tho' the Action, upon account of which these Earth-horns are spoke of, happened in that part of England, and tho' the Dr. be a person extremely

tremely curious in such Affairs, yet he was not able to satisfy me in that point, as I soon understood by a Letter from him, at which time he was pleased likewise to acquaint me, that Mr. Thoresby was incapable of writing himself to me, he having been lately seized with a palsy, which had, in a great measure, deprived him of the use of his right hand. Hereupon I writ again to Dr. Richardson, with a Request, that he would, were it not too great trouble, be pleased to give me what light he could himself in the Affair of the Hospital. Whereupon, not long after, he obliged me, not only with a Letter written by himself, but with one that he had receiv'd from Mr. Thoresby, who had imploy'd a Friend to write for him; a Copy of both which shall be subjoyn'd in the Appendix [1]. (3.) Two Tracts written by an anonymous Author, and transcrib'd by me from two MSS. (both written in the same hand) that were lent me by Mr. West of Balliol-College, an ingenious and curious Gentleman (I have mentioned formerly [2]) whom I have always found very ready and willing to promote whatever I undertake for the publick service and benefit of Learning. The first of these Dis-

[1] Num. XVIII. [2] See at pag. 285. of *The History and Antiquities of Glastonbury*. See also p. 682, 706, 730. of my Glossary to Robert of Gloucester.

courses

courses is about some Roman Antiquities discover'd near *Conquest* in Somersetshire, supposed to be the place where the Romans Conquest of Britain was compleated. The other is concerning *Stone-Henge*, and is intituled, by it's Author, *A fool's Bolt soon shott at Stonage.* It is, without doubt, the same Tract that is mentioned in the following Passage of the Additions to Bp. Gibson's English Ed. of *Camden's Britannia*[1]: "The opinions about *Stonehenge* "may be reduc'd to these 7 heads; 1. That it "is a work of the Phœnicians, as Mr. *Sammes* "in his *Britannia* conceits; a conjecture that "has met with so little approbation, that I "shall not stay to confute it. 2. That it was a "Temple of the *Druids* long before the coming of the Romans; which Mr. *John Aubrey*, Fellow of the Royal Society, endeavours to prove in his Manuscript Treatise, "entitl'd *Monumenta Britannica.* 3. That it was "an old Triumphal British Monument, erected "to *Anaraith* the Goddess of Victory, after a "bloody battel won by the illustrious *Stanings*, "and his Cangick Giants, from *Divitiacus* and "his *Belgæ;* and that the Captives and Spoils "were sacrific'd to the said Idol in this Temple. An opinion advanc'd (upon what grounds

[1] Col. 108. Ed. Lond. 1695.

"I know

" I know not) in an anonymous MS. writ about " the year 1666, and now in the hands of the " learned Mr. *Andrew Pascal,* Rector of *Ched-* " *zoy* near Bridgewater. 4. That it was a mo- " nument rais'd by the Britains in memory of " Queen *Boadicia;* advanc'd by the Author of " *Nero-Cæsar.* 5. That it was a Temple built " by the Romans to the God *Cælum,* or *Termi-* " *nus,* of the *Tuscan* order; is Mr. *Jones*'s, in " his ingenious Conjecture upon this Subject. " 6. That it was the burial-place *of Vther-Pen-* " *dragon, Constantine, Ambrosius,* and other Bri- " tish Kings; or as others would have it, a mo- " nument erected by Ambrosius in memory of " the Britains here slain. 7. That it was a Danish " monument, erected either for a burial-place, " a trophy for some victory, or a place for the " election and coronation of their Kings." These two MSS. are also very faulty. Some of the Errors I have corrected, as the Reader will perceive as he goes along. What Notes I have added, I have distinguished from the Author's own by the Letter *H.* I have, after my usual custom, observed the Author's spelling, which sometimes is *singular,* as indeed his Observations, tho' learned, are likewise frequently *singular.* Who the Author of these two Tracts was is to me very uncertain. 'Tis probable that some light may be learned from Mr. Pa-

schal's

schal's Papers (provided they are still in being) which after his Death (that happened, I think, in 1696, when he was succeeded as Chancellor of the Church of Wells by Marshall Brydges, A. M. being installed[1] on Nov. 23. that year) fell into the hands of the late Dr. Roger Maunder, Master of Balliol-College. As for Mr. Paschal (to whom these Tracts belong'd) he was (to observe this by the by) Fellow of Queen's College in Cambridge, being admitted as such *an*: 1652. thus: *Andreas Pascall Middlesex: in Artibus Bac̄: electus* [*Socius* Coll. Regin:] *Jan:* 18: *admissus Jan:* 19: 1652. This, the Reader will observe, was in ill times, and therefore Dr. Martin the ejected President or Master upon his being restor'd in 1660: oblig'd all the Fellows that had broken Titles to a new admission; Andr: Pascall stands thus, *Andreas Pascall Londinensis in locum Mri. Johis Coldham* (who was an ejected Fellow.) And after he and the rest are nam'd, it is entred thus, *Omnes rite electi, jurati, & admissi, secundum Statuta Collegii, Aug:* 23, 24, & 25, 1660. And yet Mr. Paschal did not immediately succeed Mr. Coldham, but Mr. John Hore (as I think) the immediate Successor. Dr. Martin was a Man of very high Principles, and show'd it sufficiently

[1] Le Neve's Fasti, pag. 41.

upon

upon this occasion, in such a manner, as I care not to describe. Mr. Paschal besides the Degree of Mr. of Arts, took that of Bach. of Div. and was presented to the Rectory of Chedzoy above mentioned by Francis Rolle, Esq;. He was afterwards Prebendary, Canon, and (as hath been already insinuated) Chancellor of Wells, but publish'd nothing that I know of, but some few Observations mention'd in the Transactions of the Royal Society. He wrot a Book upon the Revelations, but agreeing in his Notions with the late Prophetic (as he was commonly stiled) Bishop of Worcester, he never printed it. I never heard but Mr. Paschal was in himself a grave, sober, learned, and religious Clergyman; but by the Instigation of his Wife and Daughters, he did some Things which were prejudicial to his Successor at Chedzoy, and a Blemish to his own Character. But to return, the late ingenious Mr. John Bagford in his *Catalogue* (prefix'd to the late English Translation of Camden's Britannia) *of some Books and Treatises relating to the Antiquities of England,* speaks of *a short Treatise upon Stonehenge written by Mr. John Gibbons. MS.* Mr. Gibbon's MSS. Papers are now in the Heralds Office; but my Friend before mentioned Mr. West, who, with the learned Peter Le Neve, Esq;. Norroy K. of Arms, hath turned them all over, assures me, that

those Papers chiefly relate to Heraldry, except some few concerning Judicial Astrology, Impulses, Dæmons, &c. and that there is nothing among them concerning Stone-henge, besides a leaf at the End of Dr. Charleton's printed Book, which is indeed wrote by Mr. Gibbon, but contains only extracts from Charleton, without any mention of it's being Brittish. This single leaf confirms Mr. Bagford's Assertion; but then what is become of Mr. Gibbon's Tract I cannot say. He was a man of Humour and some Learning; but then there is more Learning in the two imperfect Pieces I now publish than, I think, he was master of. Whoever the Author of them was, 'tis plain from what he says [1] himself, that he was living in the year 1670. He designed a Frontispiece to his Discourse of Stone-henge, containing a Draught of some (as many as he thought necessary) of the Stones: as also a Map of Wiltshire. But both are wanting. Nor do I think, that he ever finished them. Tho' Dr. Charleton's opinion was exploded by many, when his Book first appeared, yet it was applauded by divers very eminent Antiquaries, one of which was Sir William Dugdale, and they did not stick to affirm (what vex'd Mr. Webb, who

[1] See p. 499, 501.

could

could not forbear speaking very contemptuously, as appears sufficiently from his Book, not only of Dr. Charleton, but even of that very great man Olaus Wormius,) that they verily believ'd Dr. Charleton to be in the right in making it a Danish Work, and since that time many others declare themselves to be of the same mind, as others do (one of which is the Author we publish) that it is Brittish, in which they are confirm'd by the very old Brittish Writer in Jesus-College Library. I care not (at present) to interpose my own opinion in this Affair, but I shall beg leave to take notice, that whereas all the three Pieces about Stone-henge, *viz.* Mr. Jones's, Dr. Charleton's, and Mr. Webb's, are very lately[1] reprinted together, it appears to me, that the Edition is by no means equal to the first Edition of those three Pieces, (I mean as they all three came out separately[2]) and that 'tis there[3] falsly insinuated that Dr. Charleton died *in one of those Islands, which are the Remains of our* French *Conquests.* For tho' this great man was unhappily reduced to Straits in the latter part of his Life, and found himself therefore obliged to retire into the Isle of Jer-

[1] Lond. 1725. fol. [2] The first, *viz.* Mr. Jones's, at Lond. 1655. fol. The 2d. Dr. Charleton's, at Lond. 1663. 4to. The 3d. Mr. Webb's, at Lond. 1665. fol. [3] *Viz.* at the beginning of the Edition, in p. 5. of the *Memoirs relating to the Life and Writings of Inigo Jones, Esq;.*

sey, yet he really died (in a very indigent condition, *ô Anglia quam ingrata es bene de te merentibus!* said some great Danish Lords to the famous Mr. Oughtred [1]) and was buried in London, as may be learned from the following Passage, that was writ in a Letter [2] to me by my late reverend and very learned Friend Dr. Thomas Smith, which will also correct what is said in the second (or spurious) Edition of *Athenæ Oxonienses* [3] about the year in which Dr. Charleton was born.——"As to what con-
" cernes Dr. Charleton, short Memorials of whose
" life, I beeleive, wil be written by some one
" or other of his surviving friends, I can onely
" tell you at present very briefely, that hee was
" the son of Walter Charleton, Doctor of Di-
" vinity, and borne at Shipton-Mallet in So-
" mersetshire on Candlemas day in the yeare
" 1620. as wee reckon, bred up in Magdalen
" Hall Oxon. under the care and tuition of Mr.
" afterwards Bp. Wilkins, created Dr. of Physic
" in 1642. as appears by the diploma, which
" hee formerly shewed mee, and was together
" with Dr. afterwards Sir Edward Greaves, bro-
" ther of Mr. John Greaves, travelling Physi-
" cian to K. Charles I. from that time forward,

---

[1] Coll. nostr. MSS. Vol. 82. p. 37. [2] Dated at London 31 May 1707. [3] Vol. II. coll. 1112. where we are told, that Dr. Charlton *was born at Shepton-Mallet on the second day of Febr.* 1619.

" whilst

" whilst that excellent, but greatly unfortunate,
" Prince was able to keepe an army in the field:
" which particulars, with many others, too long
" to bee here related, hee has told mee more
" than once. Hee dyed the 24th. of April last[1]
" in the 87th. yeare of his age, and was buryed,
" according to his earnest desire and express
" order, the Sunday next following, *viz.* 27 ·
" very privately and obscurely in the Church-
" yard of St. Paul's Covent-Garden". Instead of saying more of this learned Person at this time, I will only insert what is spoke of him in a 4to. MS. that formerly belong'd to himself, but was given by him, about a fortnight before he died, (and not long after his *Onomasticon Zoicon,* of the folio Ed. with great Improvements by the Author's own hand, in order to another Edition, which it very well deserves, was sent to the University of Oxford, and put into the Bodlejan Library, to which he had in his prosperity been a Benefactor) to the said Dr. Thomas Smith, who left it to me with many other MSS. at his Death as a Legacy. *Omnibus in confesso est, hunc virum constantissime Regias partes calamitosissimis etiam temporibus tutatum fuisse: sæpiùs dicentem, Religioni, nisi salvâ Rep. consuli non*

[1] Viz. in 1707.

posse; salvam autem Remp. servari non posse, nisi Legitima successione servatâ. There is one thing which at this time it will be improper to pass by, and that is, that whereas Mr. Webb hath taken abundance of learned pains to refute Dr. Charleton, I have often wondered, that, whilst he was striving all he could [1] to weaken that Argument, to prove the Monument Danish, which the Dr. drew from an Inscription in odd Characters, quoted by him from Camden, and supposed by him to be Runick, Mr. Webb (who otherwise very readily catcht at every thing he could of that kind to expose the Dr.) had not discovered, that the Words were not really Mr. Camden's, but his Translator Dr. Philemon Holland's. The Words are these, as I find them in pag. 254. of the Translation [2]: *I have heard that in the time of King Henrie the Eighth, there was found neere this place* [of Stonehenge] *a table of mettall, as it had beene tinne and lead commixt, inscribed with many letters, but in so strange a Character, that neither Sir Thomas Eliot, nor master Lilye Schoole-Master of Pauls, could read it, and therefore neglected it. Had it beene preserved, somewhat happily might have beene discovered as concerning* Stonehenge, *which now lieth obscured.* Which Words are in no Latin

[1] See Webb's *Vindication of Stone-Heng restored*, p. 78, &c. of the new Edition. [2] Of the Ed. at Lond. 1637.

Edi-

Edition; nor is there any thing like them in Mr. Camden's Latin Book (of the folio Ed. 1607.) as I have it corrected and improved with his own hand, and for that reason both this, as well as other Interpolations of Dr. Holland are deservedly put at the bottom of the Page in the late Translation. And yet I cannot but acknowledge, that Mr. Camden does speak of an Inscription in his *Supplement to the Topographical Description of Britain*, which I have in MS.[1] in his own hand writing, where[2] I meet with the following Things about Stonehenge that are not in the *Britannia* it self. "As "for Stone-heng uppon Sarisbury plaine, I can- "not tell what to saye. I know oute of Vitru- "vius that the [3] auncient imitating the nature "of heaven, did especially take pleasure in "round Temples; yeat considering the rudnes "and deformity of this work, I cannot persuad "my self, that it was in Claudius the Emperour's "time, when Architecture was come to the "topp of perfection. To think they were

[1] Inter Codd. Smithianos, Num. VII. It is thus intit'led: *A Suplement of the Topographicall Description of Britain published* MDCX. *Conteining many specialites which since have intervened concerning Creations, Inscriptions and other memorable matters in England, Scotland, Ireland, and the Ysles adjacent. Dedicated to the right honorable Thomas Earle of Arundell and Surrey Primier Earle of England, Lord Howard, Fitz-Alan, Maltravers, Mowbray, Segrave, Bruse and Clun, Knight of the most noble Order of the Garter, and of his Majestie's most honorable privie Councell.* [2] Pag. 55. [3] L. *auncients*,

" brought hither oute of Ireland by Magick,
" were doting impiety, when the like stones,
" for greatness and graine, are found at Avely
" and elswher. If the smale Pyramides about
" the midle centure be just thirty, it may allud
" to the 30 encounters, that Vespasian, sent
" by Claudius, had with the Britains. If we
" have any hope of discovering the veritie here-
" in, the very centre is to be digged open, and
" the inscription to be looked with the letters
" down-ward. How so ever it seemeth to con-
" cern Aurelius Ambrosius, when as the next
" town is denominated Ambresbury of him.
" And because it is situated in the midst as it
" were of the Isle from the East to the West,
" doubtless it was a place for convention uppon
" divers occasions. I doubt not but the Bri-
" taines and Hengest mett here for their confe-
" rence, and that it was called therupon Sten-
" Hengest (as Rudborn testifieth.) How Clau-
" dius remitted to the nobilitie of Britane the
" confiscation of their goodes, and that ther-
" fore they erected an alter to him, and adored
" him as a God, and how select gentlemen
" wearing Crownes of Gold spent their private
" states, you maye reade in Tacitus and Aria-
" nus, and the Britans called it *Chorea Gigantum*,
" that is, the Temple of Giantes, you may
" read in the foresayd Rudborn, and how the

" place

" place was called Kiffen Bydden, *i.* the ridge " of Bath, I need not to remember, neither " how the stones of Mercolij were so disposed, " that here was one stone, ther was an other, " and the third placed upon them both. At a word, I am persuaded that [1] this were so " placed by the first inhabitants of this ysle, " when as Hector Boëtius writeth that *Mainus* " *King of the Scotts did institut solemne ceremonies,* " *and erecting huge stones in divers places circularly,* " *the greatest ever toward the South, which served* " *in steed of an alter to* [2] *sacri- beastes therupon.* " *Thies stones are yeat extant called by the common* " *sort, The temples of the Gods. Any man that* " *seeth them would mervaile by what arte and what* " *strength of men they were so reared.* Thus farr " Boëtius. What other men can gather out of the " word *ycluis*, which signifieth, in the Britain " language, *lame,* I see not, albeit I know that " the name of Claudius came originaly from " *lamnes.* Not long since a hilloc was here dig- " ged down, and in it was found a stagg's hedd, " and under neth coales, which is a manifest " profe that it was a Land marck.

Selden de Diis Syris.

§. XXI. I have above declared, that I have no mind at this time to interpose my own Sentiments about Stone-henge, -

Stone-henge perhaps a British Monument, notwithstanding it might have

[1] L. *these.* [2] L. *sacrifice.*

been a Roman Work. Mr. Camden's Approbation of, and Assistance in, Dr. Holland's Additions, may justify such as cite them for Mr. Camden's own.

henge, and yet whereas formerly I have signify'd [1], that 'tis a Roman Work, I shall now so far gratify the Reader's curiosity as to assure him, that I still am inclin'd to think it so much owing to the Romans, as to have one or more of them for carrying on the Architecture, whilst, at the same time, it is probable it was, as our anonymous Author stiles it, a Brittish and no Roman Monument, or it may be even the Britains themselves raised it according to the Rules of Architecture in which they had been instructed by the Romans, both people being as it were now incorporated, and the Britains being at length so much beloved by the Romans, that the Romans were very willing to do all imaginable service to them, as may appear from the Assistance they receiv'd from the Romans even at that time when the Romans were oblig'd to relinquish the Isle for securing other Parts of the Empire. But I will not, I must not exspatiate. And yet I cannot, before I leave this Subject, but ingenuously confess, that I my self, some years ago, fell [2] into the same mistake with Mr. Webb in taking Dr. Philemon Holland's Interpolation for

[1] *Ductor Hist.* Vol. II. p. 319. Discourse concerning some Antiquities found in York-shire, at the End of the first Vol. of Leland's t in. p. 106. [2] See the said Discourse, p. 106.

Mr.

Mr. Camden's own Words. And indeed, upon recollection, I think that they may still be properly enough call'd Camden's, since he both allow'd of that and other Additions of the Dr's. and hath not any where, that I know of, disclaim'd them, having, I suppose, help'd the Dr. to many of them, and being willing enough, that they should be quoted and look'd upon as his own. And 'twas upon account of his approbation of what Dr. Holland did, that he drew up the Supplement, with a design that it should be taken into the second Edition, in which nevertheless it was omitted, being not, it may be, communicated to him. It is likely Mr. Webb himself also considered this matter, which if so it will excuse him also, as well as Dr. Charleton and others, for ascribing any Interpolation to Mr. Camden, and then it will cease to be a wonder, that either he or any one else should mention Mr. Camden's instead of Dr. Holland's name.

Oxford August 3.
1725.

THE

THE PUBLISHER'S

APPENDIX

To his PREFACE.

Num. I. Vide Præf. §. v.

E Pitseo de illustrib. Angliæ Scriptorib. p. 890. in Appendice.

De Petro Longatosta.

PETRVS Longatosta, Gallum fuisse suspicantur nonnulli, ego verò existimo natione Anglum. Fuit ordinis S. Augustini Canonicus regularis in cœnobio Bridlindgtonensi Eboracensis agri. Vir cui pietas & doctrina celebre nomen dederunt. Humaniores benè tenuit litteras, historiis legendis & scribendis non mediocriter delectatus.

tus. In Galliis aliquandò studuit, & linguam Gallicam accuratè calluit. Ex Hereberto Boscamo Latinè scriptam transtulit in rithmos Gallicanos

Vitam S. Thomæ Cantuariensis, Librum unum.

Scripsit Anglicè chronicon Angliæ, Librum unum. MS. in bibliotheca Baronis Lumleiani. De hoc auctore nihil prorsus aliud invenio . . . . . .

This is all in Pitseus. He seems to have intended more by the Points. *Longatosta,* I suppose, is a Mistake in him, as well as in Leland and Gesner for *Longatofta.*

Num. II. Vide Præf. §. v.

E Lelandi Comm. de Scriptorib. Brit. p. 218.

—— *Petrus Longatosta,* canonicus *Augustinianus* in cœnobio *Brillendunensi,* hunc [*Hereberti Bossanhamensis* de vita *Thomæ Becketi*] transtulit in *Gallicos* rhythmos libellum.

Num. III. Vide Præf. §. v.

E Bibliothecâ Gesneri, Tiguri 1583. *Fol.*

Petrus Longatosta, Gallus, Canonicus Regularis cœnobii Bridlyngtonensis in Angliâ, ex latino sermone in metra Gallica transtulit opus Hereberti de Bosham de Vitâ Thomæ Cantuariensis Lib. I. Joannes Lelandus.

Num.

Num. IV. Vide Præf. §. v.

Bp. Nicolson's Engl. Historical Library, p. 79. *Ed. Fol.*

—— *Peter de Langetoft,* who drew up an [1] *Epitome* of our Chronicles of old *French* Rhimes, bestowes one whole Book upon *Edward* I.

Num. V. Vide Præf. §. ix, xii, xiv.

Robert of Brunne's Prologue to his Chronicle.

Incipit Prologus de historia Britanniæ, transumpta per Robertum in materna lingua.

Ordýnges, that be now here,
If ȝe wille listene & lere
All þe storý of Inglande,
Als Robert Mannýng wrýten it fand,
& on Inglýsch has it schewed,
Not for þe lerid bot for þe lewed,
For þo þat in þis land wonn,
þat þe Latýn no Frankýs conn,
For to haf solace & gamēn
In felawschip whēn þai sitt samen.
And it is wisdom forto wýtten
þe state of þe land, an haf it wrýten:
What manere of folk first it wan,
& of what kýnde it first began.

---

[1] Bibl. Cott. Julius, A. 5.

And

And gude it is for manẏ thẏnges,
For to here þe dedis of kẏnges,
Whilk were foles & whilk were wẏse,
& whilk of þam couth mast quantẏse;
And whilk did wrong & whilk rẏght,
& whilk maẏntend pes & fẏght.
Of þare dedes salle be mẏ sawe,
In what tẏme & of what lawe,
I salle ȝow schewe fro gre to gre,
Sen þe tẏme of sir Noe,
Fro Noe vnto Eneas,
& what betwix þam was,
And fro Eneas tille Brutus tẏme,
þat kẏnde he telles in þis rẏme.
Fro Brutus tille Cadwaladres,
þe last Brẏton þat þis lande lees.
Alle þat kẏnde & alle the frute,
þat come of Brutus þat is þe Brute;
And þe rẏght Brute is told nomore,
þan the Brẏtons tẏme wore.
After þe Bretons þe Inglis camen,
þe lordschip of þis lande þai namen;
South & North, West & Est,
þat calle mēn now þe Inglis gest.
When þai first amang þe Bretons,
þat now ere Inglis þan were Saxons,
Saxons Inglis hight alle oliche.
þai arẏued vp at Sandwẏche,

In þe kẏnge's tẏme Vortogerne,
þat þe lande walde þam not werne.
þat were maẏsters of alle þe toþire,
Hengist he hight & Hors his broþire.
þes were hede, als we fẏnde,
Where of is comen oure Inglis kẏnde.
A hundrethe & fiftẏ ȝere þai com,
Or þai receẏued Cristendom̄.
So lang woned þai þis lande in,
Or þai herde out of Saẏnt Austẏn,
Amang þe Bretons with mẏkelle wo,
In sclaundire, in threte & in thro.
þes Inglis dedes ȝe maẏ here,
As Pers telles alle þe manere.
One maẏster Wace þe Frankes telles,
þe Brute alle þat þe Latẏn spelles,
Fro Eneas tille Cadwaladre,
þis maẏster Wace þer leues he.
And rẏght as maẏster Wace saẏs,
I telle mẏn Inglis þe same waẏs.
For maẏster Wace þe Latẏn alle rẏmes,
þat Pers ouerhippis manẏ tẏmes.
Maẏster Wace þe Brute alle redes,
& Pers tellis alle þe Inglis dedes.
þer maẏster Wace of þe Brute left,
Rẏght begẏnnes Pers eft,
And tellis forth þe Inglis storẏ,
& as he saẏs, þan saẏ I.

Als

Als þai haf wrỳten̄ & saỳd,
Haf I alle in mỳn Inglis laỳd,
In sỳmple speche as I couthe,
þat is lightest in manne's mouthe.
I mad noght for no disours,
Ne for no seggers no harpours,
Bot for þe luf of sỳmple men̄,
þat strange Inglis can̄ not ken̄.
For manỳ it ere þat strange Inglis
In rỳme wate neuer what it is,
And bot þai wist what it mente,
Ellis me thoght it were alle schente.
I made it not forto be praỳsed,
Bot at þe lewed men̄ were aỳsed.
If it were made in rỳme couwee,
Or in strangere or enterlace,
þat rede Inglis it ere inowe,
þat couthe not haf coppled a kowe,
þat outhere in couwee or in baston
Som suld haf ben fordon,
So þat fele men þat it herde,
Suld not witte howe þat it ferde.
I see in song in sedgeỳng tale
Of Erceldoun & of Kendale,
Non þam saỳs as þai þam wroght,
& in þer saỳng it semes noght.
þat maỳ þou here in Sir Tristrem,
Ouer gestes it has þe steem,

Ouer all þat is or was,
If men it sayd as made Thomas.
Bot I here it no man so say,
þat of som copple som is away.
So þare fayre saying here beforne,
Is þare trauayle nere forlorne.
þai sayd it for pride & nobleye,
þat non were suylk as þei,
And alle þat þai wild ouerwhere,
Alle þat ilk wille now forfare.
þai sayd in so quainte Inglis,
þat manyone wate not what it is,
þerfore heuyed wele þe more
In strange ryme to trauayle sore,
And my witte was oure thynne,
So strange speche to trauayle in,
And forsoth I couth noght
So strange Inglis as þai wroght,
And men besoght me many a tyme,
To turne it bot in light ryme.
þai sayd, if I in strange it turne,
To here it manyon suld skurne.
For it ere names fulle selcouthe,
þat ere not vsed now in mouthe.
And þerfore for þe comonalte,
þat blythely wild listen to me,
On light lange I it began,
For luf of þe lewed man,

To

To telle þam þe chaunces bolde,
þat here before was don & tolde.
For þis makýng I wille no mede,
Bot gude prayere, when ȝe it rede,
þerfore, ȝe lordes lewed,
For wham I haf þis Inglis schewed,
Prayes to God he gýf me grace,
I trauaýled for ȝour solace.
Of Brunne I am, if aný me blame,
Robert Mannýng is my name.
Blissed be he of God of heuene,
þat me Robert with gude wille neuene:
In þe thrid Edwarde's týme was I,
When̄ I wrote alle þis storý.
In þe hous of Sixille I was a throwe,
Danz Robert of Maltone þat ȝe know
Did it wrýte for felawes sake,
When̄ þai wild solace make.

Num. VI. Vide Præf. §. x, xix.

Extract of a Letter, relating to Robert of Brunne and Peter de Langtoft, written from London to the Publisher by the late learned John Bridges, Esq; Nov. 28. 1723.

—— This day, by Godfrey the Oxford Carrier, there goes a Packett, directed to Willmott the Bookseller, in which there is the MS. of *Robert* of *Brunne*. It belongs to the *Inner*

Temple Library, being given, with other MSS. to that Society by the last Will of *William Petyt*, Esq;. late Keeper of the Records in the Tower of London. And Mr. *Anstis* being one of his Trustees, I have, by his means, procur'd it for you, in order to be printed.

It seems to be a perfect MS. from the beginning to the End, and written about the same time that the Author liv'd, *viz.* at the beginning of Edw. 3$^{d's}$. Reign, You'll find in it severall Things worthy of Remark.

First, it appears, that he liv'd sometime in the Monastery of *Sivill* or *Sixle* in *Lincolnshire*, a mixt Monastery of Nunns and Friers: And that he calls himself *Robert Manning* of *Brunne*, now *Bourne*, a Town also in *Lincolnshire*, where was a Monastery. He calls himself also *Danz Robert* of *Malton*.

2dly. The Prologues acquaint us, that *Pers* (or *Peter*) de *Langtoft*, Canon of *Bridlington*, wrote the Original History in French Rhime. One part whereof, *viz.* from *Eneas* to *Cadwallader*, was taken from *Geffry* of *Monmouth*, and abridg'd by the said *Peter*, but translated more at large into French by *Mayster Wace*, which *Mayster Wace* is follow'd cheifly by the Translator; but in the other part, *viz.* to the End of *Edw.* I. he tells the Story according to *Langtoft*.

3dly.

3dly. There is an exact account of his being Author of this Translation by a Note at the End of both the first and second Parts, together with the Time when it was wrote.

4thly. There are some particular Passages of History found in the Translator, that are not in the Original, *viz.* That King *John* died at *Hauhe* (or *Haugh*) in *Lincolnshire*. That *Wentilian*, the daughter of *Lewellyn*, being an Infant about two years old when her Father was beheaded, was profess'd and died a Nun in the Convent at *Sempringham*. And that *Gladous*, her Couzin-German, daughter of *David* brother of *Lewellyn*, died also a Nun in the Monastery of *Sixle*, both of them being in the County of *Lincoln*. You'll find also in most Passages the Translator to be more copious and large than his Original.

5thly. In his Prologues he takes notice of severall sorts of Old English Verse, viz. *Couwe*, *Stranger*, *Enterlace*, and *Baston*. The first of which (*Couwe*) he gives Instances of and Marks in the Margin. He also mentions severall Tales of *Erceldoun*, *Kendale* and *Tristrem*, all which were very well known in those Days. But I find none of them expounded in our Modern Glossaries, which therefore, as well as other antient Terms and Words, will need an Explanation. †

6thly. The Historian speaks very freely of the Vices of the Court of *Rome*, particularly Pope *Boniface*.

There is a MS. in French Metre of *Peter* de *Langtoft* in the *Cotton* Library, *Julius* A. In the first Page whereof are these Remarks in modern Hands:

"Hanc P. Langtoft in Gallicam prosam ver-
"tit Auctor Scalæ Chronicæ. *Leyland.*
"Multa continet notabilia, quæ apud vul-
"gatos Historicos haud facile invenies.
"*T. G.*" (i. e. Thomas Gale.)
"Aliud Exemplar extat in Collegio Heral-
"dorum——Extat Versio Anglicana in-
"Lambethana Bibl. *T. G.*"

In the *Elenchus* of the said *Cotton* Library MS. 'tis rightly observ'd, that this Historian is very prolix or spatious in the Life of *Edw.* I.

The second part of the Chronicle begins with these four Latin Verses:

Incipiunt Gesta, quæ sunt Anglis manifesta,
Beda pater præsta Petro, quod dicat honesta,
Lector narrabit id quod Scriptura parabit.
Petrus dictabit quod sibi Beda dabit.

At the end of the Volume (after a Tale or Romance in French of five Leaves, which intervene) are three other Verses, which seem to referr to the same *Peter* de *Langtoft.*

"*Artus*

" *Artus Scriptoris careant gravitate doloris.*
" *Sermo de Bruto fit sub dictamine tuto.*
" *Culpa datur Petro deficiente Metro.*

This Translation was taken at first for *Robert* of *Gloucester* by the total Ignorance of the Owners.—It is very strange, that this Author has never been taken notice of or quoted. In my Opinion, it far exceeds *R.* of *Gloucester,* both for the matter and manner of his Story. Neither do I find any Account of him in *Leland,* or the other Byographers. Bishop Nicolson says little or nothing. ———

Num. VII. Vide Præf. §. x, xiv.

Robert of Brunne's Transition (called a Prologue by Mr. Bridges) from the first to the second Part of his Chronicle.

Explicit historia Britanniæ, transposita in linguam maternam per Robertum. Incipiunt Gesta Anglorum secundum Petrum de Langtoft, transposita per eundem R. Mannyng.

NOW haf I told of þe Bretons,
Of kỳnges & som barons.
How þei maỳntend þis lond,
Siþen Brutus first it fond,
Unto Cadwaldre's tỳme,
þer of Bretons leue we to rỳme,

& now of Inglis wille we telle,
Sen þe Bretons here gan duelle,
þat toke þe lond þorgh Gode's heste,
þer tyme we kalle þe Inglis geste.
Alle is cald geste Inglis,
þat on þis langage spoken is.
Frankis spech is cald Romance,
So sais clerkes & men of France.
Pers of Langtoft, a chanon
Of þe hous of [1] Brdlyngtoñ,
Oñ Frankis stile þie storie wrote
Of Inglis kynges, for him we wote
He wrote þer dedes as þei wrouht,
After him in Inglis I it brouht.
Of his menyng I wote þe way,
Bot his faire spech I can not say.
I am not worþi open his boke,
For no konyng þer on to loke,
Bot forto schew his mykelle witte
Oñ my spech, þat is bot skitte;
How he was quaynt in spech & wys,
þat suilk a boke mad of pris,
& gadred þe stories alle tille one,
þat neuer ore was mad for none.
Whan he first bigan his werk,
He bisouht a holy clerk,
To gyue him grace wele to spede,
þat holy man hight S. Bede.

[1] Sic.

For

For in his bukes mẏkelle he fond,
He mad fẏue bokes of Inglond.
I salle praie him þat ilk wais,
Als he holy & curtais,
He gif me grace wele to saẏ,
& rightlẏ þis in rẏme laẏ,
þis storẏ þat is said of Pers,
þat alle be paied þat it hers. Amen.

Num. VIII. Vide Præf. §. xi.

The Proceedings of the Abbat and Convent of Winchester against Joan of London, A. D. 1285. *From an old MS. Fragment of that Age, given to the Publisher by Thomas Ward, Esq;.*

Officialis curiæ Cantuariensis religioso viro priori reverenter salutem in Christo Ihesu. Sua noverit religio, ubi abbas & conventus Winchester peticione monstrarunt, quod vos, prætendentes à sede apostolica vobis esse commissum, ut in monasterio suo de Winchester, Johannæ de London, mulieri conversæ, ad sui sustentacionem, suo perpetuo de tanto faceretis annis singulis providere, quantum unus de monachis, ibidem existentibus, pro suis alimentis percipit, annuatim eidem Johannæ, [1] octo s. sterlingorum, percipiendos per annum, quoad

---

[1] F. *octo scilicet libras sterlingorum, percipiendas.*

vixerit,

vixerit, de monasterio Wynchester memorato, certis terris, pro æqualibus porcionibus, nomine sustentacionis hujus religiosæ, ipsis ad hæc nullatenus evocatis, nec de ipso mandato apostolico, seu de provisione ipsa, per citacionis seu denunciacionis modum, quicquam scientibus, sed ignorantibus, immo nulla super facultatibus dicti monasterii, seu super æstimatione vel valore exhibicionis seu sustentacionis cujuscunq; monachi domus ejusdem per annum, inquisicione præmissa, in ipsorum religiosorum, ac suæ domus, præjudicium non modicum & gravamen, præsertim cum in inmensum ære alieno fuerint ornati, non absq; juris offensa, inique & temere providistis, à qua vestræ provisionis hujus sentencia, tanquam ab iniqua, quam cito id ad notitiam eorundem pervenit, sedem apostolicam, & pro tuitione sedem Cantuariensem legitime, ut asserunt, applicuerunt. Quare vobis inhibemus, & ceteris omnibus, quibus exigit inhiberi, ne, pendente in curia Cantuariensi hujus tuitionis appellationis negocio, aliud hac occasione acceptetur seu acceptare faciatis, in partis præjudicium appellantis, quo minus liberam habeat prosecutionem appellationis suæ, prout justum fuerit [1] utriusq;. Citetur eciam, seu citare faciatis peremptorie par-

[1] Sic cum duobus punctis sub *u*, perinde ac si *utrisque* legi debeat.

tem

tem appellatam, quod compareat coram nobis, vel commissario nostro, in ecclesia beatæ Mariæ de arcubus Londoniæ, tercio die juridico post Octavas Sanctæ Trinitatis, factura & receptura super præmissis, quod postulaverit ordo juris, & pariter ad procedendum in principali, si viderit expedire. De die vero receptionis præsentium, & quod super præmissis feceritis, nobis, vel commissario nostro, dictis die & loco constare faciatis, per litteras vestras patentes harum seriem continentes. Dat. Londoniæ quarto Nonas Maii, anno Domini M°. CC°. octogesimo quinto.

Num. IX. Vide Præf. §. xi.

A Letter concerning the reputed Nunnery at Little-Gidding in Huntingtonshire. From a MS. lent to the Publisher on July 6th. 1724. *by Thomas Ward, of Longbridge near Warwick, Esq;.*

The Coppie of my Letter to Sr. Thomas Hedley, Kt. Serjeant at Lawe, upon his Request to certifie, as I found, concerninge the reputed Nunnerie att Giddinge in Huntingtonshire.

Good Mr. Serjeant,

I cann give you but a short Relation of my, not two howers, staye at the reputed (at least re-

reported) Nunnery at Giddinge, and yet must leave out three partes of our passages, as fitter for Relation then a letter. I came thither after terme, and found a faire house fairelie seated, to which I passed through a faire grove, and sweete walkes, letticed and gardened on both sides, their livelihood. 500li. *per annum* (as my Lord Mountague tolde mee.)

A man servant brought me into a faire spacious Parlour, whether soone after came to mee the olde Gentlewoman's second sonn, a batchelor of a plaine presence, but of able speech and parts, whoe (after I had, aswell as in such case I coulde, deprecated anye ill conceipt of mee, for soe unusuall and bolde a visite) entertayned mee very civilly, and with humility, yet saide, I was the first that ever came to them in that kinde, though not the first that they had heard of, that determined to come. After Deprecations and some Complements, hee said, I shoulde see his mother, if I pleased. I shewinge my desire, hee went upp into a Chamber, and presently came his mother, (a tall, straight, cleare complextioned, grave Matron, of. 80. yeares of age) his eldest brother married, (but wheather [1] Widdowe or noe, I asked not,) a short, blacke complextioned man, his apparrell and hayre soe fashioned, as made

[1] F. *Widower.*

him

him shewe Preist like, and his sister married to one Mr. Cooles, by whom shee hath. 14. or. 15. Children, all which are in the howse, which I sawe not yet; and of these, and two or three mayde servants, the Familie consisted. I saluted the mother, and daughter, not like Nunnes, but as wee use to salute other women; and after wee were all sett circular wise, and my Deprecations renewed to the other three, I desired that, to their favour of entertayninge of mee, they woulde add the givinge of mee a free libertie to speake [1] ingeniouslie, what I conceived of any thinge I shoulde see or have hearde of, without any distast to them. Which beinge graunted,

I first tolde them what I had heard of the Nunnes of Giddinge; of two watchinge and prayinge all night; of their Cannonicall howers; of their crosses on the outside, and inside of their Chappell; of an Alter there richly decked with plate, tapestry, and tapers; of their [2] Adorations, Iniculations at their entringe therein, which I objected might savour of Superstition and Popery.

Heere the younger sonne (the mouth for them all) cut mee off, and to this last answeared,

---

[1] Sic. [2] F. *Adorations, Genuflections, and Geniculations.* Nam sic infra in libello impresso.

First

First with a protestation, that hee did as verely beleeve the Pope to bee Antichrist, as any Article of his faith. Where with I was satisfied and silenced touchinge that pointe.

For the Nunnery, hee said, the names of Nunnes was odious, but the truth (from whence that untrue report might arise) was two of his [1] Neeces, and lived one with thother. 32. yeares virgins, and soe resolved to continue, as hee hoped they woulde, the better to give themselves to fastinge and praier, but had made no vowes.

For their Cannonicall howres, hee saide, they usuallie praied. 6. tymes a daie, (as I remember,) twice a daie publiquelie in the Chappell, and. 4. tymes more privatelie in their howse; in the Chappell after the Order of the booke of Common-praier, in their house perticular praiers for a private Family. I saide, if they spent soe much tyme in prayinge, they would leave little for preachinge, or for their weekelie callings. For the one I vouched the text, *Hee that turneth awaye his eare from hearinge the Lawe, his praier is abominable.* For the other, *sixe dayes shalt thou Labour* &c.

To the one hee answeared, that a Neighbour Minister, of another Parish, came on Sunday morninge, and preached in their Chappell, and

[1] F. *Neeces had lived.*

some

some tymes they went to his Parish; To the other, that their callinge was to serve God, which he tooke to bee the best.

I replyed, that for men in health, and of active and able bodies, and parts, it were a temptinge of God, to quitt our Callings, and whollie betake our selves to fastinge, praier, and a Contemplatinge lyfe, which by some is thought to bee noe better, then a specious kind of Idlenes, not to terme it, as St. Augustine termes Morrall vertues without Christ, *Splendida peccata.* Hee rejoyned, that they found diverse perplexities, distractions, and almost utter ruine in their callings, but if others knewe, what comfort and content God had ministred unto them, since their sequestration, and with incredible improvement to their livelihood, it might incourage others to the like course.

I said, that such an [1] Invitation might bee of dangerous Consequence, and that yf any, which were in good [2] Cause before, shoulde thereby fall into povertie, fewe afterwards woulde followe the example.

For their night watchinge, [3] at their risinge at. 4. of the Clocke in the morninge, which (I said) was much for one of. 80. yeares, and for Children; To the one hee saide, it was

[1] L. *Innovation.* [2] F. *Case.* [3] L. *and their.*

not

not much, sithence they alwaies went to bedd at. 7. of the Clocke in the eveninge. For the other hee confest, there [1] was every night two (*Alternatim*) continued in their devotions, that [2] went to bedd untill the rest arose.

For the Crosses, he made mee the usuall Answeare, that they were not ashamed of that badge of Christian profession, which the propugners of the faith bare in their banners, and which wee in our Church disciplyne reteyne to this daie.

For their Chappell, that it was nowe neere Chappell tyme, (for eleaven is the howre in the forenoone) and that I might (if I pleased) accompany them thither, and soe satisfie my selfe best of what I had heard concerning that.

Which offer I willinglie enterteyned. Meane tyme, I told them, that I perceived all was not true, that I had heard of the place. For I coulde see noe such inscription on the frontespeece of the howse, conteyninge an Invitation of such as were willinge to learne of them, or woulde teach them better, which was some incouragement to mee to come (as one desirous to learne, not to teach) and might bee some excuse of my Audacity, if they will be pleased soe to accept it.

[1] F. *were.* [2] F. *went not to.*

But

But hee (barringe mee from further Complements) said, the ground of that Report hunge over my head, wee sittinge by the Chymney. On the Chymney peece was a Manuscript Tableture, which after I had read, I craved leave to begg a Coppie thereof, soe that they woulde not take mee for to bold a begger, which hee forthwith tooke downe, and commaunded to bee presentlie transcribed, and given mee. I offered the writer money for his deserved paines, which was refused, and they conjured mee not to offer it the second tyme, and there upon made it his suite to mee, not to offer any thinge to any of that house at my partinge, or otherwise.

The words of the protestation are as followeth:

I. H. S.

Hee that, by reproofe of our Errors, or Remonstrance of that which is perfect, seekes to make us better, is welcome as an Angell of God; And	*Hee that, by a cheare-full participation of that which is good, confirmes us in the same, is welcome as a Christian frend.*

But,

Hee that any waie goeth about to divert or disturbe us	*And hee that faults us in absence for that which is*

us in that which is, and ought to bee, amongst Christians, is a burthen whilst hee staies, and shall beare his Judgment whatsoever hee bee. | *[1] is[ll] in presence hee made a shewe to approve of, shal, by a double guilt of flattery and slaunder, violate the bands of frendshipp and Christianitye.*

Mary Farrer Widdowe, and mother of this Familie, aged about. 80. *yeares, that bidds a dewe to all feares, and hopes of this worlde, and desires to serve God.*

To the matter of this Declaration, beinge in such generall termes, I said, I thought it without Exception, but praied leave to except against a Circumstance, namely the Inscription, beinge the proper Character of the Jesuites in every booke and exhibite of theirs. Hee said, it was that Auspicious name, worthy to bee the *Alpha* and *Omega* of all our doinges, and wee are commaunded *to write such thinges on the posts of our houses, and upon our gates.*

I toulde him, I was farr from exceptinge against that sacred and savinge name of Jesus, onlie I coulde have wished it written at length, or anie other waies, to have differed from that the Papists onlie use, and noe Protestants, and that the text hee mentioned was in the oulde

---

[1] Dele.

Te-

Testament, where there was noe mention of Jesus but of Jehova, to my remembrance; but wee passed by this towards the Chappell, being about two paces from the howse, but staid a little (as with a parenthesis) with a glasse of sacke, suger-cake, and a fine napkin brought by a mannerlie maide, which refreshed my memorie, to tell them what my Lord Bishopp of Lincolne saide of them, wherein yet I brake noe Lawes of humanitie, nor hospitalitie, though spoken at the Table. For hee said nothinge but that they might, and were gladd to, heare, beinge but the Relation of the grave and discreete Answeares (as my Lord himselfe termed them) of the oulde Gentlewoman's to some of his Lordshipp's expostulations to that part concerninge the younge deacon, which his Lordshipp had heard of to come from Cambridge, to associate in their Chappell. Hee (*innuendo* ever the younger sonne,) whoe onlie was the speaker, said, that himselfe was the younge deacon intended, that hee is 42. yeares olde, was fellowe of an howse in Cambridge, and hath taken Orders of Deacon (to saie nothinge of his havinge been at Rome) whereof I coulde have excepted noe more against him, then hee might to mee. For havinge been so longe in the labour of the Chappell, it is nowe high tyme wee were at Church.

At the entringe whereof hee made a lowe obeysance, fewe paces further a lower, commminge to the halfe-pace, which was at the East end, where the Table stood, hee bowed to the ground, if not prostrated himselfe, then went upp into a faire large readinge place, a preachinge place beinge of the same proporcion, right over against it.

The Mother with all her trayne, which were her daughter, and daughter's daughters, had a faire Island seate. Hee placed mee above upon the halfe-pace, with two faire longe Windowe-Cushions of greene Velvett before mee. Over against mee was there such another seate soe suited, but noe body to sitt in it.

The daughter's. 4. sonnes kneeled all the while at the edge of the halfe-pace, all in blacke-gownes, and, as they went to Church, in round Monmoth-Capps (as my man said, for I looked not backe) the rest all in blacke, save one of the daughters, whoe was in a Fryer's greene gowne.

Wee beinge thus placed, the Deacon (for soe I must nowe call him) with a very lowde and distinct voice, began with the Letany, read divers Praiers and Collects in the booke of Common-praier, and Athanasius his Creede, and concluded with *The peace of God, &c.*

[1] All

[1] All attended", the Mother, with all her Company, attended my comminge downe; but her sonne decon toulde her, I woulde staie a while, to viewe the Chappell: see (with all their Civill salutations towards mee, which I retorned them a farr off, and durst come noe neerer, least I shoulde have light upon one of the virgins, not knowinge wheather they woulde have taken a kisse in good part or noe) they departed home. Nowe none but the deacon and I left, I observed the Chappell in generall to be fairelie and sweetelie adorned with herbes and flowers, naturall in some part, and artificiall upon every Pillar thereof a longe both sides the Chappell, such as are in Cathedralls, with Tapers (I meane, great Virgin Waxe Candles) on every Pillar. The halfe-pace at the upper end (for there was noe other division betwixt the body of the Chappell and the East part) was all covered with tapistry, and upon that half-pace stood the Communion Table, not Altarwise (as was reported) with a rich Carpett hanginge very large upon the [2] halfe, and somme of plate, as a Callice and Candlestickes with waxe Candells. By the preacl.-inge place stood the font, the legg, laver and cover all of brasse cutt and carved. the Cover

[1] F. delend. nisi malis, *All ended.* [2] F. *halfe-pace, and some plate.*

had a Crosse erected, the laver of the bignes of a barbor's Basen; and this is all I had leasure to observe in the Chappell, save that I asked for the Organs, whiche he toulde mee were not there, but that they had a paire in their house. I asked alsoe, what use they made of so many Tappers. Hee said, to give them light, when they coulde not see without them. Then havinge formerlie (as I said before) obteyned leave, to saie what I listed, I asked him, to whom hee made all those Curtisies. Hee saide, to God. I asked him, if the Papists make any other answeare for theire bowinge to Images and Crucifexes, yet wee accompt them Idolaters for soe doinge. Hee said, wee have noe such Warrant, for the one, but for the other, wee have a precept to doe all things with decencie and order, as hee tooke this to bee. I demaunded then, why hee used not the same solempnitie in his service at his howse, and wheather hee thought that Chappell more holie then his howse. Hee said noe, but that God was more imediatelie present, whiles we were worshippinge him in the Temple. I replied, that God was as present at Paule's Crosse as at Paule's Church, and at the preachinge place at White hall and Spittle-Sermons as elsewhere. For wheresoever two or three are gathered togeather in his name, God

is

is in the middest of them. And yet in those places, noe not in the bodie of the Church, though there bee sermon and praiers, we did not use this threefold reverence, nor any lowe bowinge, unlesse in the Chancell towards the East, where an Altar, or some [1] Crucifex, is. Hee answeared mee some thinge of the Trinary number of this their bowinge, which I did not well understand, nor [2] wee heare. This, as all other our discourse beinge ended with mildenes and moderation (on his part, at the least) I said further, that since their devotions, from which they woulde be loath to bee [3] delivered or interrupted, (as in their said protestation maie appeare,) are more strict and regular, and if in their Consciences they were perswaded, that all their Formalities and Ceremonies were but [4] *Adiaphera* (thinge indifferent) I then thought, they were as wyse as Serpents in the [5] Scripture, since in [6] complayninge soe with Church Ceremonies, that they might themselves hould on their Course without exception, for in [7] this Comptenent though authoritie woulde not except against them, unlesse for exceedinge the Cathedrall, whoe make but one Reverence, whereas they make three. Hee

[1] Sic. [2] F. *well.* [3] F. *diverted.* [4] L. *adiaphora (things* &c. [5] F. *Scripiure sense.* [6] An, *complying?* [7] Sic hæc concipiuntur. Conjeceram, *this, authoritie, though competent, would* &c.

saide, I spake like one that it seemed had had experience in the Worlde. Beeinge nowe neere twelve of the Clocke, wee ended our Discourse, and I called for my horses, hopinge there upon, that hee woulde have invited mee to staie dynner, not for that I cared for his, or any man's meate (for you had given mee a dynner in too good a breakefast,) but that I might have gayned more [1] more" tyme to have seene and observed more of their fashions, and wheather the Virgins, and younger sorte woulde have mingled with us, with diverse other thinges, which a dynner tyme would have ministred matter for; but in steede of makinge mee staie, hee alsoe helped mee in callinge for my horses, accompanyinge mee even unto my stirropp, and soe I not returninge into the howse, as wee frends mett, soe wee parted.

Many more questions I thought on, when it was too late, and yet, you see, I was not idle for the shorte tyme I staide. I asked him of their monethelie receivinge the Sacrament, and wheather their servants, when they received, were attended by their Masters and Mistresses, and not suffered soe much as to laye or take awaie their owne trenchers, (as I had heard;) whereat hee smiled, as at a frivilous fable, and said, that the only difference from

[1] Dele.

other

other daies was, that the servants, the daie they received, satt at the same Table with them. I heard alsoe, that they never rost any meate, onlie boile and bake, but not in paste, that their servants maie not bee much hindered from their devotions, and that they have but one horse amongst them all; but of those I made noe mention.

They are extraordinary well reported of by their neighbours, that they are very liberall to the poore, at greate cost in preparinge of phisick and Surgery for the sicke and sore, whom they alsoe visitt often, and some. 60. or. 80. poore people they taske with Catechisticall questions, which, when they [1] come, cann make noe Answeare there unto, they are rewarded with money and dynner, by reason of which Corody of meate and money, the poore [2] Catechumen learne their lessons well, and soe their bodies and soules are well fedd.

I finde them full of humanitie, and liberalitie, and others speake as much of their Charitie, which I also verelie beleeve, and therefore am farr from censuringe them, of whom I think much better then of my selfe.

My [3] apposinge some of their opinions and practise (as you maie see in this my Relation,

[1] F. *come, and can make Answeare thereunto*, &c. [2] L. *Catechumens.* [3] Sic.

where-

wherein I maie have varied in some Circumstances, but nothinge from the substance) was onlie by waie of argument, and for myne owne better Information.

I shall be gladd to observe, howe wyser men will judge of them, or imitate their Course of lyfe.

I intended not a third part of this, when I begann, as you maie see by my first lynes.

But one thinge drawinge on another, I have nowe left out a little or nothinge to my remembrance, savinge that I thought fitt in good manners, upon my first affront, to make waie for my welcome, and *ad captandam benevolentiam*, which is not worth the repeatinge if I coulde, and I am some thinge better at actinge such a part, then at relatinge it, though good at neither.

After this longe and tedious Relation, I must nowe make but short thankes to you and my Ladie, for my longe and kinde welcome, wherein my wyfe joyneth with mee, prayinge my Remembrance of my lovinge respects to our kinde Neece, hopinge the good Schollers at Westminster are well, and soe I leave you all in the grace of God, and am

The same
Your lovinge Frend
H. S.

Num.

Num. X. Vide Præf. §. xi.

A Copy of the printed Pamphlet about the reputed Nunnery at Little-Gidding in Huntingtonshire.

THE ARMINIAN NUNNERY:

OR,

A BRIEFE DESCRIPTION

AND

Relation of the late erected *Monasticall* Place, called the ARMINIAN NUNNERY at little GIDDING in HUNTINGTON-SHIRE.

Humbly recommended to the wise consideration of this present PARLIAMENT.

The Foundation is by a Company of FARRARS at GIDDING.

Printed for *Thomas Underhill*. MDCXLI.

[1]Pag. 1.

THE

ARMINIAN

NUNNERY:

OR,

A BRIEFE DESCRIPTION

and Relation of the late erected *Monasticall* Place, called the ARMINIAN NUNNERY at little GIDDING in HUNTINGTON-SHIRE.

The Foundation is by a Company of Farrars at GIDDING.

THERE stands a faire HOVSE well scituated with a fine Grove and sweet Walks, Letticed and Gardined on both sides; their livelihood or Revenew about 500. l. *per Annum.* One of my Lord *Mountagues* Mansion-Houses being within two or three miles off called *Hemmington House* not farre from *Oundle.*

* A Gentleman comming to visit the said *House,* was first brought to [2] faire spacious Par- * Pag. 2.

[1] The Pages in the Margin answer the former Impression. Sic.

lour,

lour, where soone after appeared the old Gentlewomans second sonne, a Batchelour of a plain presence, but pregnant of speech and parts, unto whom when I had deprecated and excused my selfe for so sudden and bold a visit, he entertained me with seeming civilitie and humilitie.

After deprecations and some complements past betwixt us, he said I should see his Mother if I pleased, and I shewing my desire, hee went up into a Chamber, and presently returned with his Mother, (a tall ancient Gentlewoman about 80. yeares of age) shee being Matron of the *House*, his elder Brother a Priest-like man in habit and haire. Now he had a Sister married in the *House* to one Mr. *Cooles*, who had 14. or 15. Children in the *House*, and of these with a man-servant and 2. or 3. maid-servants the *Family* then consisted.

I was permitted to salute the Mother and Daughters, as we use to salute other women: and after we were all sitten Circular, I had leave to speake ingenuously of what I had heard and did or might conceive of their *House*. I first told him what I had heard of the *Nunns* at *Gidding;* of *two watching and praying all night;* of their *Canonicall houres;* of their *Crosses* on the outside and inside of the *Chappell;* of an *Altar* richly decked with *Tapestry, Plate* and *Tapers;*

of

of their *Adorations, genuflections,* and *geniculations,* which I told them plainly might strongly savour of Superstition and Popery.

Now you must understand that the younger Brother who first came unto me is a jolly pragmaticall and Priest-like fellow, and is the mouth for all the rest, and he began to cut me off, and answered with a serious protestation (though not so properly) that he did as verily * beleeve the Pope to be *Antichrist,* as any Article of his Faith, which I noted and gave the hearing: and therein if he spake from his heart, he much differed from the opinons of Priest *Shelford,* Priest *Squire,* Dr. *Draffig,* the red Dragon of *Arminians,* and other eminent *Arminians.*

* Pag. 3

He denied the place to be a *Nunnery,* and that none of his Neeces were *Nunnes:* but hee confessed that two of his *Neeces* had lived the one thirtie, the other thirty and two yeares Virgins, and so resolved to continue (as he hoped they would) to give themselves to *Fasting* and *Prayers;* but had made no *Vowes.*

For their *Canonicall hours,* he said they usually prayed 6. times a day, *viz.* 2. times a day publikly in the *Chappel,* and 4. times a day more privatly in the *House;* in the *Chappel* after the Order of the Booke of Common Prayer, at both times chanting out aloud the *Letany;* and in their *House* particular private Prayers for a *Familie.*

And

And hee being asked, if they spent so much time in *Praying*, they would leave little for *Preaching*, or for their weekly calling for which the Text is pregnant: *He that turneth away his eares, from hearing the Law, his prayer is abominable:* Pro. 18. *and* 19. And the fourth Commandement, *Six dayes shalt thou labour, &c.* Unto which this Priest-like pregnant Prolocutor answered but slubbringly, That sometimes a neighbour *Parson* would come and preach in their Chappell; and to the other, That their *Calling* (forsooth) was *to serve* God, which he tooke to be best: Oh the stupid and blind devotion of these people, for Men and Women in health of able and active bodies and parts to have no particular *Callings*, or to quit their *Callings*, and betake themselves to I wot not
* Pag. 4. what new forme of *Fasting* and *Prayer*, and * a contemplative idle life, a lip-labour devotion, and a will-worship, *Eccl.* 4. & 17. which by the word of God is no better than a specious kind of idleness, as St. *Augustine* termes them to be but *splendida peccata:* as if diligence in our particular lawfull callings were no part of our service to God.

And doubtlesse such a Monastick Innovation in a settled Church-government, is of dangerous consequence in many respects.

For

For their *night-watching* and *rising at* 4. *of the Clock in the morning* (which was much for the Matron of 80. yeares of age, and for her Grand-children) the Priestlike Prolocutor did not want a premeditated excusive Justification: But how neere it complieth with the superstitious *Nunneries* in Popish places beyond the Seas, I and others that have travelled and seene them may plainely perceive and notifie; especially considering hee could not but confesse there were every night two (*alternatim*) continued in their Devotions untill the rest rose.

For their divers *Crosses*, the [1] Prolocuter made me this answere; That they were not ashamed of the badge of Christian profession, which the first Propugnators of Faith bore in their Banners, and which are in our *Church Discipline* retained unto this day.

How confused and absurd this Crosse Answere was, let every Christian man judge.

On the Chimney-peice where wee sate, there was a Manuscript Tableture with this Inscription following, whereof I desired, and had a Coppy transcribed.

---

[1] Sic.

* Pag. 5.

He that by reprofe of our errors or remembrance of that which is more perfect seekes to make us better is welcome and an Angel of God.

And

Hee that by a cheerefull participation of that which is good confirms us in the same, is welcome as a Christian Friend.

But

He that any way goes about to divert or disturb us in that which is and ought to bee amongst Christians though it be not usuall with the World, is a burthen whiles he stayes and shall beare his judgement whosoever he be.

And

Hee that faults us in absence for that which in presence hee made shew to approve of, shall by a double guilt of flattery and slander violate the bonds of Friendship and Christianity.

MARY FERRAR *Widdow, Mother and Matron of this Familie; aged about* 80. *yeares, that bids adue to all feares and hopes of this world, and desires to serve God.*

The Letters of the top of which Inscription are the proper Character of the Jesuites in every

ry *Booke* and *Exhibite* of theirs. And the lines of the Inscription, how full of nonsence, justification and ostentation of superstitious devotion, besides their Creation of *Angels of* GOD; Let every understanding Christian Reader or hearer hereof judge.

The Prolocutor in justification of the Jesuitical *forme* of Letters which I excepted against: he said it was the auspicious name worthy to be the *Alpha* and *Omega* of all our Actions, and wee are commanded *to write such things upon the posts of our Houses, and upon our Gates:* Whereas indeed the Text which hee aimed at is in the Old Testament and not in the New, where there is no * mention of *Jesus* but *Jehovah:* And the words are most plainly, *Moses* Precept of the Law of God, and not of the Name, &c. *Deut.* 6. *&c.*

* Pag. 6.

Therfore this his Apologeticall answere was nothing but ignorant Eloquence, or eloquent Ignorance; most grossly and absurdly applyed.

This Prolocutor confessed himselfe to bee about 42. yeares old, was a fellow in a House in *Cambridge* (he named not what *House*) and that he had taken Orders of a Deacon (but he said nothing of his having beene at *Rome,* as it is well knowne he hath beene.)

Now I was invited by this Deacon to goe with him into the Chappell to their devotion-

at the entrance whereof this Priestlike deft Deacon made a low obeysance, a few paces farther lower, and comming to the half-pace which is at the East end where the *altered Table* stood, hee bowed and prostrated himselfe to the ground; then he went up into a faire large reading place (having placed mee above with a faire large Window Cushion of green Velvet before me:) The *Mother Matron* with all her *Traine*, which were her *Daughters* and *Daughters Daughters*, who with foure *Sonnes* kneeled all the while on the bodie of the halfe pace, all being in black gownes, and as they came to Church in round Monmouth Capps, all I say in blacke, save one of the *Daughters* who was in a Friers grey gowne.

We being all placed before the Deacon (for now so we must call him) with a very loud and shrill voyce began and trolled out the *Letanie*, and read divers other Prayers and Collects in the Book of *Common Prayer* and *Athanasius* his Creed; and concluded with the forme of words, of, *The Peace of God*, &c.

Their * Service ended, the *Mother* with all her Company attending my comming downe; but I durst not come very neere lest I might happily have light upon one of the Virgins lippes, not knowing whether they would have taken a second kisse in good part or no, with their

* Pag. 71.

their civill salutations towards mee, which I returned them a far off, they departed from the Chappell home.

Now the Deacon and I left, I observed the Chappell in generall to bee fairely and speciously adorned with herbes and flowers naturall and artificiall, and upon every pillar along on both sides the Chappell (such as are in Cathedrall Churches,) *Tapers;* I meane, great Virgin-waxe-Candles on every Pillar: The *halfe-pace* at the upper end (for there was no other division betwixt the body of the Chappell and the East end) was all covered with Tapestry and upon that halfe-pace stood the *Altar-like Table,* with a rich Carpet hanging very large on the halfe-pace, and some Plate, as a Challice, and Candlesticks with waxe-Candles in them: By the preaching-place stood the Font, a Leg-laver and cover all of Brasse cut and carved with Imagery worke, the Laver of the bignesse of a Barbers Bason, and the Cover had a Crosse erected on it. And this is all I had leisure to observe in the Chappell.

Then I made bolde in temperate termes to aske the Deacon what use they made of so many *Tapers* on the Table, and in the Chappell; he answered (forsooth) to give them light, when they could not see without them. And having formerly as I said before obtained leave

to say what I listed, I asked him to whom he made all these Courtesies, bowings and prostrations, he said to GOD; I told him the Papists make no other answere for their bowing to Images and Crucifixes, yet we account them Idolaters for so doing, as justly wee may: Hee
* Pag. 8. said wee * have no such warrant for the one; but for the other we had a precept (forsooth) *to doe all things with decencie and order,* as he tooke this to be. I demanded then why hee used not the same solemnitie in his house, and whether he thought the Chappell more holy then his *House,* he said no, but that God was more immediately present in the *Chappell* then in the *House,* whilst we were worshipping him, I replied that God was as present at *Paules Crosse,* as in *Paules Church,* at the Preaching-place at *White hall* and the *Spittle-Sermons,* as in other Churches and Chappels. For *wheresoever two or three, &c.* and in those fore-named places, no not in the bodie of any Churches, though there be Sermons and Prayers there, we do not use this threefold reverence, or bowing, or prostrating, no nor the Papists themselves, unlesse in the Chancell towards the East, wherein an Altar or some Crucifix is; He answered me somewhat confusedly, for this their *trinary number* of bowing which I did not well understand, nor well conceive what he meant.

It

It seemes moreover that at their monthly receiving the Sacrament (which this defendant Deacon performeth and consecrateth the *bread* and *wine*) their servants when they received, were attended by their Master and Mistris, and not suffered to lay or take away their owne trenchers as it is reported.

They also take upon them to be Phisitians and Chirurgions in ministring Physicke and Chirurgery for the sick and sore, and pretend to be very charitable to the poore; but as it is verily thought in a meritorious way.

They also take upon them to be Catechisers and to task many poore people with Catechisticall questions; Which when they come and can make answere thereunto, they are rewarded with money and their dinners, * and so they pretend they feed the poores bodies and soules, But their Catechisme or Catechisticall questions (some say) are strange ones and [1] for different from our Orthodox Catechismes. [2] Your may take notice that since the observation of the premisses, th' old Matron of the place is dead.

* Pag. 9.

And now beloved and Christian Reader, you have had an ingenuous Relation of this late erected *religious House* for the service of God (as the Founders would have it termed and

[1] Sic. [2] Sic.

held.) But certes we may wonder at nothing more [1] that in a settled Church-government our Bishops who are accounted *Governours of the Church* will permit any such erection or Foundation, so neerly complying with *Popery*, and that by a fond and fantasticall *Family of Farrars*, the principall Preist a *poly-pragmaticall* Fellow, having beene at *Rome*, and there (as it is credibly reported) he was conformable to all the abominable *Ceremonies* and *Services* of the *Church of Rome*. Now forsooth, in outward shew, hee would pretend that hee and the rest disclaime the *Pope* and *Poperie*, but by and by you shall see him and his Companions crouching, cringing, and prostrating to the ground to the Altar-like poore *Communion-Table*, or the rich gilded candlesticks, and waxe Tapers and other knacks thereon standing; And for another shew that they would not bee accounted Popish, they have gotten the *Book of Martyrs* in the *Chappell*; but few or none are suffered to read there, but onely it is there (I say) kept for a shew; and besides their lip-labour of trolling out the *Letanie* foure times a day, they have promiscuous private Prayers all the night long by nightly turnes, just like as the English *Nunnes* at Saint *Omers* and other Popish places: which private Prayers are (as it

[1] Sic.

seemes)

seemes) taken out of *John Cozens* his *Cozening Devotions,* (as they are rightly discovered to be * by Orthodox men) and extracted out of divers Popish *Prayer-Bookes.* This *Fryer-like Familie,* and as they are not unfitly termed *Arminian Nunnery* have divers other Commick and Mimmick actions of will-worship to the great dishonour of Almighty God, who will be served *in spirit and truth,* and he will once say unto them as hee did by the Prophet *Isaiah,* to the superstitious and ceremonious Jewes, *Who hath required this at your hands?* &c.

* Pag. 10.

Snrely we may marvel that the present *Primate of all England and Metropolitane* being the principal *Governour* of the *Church,* under his sacred *Majestie,* and as hee professeth such an *Anti-Papist* and enemy to *superstition* and *Idolatry,* should permit this *Innovation,* and connive at such *canting* betwixt the barke and the tree in matter of *Religion:* But by what hath beene related of these Peoples practises, we see that position made good, That *Arminianisme* is a bridge to *Popery,* the bridge was[1] not not onely made (a great part of the Clergie of this Land being downright *Arminians*) but some have past over it; witnesse Preist *Shelford,* Preist *Cozens,* and this Familie in this Booke treated on with divers others, and had not God of his

W. Cant.

[1] Sic.

great

great mercy undermin'd the chiefe Arches of that bridge, causing them to fall in the River of confusion, wee have cause to think that the greater part of this Land would also have followed the rest; but now God hath hindred it, not only by breaking the bridge in the just downfall of many of the chiefe of the *Arminian Faction,* but also by setting up that strong, high, and thick wall of the late Parlamentary nationall Protestation; for which (as also for all his mercies at all times, especially for this years wonders) his name be for ever praised (say I) and let all Protestants say, *Amen.*

FINIS.

Num. XI. Vide Præf. §. xii.

Dr. Wallis's Account of some Passages of his own Life. E. Coll. Smithianis penes Editorem. Vol: 22. *p.* 38.

[1] For the Reverend and Learned, Thomas Smith, Dr. in Divinity, late Fellow of Magdalen College in Oxford".

Sr.

In compliance with what you have oft desired of me, I send you these Memorials of my Life.

---

[1] This Superscription is written by Dr. Wallis's own hand; but the Letter is of the hand of his amanuensis, only here and there Dr. Wallis hath corrected it himself.

My

My Father was *John Wallis;* a grave and Reverend Divine: Son of *Robert* and *Ellen Wallis*, of *Thingdon* (or, as it is usually pronounced, *Fyenden*) in the County of *Northampton:* Born in *January* 1567, and there baptised the 18th. of that Month. He was educated in Trinity College in Cambridge: where he took the Degrees of Batchelor and Master of Arts: and (about the same time) entred into Holy Orders; in the Reign of *Queen Elizabeth.*

Toward the end of *Qu. Elizabeth*'s Reign; he was made Minister of *Ashford;* a great Market-Town in *Kent.* Where he continued the remainder of his Life, in great esteem and reputation, not only in that Town and Parish, but with the Clergy, Gentry and Nobility round about.

He was a Pious, Prudent, Learned and Orthodox Divine; an Eminent and Diligent Preacher; and with his prudent carriage, kept that great Town in very good Order; and promoted Piety to a great Degree.

Beside his constant preaching twice on the Lord's-day, and other occasional Sermons, and his Catechising and otherwise Instructing the younger sort; he did (with some of the most eminent Neighbour-Ministers) maintain a Week-day Lecture, on Saturday, their Market-day. Which was much frequented (beside a numerous

rous auditory of others) by very many of the Neighbour-Ministers, the Justices of the Peace, and others of the Gentry. Who (after Sermon) did use to dine at an Ordinary, and there confer (as there was occasion) about such affairs as might concern the welfare and good Government of that town and the parts adjacent, wherein they were respectively concerned.

He died at *Ashford, Novemb.* 30, and was there buried *Decemb.* 3. 1622. much lamented; and left behind him a good memory, which is not yet extinguished.

My Mother was *Joanna,* Daughter of *Henry* and *Sarah Chapman,* then of *Godmersham* in the County of *Kent;* who afterward removed to *Ashford;* and lived (both of them) with my father and mother, during my father's life; and with my mother, afterwards, to a great age and with great esteem, which *Sarah* was Daughter and Heiress of *Drew Sanders,* an eminent Merchant in *London.*

My Mother was born in *March,* and baptised *March* 15. 1581. She was married to my Father (after the death of his former Wife) *March* 12. 1612. By whom he had (beside my self) two Daughters (*Sarah* and *Ellen*) who were elder than I; and two Sons (*Henry* and *William*) who were younger than I.

I was born at *Ashford* (as I find among other of my Father's Memorials (*Novemb.* 23. 1616. and baptised *Decemb.* 1. then following.

My Father dying while I was a child; I was beholden to the Piety, Care and Kindness of my Mother for my Education. Who, after my Father's death, continued a Widdow, for the good of her Children, (tho' otherwise, she had fair opportunities of marrying well, if she had been so disposed:) she continued for the most part, (after my Father's death) to live in Ashford, in a house which she there purchased after my Father's death; but sometimes with one or other of her two daughters then married, and, at last, with my brother *Henry*, who was then a Linnen-Draper in *Ashford;* where she died, *Sept.* 26. 1643. Leaving her children all surviving and in good circumstances, and the youngest of us about 21 years of age.

In the year 1625 (the first year of K. Charles the first) there happened a great Plague at *London,* and many other places of the Kingdome, and (particularly) at *Ashford,* which caused many of the Inhabitants to remove thence to Neighbour Parishes for safety.

I had, til then, been educated at *Ashford;* in learning *English* and somewhat of *Latin.* But, upon this occasion, was sent to School to *Tenterden* (another great Market-Town in *Kent;*) where,

where, at a place called *Ley-green* (within that Parish) lived *Mr. Finch*, a worthy Gentleman, of a good Estate; who having divers children of his own, entertained a School-Master in his Family, *Mr. James Movat*, a *Scotchman*, who was a very good School-Master, and kept a private School for the Instruction of all the Children of that Gentleman, and of divers others who lodged in the Neighbor-hood.

His Scholar I continued for divers years; and was by him well grounded in the Technical part of Grammar; so as to understand the Rules, and the grounds and reasons of such Rules; with the use of them in such Authors as are usually read in Grammar Schools. For it was always my affectation even from a child, in all pieces of Learning or Knowledge, not merely to learn by rote, which is soon forgotten, but to know the grounds or reasons of what I learn; to inform my Judgement, as well as furnish my Memory; and thereby, make a better Impression on both.

In the year 1630, that Gentleman's eldest Son being designed for the University (and the others, otherwise) that School broke up. I might then perhaps have gone to the University, as well as some who did; (being not inferior to them in Learning) but I was thought too young.

My

My School-Master (who had a great kindness for me) soon after travailed, as Tutor to another Gentleman; and would have had me travailed with him, (into *France, Italy,* and other places;) but my Mother was loth to send me abroad.

At *Christmass* 1630, I was sent to School to *Mr. Martin Holbech,* at *Felsted* in *Essex;* who was reputed (as indeed he was) a very good School-Master. He there taught a Free School, of the Foundation of the Earl of *Warwick,* whose Seat at *Leez* was within that Parish. At this School, though in a Countrey Village, he had at that time above an hundred or six score Scholars; most of them Strangers, sent thither from other places, upon reputation of the School; from whence many good Scholars were sent yearly to the University.

Mr. Holbech was very kind to me; and used to say, I came to him the best grounded of any Scholar that he received from another School.

I continued his Scholar for two years; and was by that time pretty well acquainted with the *Latin* and *Greek* tongues, having read divers Authors therein (such as at Schools are wont to be read) and was pretty accurate in the *Grammars* of both; and in such other Learning as is commonly taught in such Schools; and

as

as wel qualified for the University as most that come thither. I had been used in both the Schools, to speak *Latin;* which made that Language pretty familiar to me; which I found to be of great advantage afterward.

I learn'd there somewhat of *Hebrew* also. So much at least, as to be able (with my Grammar and Dictionary) to proceed further without a Teacher: which I did afterwards prosecute to a good Degree of accuracy, as to the *Grammar* of it; (for this I was wont to be very careful of, in all Languages that I meddled with;) and in a few years, had read over all the *Hebrew Bible,* and much of it more than once.

And I was there taught somewhat of *Logick;* as a preparation to a further study of it in the University.

While I continued a Scholar there, at Christmass 1631, (a season of the year when Boys use to have a vacancy from School,) I was, for about a fortnight, at home with my Mother at *Ashford.* I there found that a younger Brother of mine (in Order to a Trade) had, for about 3 Months, been learning (as they call'd it) to *Write and Cipher,* or *Cast account,* (and he was a good proficient for that time,) When I had been there a few days; I was inquisitive to know what it was, they so called. And (to satisfie my curiosity) my Brother did (during the

the Remainder of my stay there before I return'd to School) shew me what he had been Learning in those 3 Months. Which was (besides the writing a fair hand) the *Practical* part of *Common Arithmetick* in *Numeration, Addition, Substraction, Multiplication, Division, The Rule of Three (Direct and Inverse,) the Rule of Fellowship (with and without, Time) the Rule of False-Position, Rules of Practise and Reduction of Coins,* and some other little things. Which when he had shewed me by steps, in the same method that he had learned them; and I had wrought over all the *Examples* which he before had done in his book; I found no difficulty to understand it, and I was very well pleased with it; and thought it ten days or a fortnight well spent. This was my first insight to *Mathematicks;* and all the Teaching I had.

This suiting my humor so well; I did thenceforth prosecute it, (at School and in the University, not as a formal Study, but as a pleasing Diversion, at spare hours; as books of *Arithmetick,* or others *Mathematical* fel occasionally in my way. For I had none to direct me, what books to read, or what to seek, or in what Method to proceed. For Mathematicks, (at that time, with us) were scarce looked upon as *Academical* Studies, but rather *Mechanical;* as the business of *Traders. Merchants,*

Seamen, Carpenters, Surveyors of Lands, or the like; and perhaps some *Almanack-makers in London.* And amongst more than Two hundred Students (at that time) in our College, I do not know of any Two (perhaps not any) who had more of *Mathematicks* than I, (if so much) which was then but little; And but very few, in that whole University. For the Study of *Mathematicks* was at that time more cultivated in *London* than in the Universities. At this time also I learned the rudiments of Musick and of the French Tongue.

About *Christmas* 1632. I was sent to the University of *Cambridge;* and was there admitted in *Emanuel College,* under the Tuition of *Mr. Anthony Burgess;* a pious, learned and able Scholar, a good Disputant, a good Tutor, an eminent Preacher, a sound and orthodox Divine; and (after he had left the College) I was under the Tuition of *Mr. Thomas Horton,* and lastly of *Mr. Benjamin Whichcot;* all able Scholars, and Eminent Divines. *Mr. Burgess* was afterwards Minister of *Sutton-Coldfield* in *Warwickshire;* D^r^. *Horton* was afterwards Master of *Queen's College in Cambrige,* and *Dr. Whichcott,* Provost of *King's College* there; and all of them in their time, eminent Preachers in *London.*

When

When I was come to the University; I found it was no disadvantage to have stay'd a year or more at School longer perhaps than I needed to have done. I found that, beside the improvement of what skill I had in *Latin, Greek* and *Hebrew* Languages (which I pursued with diligence) and other *Philologick* studies, my first business was to be the study of Logick.

In this, I soon became Master of a *Syllogism*, as to it's true structure, and the Reason of it's Consequences, however Cryptically proposed: so as not easily to be imposed on by Fallacies or false Syllogisms, when I was to Answer or Defend: and to manage an Argument with good Advantage, when I was to Argue or Oppose; and to Distinguish ambiguous Words or Sentences, as there was occasion; and was able to hold pace with those who were some years my Seniors; and had obtain'd the reputation of a good Disputant. And indeed I had the good hap all along (both at School and in the University) to be reputed (if not equal) not much inferior, to those of the best of my rank.

From *Logick*, I proceeded to *Ethicks, Physicks and Metaphysicks*, (consulting the Schoolmen on such points) according to the Methods of *Philosophy*, then in fashion in that University.

And I took into it the Speculative part of *Physick and Anatomy;* as parts of *Natural Philosophy;* And as *Dr. Glisson,* (then *Publick Professor of Physick* in that University) hath since told me, I was the first of his Sons, who (in a publick Disputation) maintain'd the Circulation of the Bloud, (which was then a new Doctrine,) tho' I had no Design of Practising *Physick.* And I had then imbib'd the Principles of what they now call the *New Philosophy.*

For I made no Scruple in diverting (from the common road of Studies then in fashion) to any part of useful Learning. Presuming, that Knowledge is no Burthen; and, if of any part thereof I should afterwards have no occasion to make use, it would at least do me no hurt; And, what of it I might or might not have occasion for, I could not then foresee.

On the same account, I diverted also to *Astronomy and Geography* (as parts of *Natural Philosophy*) and to other parts of *Mathematicks;* though, at that time, they were scarce looked upon, with us, as Academical Studies then in fashion.

As to Divinity, (on which I had an eye from the first,) I had the happiness of a strict and Religious Education, all along from a Child. Whereby I was not only preserved from vicious Courses, and acquainted with Religious Exercises;

cises; but was early instructed in the Principles of Religion, and [1] *Catachetical* Divinity, and the frequent Reading of *Scripture,* and other good Books, and diligent attendance on Sermons. (And whatever other Studies I followed, I was careful not to neglect this.) And became timely acquainted with *Systematick and Polemick Theology.* And I had the repute of a good Proficient therein.

Soon after my admittance into *Emanuel College,* I was chosen into the *Foundation,* as *Scholar* of the House. And so continued during my stay in that College. But I was not in capacity of being *Fellow* there, by reason of a *Proviso* in the *College Statutes;* not permitting more than one *Fellow,* of one and the same County, at the same time. So that, there being already a *Fellow of the County of Kent, (Mr. Wellar)* who continued there, 'til long after I had left the College, there was no room for me (being of the same County) to be Fellow there. Otherwise I was well esteem'd, and well beloved in the College, and had certainly been chosen *Fellow* if I had been in a capacity for it; and loth they were that I should go away.

And, (as I afterwards understood) *Dr. Oldsworth* then Master of the College (who had a kindness for me) had been consulting with them

[1] Sic.

about founding a *new Fellowship* on my account rather than I should leave them. But, the times becoming troublesome, left no room for such thoughts. I was afterwards Fellow of *Queen's College in Cambridge* for a short time, but soon quitted it upon my Marriage, on March 4. 1644, 5.

In *Hilary Term* 1636, 7. I took the Degree of *Batchelor of Arts;* and in 1640, the Degree of *Master of Arts,* and then left *Emanuel College;* and the same year I entred into *Holy Orders,* ordained by *Bishop Curle,* then *Bishop* of *Winchester.*

I then lived a *Chaplain* for about a year, in the house of S^r^. *Richard Darley,* (an antient worthy Knight,) at *Buttercramb in Yorkshire;* and then, for two years more, with the *Lady Vere,* (the Widdow of the Lord *Horatio Vere,*) partly in *London,* and partly at *Castle-Hedingham in Essex,* the antient seat of the *Earls of Oxford.*

In the year 1644, I was one of the Secretaries to the *Assembly of Divines* at *Westminster.* Not from the first sitting of that *Assembly;* but some time after, and thenceforth during their sitting. Wherein I do own my self to have received much advantage by the Conversation and the learned Debates of so many Grave, Reverend and Learned Divines, on all points of Di-

Divinity, while they were compiling the *Confession of Faith*, and the *Larger and lesser Catechism*.

The Occasion of that *Assembly*, was this; The Parliament which then was, (or the prevailing part of them,) were ingaged in a War with the King: Occasioned, *Partly*, from divers innovations in *Ceremonies* and *Super-Conformity*, introduced and strictly urged within ten or twelve years then last past, tending (as was apprehended) to a nearer compliance with Popery; of which, divers of the Bishops then in power were presumed the Authors and Fomentors; Together with the imposing of Bishops (there long disused) and the *Common-Prayer Book* on the *Scots*, which much inraged that Nation. *Partly* by several *Incroachments on Liberty and Property* (as was apprehended) by several Methods practised for *raising of Money on the Subject, without the consent of Parliament*, with other *Grievances*, of which there were *great Complaints*, and the *long intermission of Parliaments*. *Partly*, by divers Severities of the *Star-Chamber and High-Commission Court*, (against persons otherwise Conformable) for not complying therein. The Issue of which War, proved very different from what was said to be at first intended. As is usual in such cases; the power of the sword frequently passing from hand to hand, and those

who begin a War, not being able to foresee where it will end.

The Parliament thus engaged, had (amongst other things) a great displeasure against the *Order of Bishops;* (or rather, not so much against the *Order*, as the Men, and against the *Order* for their sakes,) and had resolved upon the *Abolition of Episcopacy* as it then stood; before they were agreed what to put instead of it. And did then convene this *Assembly*, to consult of some other *Form* to be suggested to the *Parliament*, to be by them set up, if they liked it; or, so far as they should like it.

The Divines of this *Assembly* were, for the Generality of them, *Conformable, Episcopal Men;* and had generally the reputation of *Pious, Orthodox and Religious Protestants;* and (excepting the seaven *Independents*, or, as they were called, *Dissenting Bretheren,)* I do not know of any *Non-Conformist* among them (as to the *legal Conformity then required,)* many of them were professedly *Episcopal;* and (I think) all of them so far *Episcopal* as to account a well-regulated *Episcopacy* to be at least allowable, if not desireable, and advisable; yet so as they thought the present Constitution capable of *Reformation* for the better.

When I name the *Divines* of this *Assembly*, I do not include the *Scotch Commissioners;* who tho'

tho' they were permitted to be present there, and did interpose in the *Debates* as they saw occasion; yet were no *Members* of that Assembly, nor did Vote with them; but acted [1] separatly, in the behalf of the *Church of Scotland*, and were zealous enough for the *Scotch Presbytery;* but could never prevail with the *Assembly* to declare for it.

On the other hand, the [2] *Independants* were against all *united Church Government* of more than one single Congregation; holding that each single *Congregation,* voluntarily agreeing to make themselves a *Church,* and chuse their own Officers, were of themselves [3] *Independant,* and not accountable to any other *Ecclesiastical Government;* but only to the Civil Magistrate, as to the Publick Peace. Admitting indeed, that Messengers from several Churches might meet to consult in Common, as there might be occasion; but without any Authoritative Jurisdiction.

Against these, the rest of the *Assembly* was Unanimous (and the *Scotch Commissioners* with them,) That it was lawful by the word of God, for divers particular *Congregations* (besides the inspection of their own *Pastor* and other *Officers*) to be united under the same *Common Government.* And such *Communities* to be further sub-

[1] Sic. [2] Sic. [3] Sic.

ordinate

ordinate to *Provincial and National Assemblies,* (which is equally consistent with *Episcopal and Presbyterian Principles.)* But, whether with or without a Bishop or standing President over such Assemblies, was not determined or debated by them.

When any such Point chanced to be suggested, the Common Answer was; That this Point was not before them; but was precluded by the *Ordinance* by which they sate; which did first *Declare* the Abolition of Episcopacy (not refer it to their Deliberation;) and they only to suggest to the Parliament, somewhat in the room of that so Abolished.

And this is a true Account of that *Assembly* as to this Point. (And when as they were called *Presbyterians;* it was not in the sense of *Anti-Episcopal,* but [1]*Anti-Independants.)* which I have the more largely insisted on, because there are not many now living, who can give a better account of that *Assembly* than I can.

To this may be objected, Their agreement to the *Covenant,* (which was before I was amongst them.) But this, if rightly understood, makes nothing against what I have said.

The *Covenant* as it came from *Scotland,* and was sent from the *Parliament* to the *Assembly,* seem'd directly against all *Episcopacy,* and for

[1] Sic.

setting

setting up the *Scotch Presbytery* just as among them. But the *Assembly* could not be brought to assent to it in those terms. Being so worded as, *To Preserve* the Government of the Church of Scotland; and, *to Reform* that of England; and so *to Reduce* it to the nearest Uniformity. But, before the *Assembly* could agree to it; it was thus mollified, *To Preserve* that of Scotland (not absolutely, but) *against the common Enemy;* And *to Reform* that of England (not, so as it is in Scotland, but) *according to the word of God, and the example of the best reformed Churches;* And *to endeavor the nearest Uniformity*) which might be as well by Reforming that of Scotland, as that of England, or of both.)

And whereas the *Covenant,* as first brought to them, was against *Popery, Prelacie, Heresie, Schism, Prophaness,* &c. They would by no means be persuaded to admit the word *Prelacy,* as thus standing absolute. For though they thought the *English Epicopacy,* as it then stood, capable of *Reformation,* for the better in divers things; yet to Engage indefinitely against all *Prelacy,* they would not agree.

After many days debate on this Point (as I understood from those who were then present) some of the Parliament (who then pressed it) suggested this Expedient; that by *Prelacy,* they did not understand all manner of Episcopacy

or

or Superiority, but only the present Episcopacy, as it now stood in *England*, consisting of Arch-Bishops, Bishops and their several Courts, and subordinate Officers, &c. And that if any considerable alteration were made in any part of this whole frame, it was an Abolition of the present Prelacy, and as much as was here intended in these words; and that no more was intended but a Reformation of the present Episcopacy in England. And in pursuance of this, it was agreed to be Expressed with this Interpretation, *Prelacy; that is, Church Government by Arch-Bishops, Bishops, their Chancellors and Commissaries, Deans, Deans and Chapters, Arch-Deacons, and all other Ecclesiastical Officers depending on that Hierarchy.* And with this Interpretation at length it passed. And the *Scotch Commissioners*, in behalf of their Church, agreed to those *Amendments*.

I know some have been apt to put another sense upon that Interpretation; but this was the true intendment of the *Assembly*, and upon this occasion.

During my attendance on the *Assembly;* I was a Minister in *London;* first in *Fan-church street;* and afterwards in *Iron-monger Lane;* where I so continued till my Remove to *Oxford.*

About the beginning of our Civil Wars, in the year 1642. a Chaplain of *Sr. Will. Waller's,* (one

(one evening as we were sitting down to Supper at the *Lady Vere*'s in *London*, with whom I then dwelt,) shewed me an intercepted Letter written in *Cipher*. He shewed it me as a Curiosity (and it was indeed the first thing I had ever seen written in *Cipher*.) And asked me between jeast and earnest, whether I could make any thing of it. And he was surprised when I said (upon the first view) perhaps I might, if it proved no more but a new Alphabet.

It was about ten a clock when we rose from Supper. I then withdrew to my chamber to consider of it. And by the number of different Characters therein, (not above 22 or 23:) I judged that it could not be more than a new Alphabet, and in about 2 hours time (before I went to bed) I had deciphered it; and I sent a Copy of it (so deciphered) the next morning to him from whom I had it. And this was my first attempt at *Deciphering*.

This unexpected success, on an easy Cipher, was then looked upon as a great matter; and I was somewhile after pressed to attempt one of another Nature; which was a Letter of *Mr. Secretary Windebank*, then in *France*, to his Son in *England*, in a Cipher hard enough, and not unbecoming a Secretary of State. It was in Numeral Figures, extending in number to above seaven hundred, with many other Characters in-

intermixed. But not so hard as many that I have since met with. I was backward at first to attempt it, and after I had spent some time upon it, threw it by as desperate: But, after some months, resumed it again, and had the good hap to master it.

Being encouraged by this success, beyond expectation; I afterwards ventured on many others (some of more, some of less difficulty) and scarce missed of any, that I undertook, for many years, during our civil Wars, and afterwards. But of late years, *the French Methods of Cipher* are grown so intricate beyond what it was wont to be, that I have failed of many; tho' I have master'd divers of them. Of such deciphered Letters, there be copies of divers remaining in *the Archives of the Bodleyan Library in Oxford;* and many more in my own Custody, and with the Secretaries of State.

On March 4. 1644, 5. I married *Susanna* daughter of *John and Rachel Glyde* of *Northjam* in *Sussex;* born there about the end of *January* 1621, 2. and baptised *Feb.* 3. following. By whom I have (beside other children who died young) a Son and two Daughters now surviving; *John* born *Dec.* 26. 1650. *Anne* born *June* 4. 1656. and *Elizabeth* born *Sept.* 23. 1658.

My Son *John,* sometime of *Trinity* College in *Oxford,* afterwards of the Inner Temple *London,*

don, Barrister at Law, *Feb.* 1. 1681, 2. married *Elizabeth* daughter of *John* and *Mary Harris* of *Soundels* by *Nettlebed* in the County of *Oxford;* and afterwards Heiress to her Brother *Taverner Harris,* to a fair estate, at *Soundels.* She died *Aug.* 8. 1693, leaving three children now surviving, *John, Mary* and *Elizabeth.*

My Daughter *Anne* married *Dec.* 23. 1675, to *John Blencow,* son of *Thomas* and *Mary Blencow* of an ancient family at *Marston St. Laurence,* in *Northamptonshire,* then Barrister at Law, now one of the Barons of the Exchequer, by whom she hath seaven children, all now surviving, *John, Mary, Anne, Thomas, William, Elizabeth,* and *Susanna.*

My Daughter *Elizabeth,* married *Feb.* 21. 1681, 2. to *William Benson* son of *George and Mary Benson* of *Towcester* in *Northamptonshire;* and is now a Widdow. He died Nov. 5. 1698. leaving no child surviving.

My Wife died at *Oxford Mar.* 17, 1686, 7. after we had been married more than 42 years.

About the year 1645, while I lived in *London* (at a time, when, by our Civil Wars, Academical Studies were much interrupted in both our Universities:) besides the Conversation of divers eminent Divines, as to matters Theological; I had the opportunity of being acquainted with divers worthy Persons, inquisitive into Na-

Natural Philosophy, and other parts of Humane Learning; And particularly of what hath been called the *New Philosophy* or *Experimental Philosophy*.

We did by agreement, divers of us, meet weekly in *London* on a certain day, to treat and discourse of such affairs. Of which number were *Dr. John Wilkins* (afterwards *Bp. of Chester*) *Dr. Jonathan Goddard, Dr. George Ent, Dr. Glisson, Dr. Merret,* (*Drs. in Physick,*) *Mr. Samuel Foster* then Professor of Astronomy at *Gresham College, Mr. Theodore Hank* (a German of the *Palatinate,* and then Resident in *London,* who, I think, gave the first occasion, and first suggested those meetings) and many others.

These meetings we held sometimes at *Dr. Goddard's* lodgings in *Woodstreet* (or some convenient place near) on occasion of his keeping an Operator in his house, for grinding Glasses for Telescopes and Microscopes; and sometime at a convenient place in *Cheap-side;* sometime at *Gresham College* or some place near adjoyning.

Our business was (precluding matters of Theology and State Affairs) to discourse and consider of *Philosophical Enquiries,* and such as related thereunto; as *Physick, Anatomy, Geometry, Astronomy, Navigation, Staticks, Magneticks, Chymicks, Mechanicks,* and *Natural Experiments;* with the state of these Studies, as then cul-

cultivated, at home and abroad. We there discoursed of the *Circulation of the Bloud, the Valves in the Veins, the Venæ Lacteæ, the Lymphatick Vessels, the Copernican Hypothesis, the Nature of Comets, and New stars, the Satellites of Jupiter, the Oval Shape* (as it then appeared) *of Saturn, the spots in the Sun, and it's Turning on it's own Axis, the Inequalities and Selenography of the Moon, the several Phases of Venus and Mercury, the Improvement of Telescopes, and grinding of Glasses for that purpose, the Weight of Air, the Possibility or Impossibility of Vacuities, and Nature's Abhorrence thereof, the Torricellian Experiment in Quicksilver, the Descent of heavy Bodies, and the degrees of Acceleration therein;* and divers other things of like nature. Some of which were then but New Discoveries, and others not so generally known and imbraced, as now they are, with other things appertaining to what hath been called *The New Philosophy;* which, from the times of *Galileo* at *Florence*, and *Sr. Francis Bacon* (*Lord Verulam*) in *England*, hath been much cultivated in *Italy*, *France*, *Germany*, and other Parts abroad, as well as with us in *England*.

About the year 1648,1649, some of our company being removed to *Oxford* (first *Dr. Wilkins*, then I, and soon after *Dr. Goddard*) our company divided. Those in *London* continued to meet there as before (and we with them, when

we had occasion to be there;) and those of us at *Oxford;* with *Dr. Ward* (since *Bp. of Salisbury) Dr. Ralph Bathurst* (now *President of Trinity College in Oxford) Dr. Petty* (since *Sr. William Petty*) *Dr. Willis* (then an eminent Physician in *Oxford*) and divers others, continued such meetings in *Oxford;* and brought those Studies into fashion there; meeting first at *Dr. Pettie's* Lodgings, (in an Apothecarie's house) because of the convenience of inspecting Drugs, and the like, as there was occasion; And after his remove to *Ireland* (tho' not so constantly) at the Lodgings of *Dr. Wilkins,* then Warden of *Wadham Coll.* And after his removal to *Trinity College in Cambridge,* at the Lodgings of *the Honorable Mr. Robert Boyle,* then resident for divers years in *Oxford.*

Those meetings in *London* continued, and (after the King's Return in 1660) were increased with the accession of divers worthy and Honorable Persons; and were afterwards incorporated by the name of *the Royal Society,* &c. and so continue to this day.

In the year 1649 I removed to *Oxford,* being then *Publick Professor of Geometry,* of the Foundation of *Sr. Henry Savile.* And *Mathematicks* which had before been a pleasing Diversion, was now to be my serious Study. And (herein as in other Studies) I made it my business to exa-

examine things to the bottom; and reduce effects to their first principles and original causes. Thereby the better to understand the true ground of what hath been delivered to us from the Antients, and to make further improvements of it. What proficiency I made therein, I leave to the Judgement of those who have thought it worth their while to peruse what I have published therein from time to time; and the favorable opinion of those skilled therein, at home and abroad.

In the year 1653 I was persuaded to publish a Grammar of the *English Tongue;* chiefly to gratify strangers, who were willing to learn it (because of many desirable things published in our Language) but complained of it's difficulty for want of a Grammar, suited to the propriety and true Genius of the Language.

To this I prefixed a Treatise of Speech *(de loquela)* wherein I have Philosophically consi dered the Formation of all Sounds used in Articulate Speech, (as well of our own, as of any other Language that I know;) By what Organs, and in what Position each sound was formed; with the nice distinctions of each, (which in some letters of the same Organ, is very subtil:) so that, by such Organs, in such Position, the Breath issuing from the Lungs, will form such Sounds, whether the Person do

or do not hear himself speak. Which was, I think, a new attempt, not before undertaken by any (that I know of) before that time. For tho' it were observed, that some letters were Labials, some Dentals, some Palatines, and some Gutturals; and some Grammarians have in some few shewed a different Formation [1] in some few" of the same Organ; yet it is but of very few they have so done; and very imperfectly; None (that I know of) had before attempted it, as to all; whatever may have been done since in pursuance of what I had then taught.

In pursuance of this, I thought it very possible to teach a Deaf person to speak, by directing him, so to apply the Organs of Speech, as the sound of each letter required, (which children learn by imitation and manifold attempts, rather than by art:) And in the year 1660 being importuned by some friends of his, I undertook so to teach *Mr. Daniel Whalley* of *Northampton*, who had been Deaf and Dumb from a Child. I began the work in 1661, and in little more than a year's time, I had taught him to pronounce distinctly any words, so as I directed him, (even the most difficult of the *Polish Language*, which a *Polish* Lord then in *Oxford* could propose to him, by way of trial, of those five or six select hard words, which

[1] F. delend.

they

they use to propose to others, as not to be pronounced by any but themselves:) and in good measure to understand a Language and express his own mind in writing; And he had in that time read over to me distinctly (the whole or greatest part of) the English Bible; and did pretty well understand (at least) the Historical part of it.

In the year 1662, I did the like for *Mr. Alexander Popham* (son of the *Lady Wharton*, by her former husband *Admiral Popham:*) with like success. On whom *Dr. William Holder* had before attempted it, but gave it over.

I know that both of these (who I think are yet living) were apt to forget (after their parting from me) much of that nicety (which before they had) in the distinct pronouncing some Letters, (which they would recover, when I had occasionally been with them to set them right;) wanting the help of their Ear to direct their speaking, as that of the Eye directs the hand in writing. For which reason a man who writes a good hand, would soon forget so to do, if grown blind. And therefore, one who thus learns to speak, will (for the continuance and improvement of it) need somebody continually with him, who may prompt him, when he mistakes.

I have, since that time (upon the same account) taught divers Persons (and some of them very considerable) to speak plain and distinctly, who did before hesitate and stutter very much; and others, to pronounce such words or letters, as before they thought impossible for them to do: by teaching them how to rectify such mistakes in the formation, as by some natural impediment, or acquired Custome, they had been subject to.

About February 1657, 8. (upon the death of *Dr. Gerard Langbain, Provost of Queen's College in Oxford,* a very worthy person) I was chosen *Custos Archivorum* in this University; to keep and to inspect their Records, Charters, and other Muniments. And was thereby engaged in the Study of our Charters, Rights and Privileges: which I did with great diligence. And in pursuance thereof, I was concerned from time to time in defending their just Rights and Privileges, in such Law-Suits, as did arise, of the *University* with the *City of Oxford,* the Stationers of *London,* and others. Wherein I found that some little knowledge, which I had before acquired, by occasional inspection (amongst other Studies) into our Books of Law, was of great use unto me; and of which I was hereby ingaged into a further Study, especially as to those Cases, wherein the University was con-

concerned. And I think it will be acknowledged, that I have therein done the University considerable services. I am sure it hath been my endeavour so to do, when I have been employed by them.

It hath been my Lot to live in a time, wherein have been many and great Changes and Alterations. It hath been my endeavour all along, to act by moderate Principles, between the Extremities on either hand, in a moderate compliance with the Powers in being, in those places, where it hath been my Lot to live, without the fierce and violent animosities usual in such Cases, against all, that did not act just as I did, knowing that there were many worthy Persons engaged on either side. And willing whatever side was upmost, to promote (as I was able) any good design for the true Interest of Religion, of Learning, and the publick good; and ready so to do good Offices, as there was Opportunity; And, if things could not be just, as I could wish, to make the best of what is: And hereby, (thro' God's gracious Providence) have been able to live easy, and useful, though not Great.

Thus in Compliance with your repeated desires, I have given you a short account of divers passages of my life, 'till I have now come to more than fourscore years of age. How well

I have acquitted my self in each, is for others rather to say, than for

Your friend and servant

Oxford January 29. 1696,7. John Wallis.

Num. XII. Vide Præf. §. XII.

An Extract of a Letter from Dr. John Wallis to Dr. John Fell, then Lord Bishop of Oxford, dated April 8. 1685. *concerning the Report spread about of Dr. Wallis's deciphering King Charles the I^st's. Letters. E. Coll. MSS. Smithianis penes Editorem, Vol.* 22. *p.* 54.

My Lord,

I understand there have of late been complaints made of mee, that I deciphered the late King's letters, meaning those taken in the late King's cabinet at Nase-by fight, and after printed. As to this without saying any thing, whether it bee now proper to repeat what was done above forty yeares ago; the thing is quite otherwise. Of those letters and papers, (whatever they were) I never saw any one of them, but in print: nor did those papers, as I have been told, need any deciphering at all, either by

by mee, or any body else: being taken in words at length, just as they were printed: save that some of them were, I know not by whom, translated out of French into English. 'Tis true, that afterwards some other letters of other persons, which had been occasionally intercepted, were brought to my hands: some of which I did decipher, and some of them I did not think fit to do, to the displeasing of some, who were then great men. And I managed my selfe in that whole busines by such measures, as your Lordship, I think, would not bee displeased with. I did his Majesty, who then was, (K. Charles the first) and his friends many good offices, as I had opportunity, both before and after the King's death: and ventured farther to do them service, than perhaps some of those, who now complaine of mee, would have had the courage to do, had they been in my circumstances. And I did to his late Majesty, K. Charles the second, many good services, both before and since his restauration: which himselfe has been pleased divers times to profess to mee with great kindnes. And if either my Lord Chancellour Clarendon, or Mr. Secretary Nicolas, or his late Majesty, were now alive, they would give mee a very different character from what, it seems, some others have done. And I thinke his Majesty, that

now

now is, knowes somewhat of it, and some other persons of honour yet alive. &c.

I am,

My Lord,

Your very humble servant

John Wallis.

Transcribed (saith Dr. Smith) *from the copy, which Dr. Wallis lent mee at Oxford* 6 *August* 1698.

Tho. Smith.

In the Oxford Catalogue of MSS. (saith Dr. Smith also) in hyperoo Bodleiano, *it is said there pag.* [170. num. 3524.34.] *that Dr. Wallis decyphered several of King Charles I. Letters, and that they are in the book of Cyphers, which hee gave to the Vniversity Library,* (*in the year* 1653.) *which is a great and scandalous slander.*

Num. XIII. Vide Præf. §. XIII.

Inscriptiones singulares hactenus ineditæ, HADRIANO BEVERLANDO *collectore. Ad fidem Codicis MS. viri magnæ apud omnes litteratos auctoritatis* HENRICI ALDRICHII, *non ita pridem Ædis Christi Decani. Mecum vero* (*de more suo*) *perquam humaniter communicavit vir pereruditus* (*sodalis noster è paucis jucundissimus, nam mihi cum eo amicitia conjunctissima fuit*) *CARO-*

ROLVS BRENT, A.M. & Ædis Christi Alumnus, funere immaturo (id quod viris litteratis, quibuscum habuit consuetudinem, maximæ fuit acerbitati) nuper præreptus. E Coll. nostris MSS. Vol. 75. p. 1.

In via Tiburtina.

CHIAE TI CLAU-
DIVS BITHUS
b. m. TRIBVIT
Hoc MERVERAT.

C. MUSIO QVIR.
ASCLAE H. B. M. F.
LOCVS SACER
AD PERPETUAM
AURELII
MEMORIAM
INSTAURATUS.

OLLAE QVI
ETI MYRTALE
SABINAE ET
POMPONIAE
FESTAE UXORIB
S. TARQVITIUS
ASPER

ET

ET TARQVITIAE FILIAE
INNOCENTISS. VIX. AN. IIII
M. X. D. IX. FECIT PATER
INFELIX ET SIBI NEMO NOS
INQVIETET. HAVE ET VALE
QVISQVIS ES.

D. M.
CVI PLACET PLA
CEAT NOBIS NON
CVM HIC COMMODI
TAS NULLA SIT
HABITANDI

Salonae.
METRIVS PIVS
DIVES JAM HEBES
DECREPITUS ET MEN
DICANS LVCE CARENS
ATRIBVS LIBERTIS ET DVA
bUS LIBERTABVS EXPVLSVS
SITI PERI.

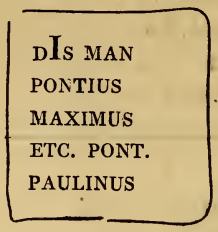
SACRVM MIHIMET CONSTI-
TUI HIC HUMATUS SVM.
CINERA ET OSSA RENUO.
IN HOC UT QVIESCAM NOLO
SOBOLEM NEGO PRIVO
POSTEROS OMNES.

ME

ME LEGITO ET SE : : : :
VIX AN. CXXV. M: III
ET NEMINI
POSTERI.

AURELIO HERA
CLIDÆ AGITATORI
FACTIONIS VENETAE
ET L. DOCTORI FAC
TIONIS SS PRASINAE
FECIT VLPIUS APO
LAUSTIANUS TATULAE
B. M.

TYRO APOL
LONIO INSTAU
RATORI MOENIUM
NOSTRORVM ET
TARSIAE SANCTISS.
VIRGINI EJUS FILIÆ
UNIVERSUS POPVLVS
MITILENORVM
AB NIMIO AMORE
AETERNUM DECVS
AD MEMORIAM.


DIS MAN
PONTIUS
MAXIMUS
ETC. PONT.
PAULINUS

DIS MAN
ETC. PONT
PONTIANUS
FIERI IUSS.

CORNELIO
SYLLAE
IMPERATORI
FORTUNATO

MARTI
SANCTO
SACRVM.

SUM CASTÆ CINERVM
LAPIS PVELLÆ CVSTOS
ME RELEGENS PIVS
VIATOR HVIVS SI
TIBI FVISSET VIRTVS
COGNITA LACRIMU
LIS RIGARES EYϽ DI
AE CIPARAE

L.

L. DAPHNUS
RYODAN FECIT SIBI
ET CHRISOGONI
PIISSIMO FRATRI
ET SPVRIAE VERNAE
DULCISSIMAE
FOEMINAE.

DIS OMNIB. COL
Q. GRISIDIO Q. F.
SABINIANO FISTULA
RIO CANTORI IMAGINA
RIO AGRIMESTR
VIX AN XLIII M. X.
D. III.
CUJUS INGENII NEMO
C TIPHERNIUS
C. F
SACERDOS.

LICINIO
PRISCO
FL. AMYNTAE
QUÆ EX FIDE
EADEM MENS VITA
ET TUMULVS FVIT.

M. ANTONII
TRIB MILIT LEG
II ADIUT TRIB
PLÆ FIDEL XVIR
STITIT JUD - - - -
SIBI ET SUEIS.

DIS MANI
QVISQVIS ES
SALVUS SIS MA
CEDO. SVM TIRIUS
MACEDO DICITO
MEIS ME MORTUUM
ESSE.

DIS MANIB
HIC SITA SVM VARIOS AVIUM
PERFRINGERE CANTUS
DOCTA AVIS E SICVLO PRÆ
DA PETITA SINU
NUPER HERVM STUDIIS
FESSVM CVRISQ LEVABAM
NUNC MANES BLANDIS
MULCEO RAPTA SONIS.

D . M.
L. CATORIUS P. F.
FAB. HIC SEPVLTUS EST

HIC LOCVS PATET
INFRA P. XX.
ET MEDIA A FOSINERO
VERSVS XXV.

HUNC LOCVM MONIMEN
TUMQVE DO LEGO.

L. CORNELIVS
HERMES SIBI
ET SUIS LIBER
TIS LIBERTABVS
QVE [1] LORVM

M. AURELIUS
AUG. LIB. SALVIUS
ET POSTUMIA
MARINA UXOR
SIBI VIVO
FECERE.

---

[1] L. EORVM.

D M

M. MARCELLVS
ET M ALEXIS
UTERQ ALTER
HOC SARCOPHAGO
SITI SVNT.

PARVULUS HIC SITUS EST
VIXIT TRES USQ PER ANNOS
INQVE NOVEM MENSES INVALI
DOSQVE DIES
NOMINE GRVSOLOSVS
AMABILIS UTQVE ERAT INFANS
FLEBILIS ET MISERE RAPTUS
AD INFERIAS

SATVRNINUS
FILIO VETIA
LATEMA DELI
CATO SVO P.

D M
L. PISANDER L. F. AGRORVM PO
TENS PARENTIBVS CLODIO ET MAJESTAE
QUI INIMICORVM MANU ULLO PACTO PERIERE NON
POTERANT CAPTO CONSILIO SVO ET LANIPPE
MERETRICIS. VENENO VULVÆ LANIPPAE IMPOSITO
IN CONCVBITUS PRIMORDIO PERIERVNT. NAM RA
BIEM LIVOR DEVOVIT.

D M
A QVINTILIA
NO DISPENSA
TORI EGREGIO
ARISTIDES QVINTI
LIANO PATRONO
SVO EX MERITO.

D. M.
MAVORTIO VICTORI S.
ET DIIS OMNIB.
OB P. R. DEVOTIONEM
SINGULIS ANNIS RENOVANDAM
IN PARTHICAM EXPEDITIONEM

SI QVIS HANC ARAM LÆSERIT
NUMINA OMNIUM DIVORVM
ET GENIUM P. R. IRATUM HABEAT

A CAVLIO SILVANO
A CALVIUS RESTITUTUS
FILIO PIISSIMO
VIX ANN X MENS VI
DIS
Manib.
S.

DIIS
MANIBVS
M. POSTUM ET.
HELIOD. VIVUS
POSUIT SIBI ET
TORANIAE SPEI
CONIUGI SANCTIS
SIMÆ

D. O. M.
CALPURNIUS
DEUM MATRI
SACERDOS FAMILIÆ
SUÆ POSTREMUS.

D. M.
L. CORNELIUS
HERMES SIBI
ET SUIS LIBERTIS
LIBERTABVSQVE
EORVM.

DIS MAN
LOCVS L M CATTIORV
SEX F. ET TERENTIAE MF.
SERAE ET TITIAE L. F.
POSTHUMAE ET M. CATT.
L. F.

IN FRONT. P. XXXXV
IN AGR. P. XXXV.

D M
P. JULIO
P. F. FESTO
P. JULIVS FESTUS
DAT DONUM LIBENS AGRVM
ET PVTEUM MACERIA CLVSVM
NEPOTI CARISS
EX TESTAMENTO

De Sarcophago turpibus figuris ornato.

Turpia tot tumulo defixit crimina Balbus
Post Superos spurco Tartara more premens.
Pro facinus ! finita nihil modo vita retraxit
Luxuriam ad manes mœcha sepulchra gerunt.

Romae in columna.

LYMPHAE MATRI S.

SI HUMANO INGENIO PERPETUO
VIATORIBVS PARARI VINA POTUISSENT
NON AMOENUM QUEM CERNIS AQVARVM
FONTEM C. LEPIDUS
MAGNA IMPENSA
ADDUXISSET
POTA FELIX.

IMP. L. SEPTIMIUS SEVERVS
PERTINAX AUG PONT. MAX.
COS. VII. D. O. M. SALVTARI
ID. APR.
JUNONIQ REGINÆ
COLVMNAM
EREXIT.

-HELPES dICTA FVI SICVLAE REGIONIS
ALVMNA
QUAM PROCUL A PATRIA CONJUGIS
EGIT AMOR
ORTICIBUS SACRIS JAM NUNC PEREGRI
NA QUIESCO
JUDICIS AETERNI TESTIFICATA
THRONUM
NE QVA MANUS BVSTVM VIOLET: NISI
FORTE JUGALIS
HÆC ITERVM CVPIAT JUNGERE MEMBRA SUIS
LUX MEA NON CLAUSA EST TALI: NAM MORTE
REVELER
ET SOCIOS VITAE NECTET UTERQVE CINIS.

Dubiæ fidei.

Romæ prope templum D. Andrae.

TERTIAE AEMILIAE
DIV. MAG. SCIPIONIS AFR.
CONLIBERTÆ ET UXORIS GRATISS.
QVÆ VIXIT ANN
XLIII. M. II. D. XVII.

Extra Portam Portuensem.

ASAPHAT IUDAEUS TARS
ORIUNDUS OB GRANDEM NUMMUM
E PATRIA PULSVS ROMAE QVIESCO.
POSTEROS VETO NE QVIS SEPVLCHRVM
INGREDIATUR QVOUSQVE RESVRGAM.

fidei suspectæ.

Dubiæ fidei.

PRIAPO INDULGENTISS
CRESCENTIA
BENEMERENTI

Viterbii.

COLLATINUS TARQVINIUS
DULCISSIMÆ ET INCOMPARABILI CONIUGI
LVCRETIAE
PVDICITIÆ DECORI ET MULIERVM
GLORIÆ QVÆ VIX ANN. XXII.
M. V. D. XVI PROH DOLOR
QVANTUM FVIT CARISSIMA.

adulterinum.

VALERIA - - - -
HIC SITA - - - VIX
AN. XIX VIRGINITAS - -
FVIT GRAVIS: SIT NUNC
EI TERRA LEVIS

& hoc fictitium.

DIS MAN
TU QVICVNQVE
TITULVM NOSTRV̄
RELEGES ROGO
PER SVPEROS SI
AD INFERNAS
PARTES RECEPTA
RIS NE VELIS
TRIBVS SEPVLCHRIS
MOLESTARI.

IACET HIC PICUS
MIRANDULA

Cætera NOSCUNT ET TAGES
ET GANGES FORSAN ET
ANTIPODES

HA-

HADRIANUS. BEVERLANDUS.
HIC. SVM. UBI. TU. QVI.
HAEC. LEGIS. ESSE. NOLLES.
RIDES.
NON. RIDEBIS. CREDE. MIHI.
EADEM. DECRETA. SVBITURUS.
Sibi vivo.
P.

Num. XIV. Vide Præf. §. xiv.

Robert of Brunne's account of the raising of Stonehenge, from the French of Master Wace, who followed Geffry of Monmouth.

Reparavit [Ambrosius] *Londoniam.*

¶ Fro þiþen [*York*] to London he [*Aurelius Ambrosius*] went,
þe toun he fond paired & schent,
Kirkes, houses beten doun.
To þe kyng þei ment þam of þe toun,
þat many of þe best burgeis,
Were fled & ilk man gede his weis.
He bigged it eft þat are was playn,
Clerkes burgeis did com agayn,
Venit ad Wyntoniam. & gaf ilkon agayn þer estre.
Siþen he turned to Wynchestre,
Bigged kirkes & houses þere,
Als he had don els where.

¶ Siþen

¶ Siþen he ȝede to Salebiri,
& to þe abbeý of Ambisbiri,
& to þat stede he toke his waý,
þer Hengist did þe Bretons deie.
þare biriels he þouht to honoure
With som þing þat aý mýght doure,
& frithe þat stede þer þei laý,
þat mýht last tille domesdaý.
He did masons deuýse & cast,
What werk mot langest last.
With þe kýng a clerke was þore,
His name was Sir Tremore,
Was archbisshop of Kerlioun.
He did þe kýng in reson,
" If he wild mak a werk of fýne,
" Send ȝour sond to seke Merlýne,
" Mak þis werk maý no man,
" Gif suilk conseile as he can.
" He can ȝow telle what salle betide,
" After him I rede ȝour werk abide.
" þe kýng said it salle so be,
" Mýkille I desire Merlýn to se.
" Of his wisdom wild I here,
" He sais selcouthes maný manere.
At a welle fer in Wales,
Baýnes it hight bi olde tales,
þe messager þer Merlýn fond,
Come speke with king he sent his sond.

Locus ubi magnates fuerunt occisi.

Consilium Tremorii episcopi.

Rex misit pro Merlino.

¶ Whan

¶ Whan he come be fore þe kýng,
Joýe he made for his comýng,
& honourd him for he was wyse,
& cherisid ouer alle oþer of prise.
He praid him with fulle louand speche,
What suld be tide he wild him teche.

Responsio Merlini ad regem.

" Sir kýng", said Merlyn, " certis naý,
" To opýn mý mouthe I dar ne may.
" Bot if it be a behouelý þing at nede,
" þat were warnýng or tokýn of dred.
" & ȝit with grete lounes of hert,
" þat pride tourn noght ouer theurt,
" For if I spake þrow prýde or bost,
" Or for scorn a gayn my gost:
" þat ilk gost that in me wons,
" þat alle me kennys, & alle me mons,
" Owt of mý mouthe it wild him draw,
" Off my conyng reue me my saw,
" þat no more myght I speke with mouthe,
" þan a noþer þat noght ne couthe.
" þerfor of suilk priuete
" þink not þer on, lat it be.
" þink on þat whi þou me souhtes,
" Bring þat tille end whi þou me brouhtes,
" If þou wille mak a werk stedfast,
" þat faire wille euermore to last,
" Send for þe stones þer þei stand,
" þat þe Geantz brouht tille Ireland.

" Rounde

" Rounde about ere þei set,
" Out of Aufrik were þei fet.
" Ilkon on oþer is set vpright,
" No man in erth has now þat mẏght,
" For to tak doun o stone,
" Ne set þam eft es þer none.
þan said þe kẏng, & on him louh,
" It were þan grete ferlẏ how,
" þat þo stones þat þou of sais,
" Ere so heuẏ and of suilk pais,
" þat non has force ne fosoun,
" To remoue þam vp ne doun,
" & ere so fer ouer þe see;
" Who mẏght þam þan bring to me?
✱✱✱✱✱ an said Merlẏn to þe kẏng,
✱ ✱ ✱ þ ✱ ✱ " Quayntise ouercomes alle þing.
✱✱✱✱✱ " Strength is gode vnto trauaile,
" þer no strength maẏ sleght wille vaile.
" Sleght & conẏng dos manẏ a char,
" Begynnes þing þat strength ne dar.
" With sleght maẏ þou þe stones wynne,
" & in Bretaẏn set þam in,
" þer þou ne salle with strength
" Remoue þam a stone length.
" In Aufrik were þei compast & wrouht,
" Geantz tille Ireland fro þiþen þam brouht,
" & set þam one a hille fulle hii
" With engẏns fulle quaẏntly.

Prudencia superat omne robur.

" First

" First whan þei were compast newe,
" þei did grete gode to þo þam knewe.
" þo þat were seke & lauht scathes,
" Wesch þe stones did it in bathes.
" þat felt þam greued of grete þinges,
" Bathed þam of þe self wasshýnges,
" & heled wele of þer pýne,
" Had þei non oþer medicýne.

Ecce de Stonhenges, & virtute eorum.

¶ Whan þe kýng herd of þer vertu,
þat þei mot falle þe folk to pru,
He had longýng for þam to go.
& of þat wille were oþer mo,
þe stones to Bretaýn forto bring,
þat Merlýn mad of sermonýng.
þei ches Uter þe kýnge's broþer,
þe kýng offred him self þe toþer.
Of folk þei led fiften þousand,
Agaýn þe Iris forto stand.
With þam went danz Merlýn,
For þe stones to mak engýn.
¶ Whan Uter with his folk was ȝare,
þei went to schip ouer þe se to fare,
& arýued vp bi þat coste,
þe Iris kýng gadred his oste.
Agaýn þe Bretons þei [1] tom ȝerne,
þe lond if þei mýght þam werne.
þis Irisch kýng þat regned þare,
His name was sir Guillomare.

---

[1] *Pro,* com.

Whan

Whan he wist whi þei kam,
So fer viage for þe stones nam,
Ouer þe see tille an oþer lond,
For þei ne stones hender fond,
& said þo stones þei salle haf here,
þei salle bie þam first fulle dere.
If we maý salle not spede,
þo stones out of our lond to lede.
He scorned & said, it salle be nouht,
þei salle faile þat þei haf souht.
So long he manaced & þrette,
At þe last togider þei mette.
At þer metýng was no lite,
þat þei gon togidere smýte.
Fulle wele fauht boþe parties,
Bot þe Bretons wan þe pris.
þe Iris couth not so wele feiht,
Ne of armore had þei no sleiht,
Ne were þer of so wele bone,
þerfor the Iris fled fulle sone.
Fro stede to stede þei fled to skulk,
One hij hilles to hide & hulk.
Whan þe Bretons had don þat chace,
& rested þam a long space,
Merlýn had þam alle at ones
To þe hille to se þe stones.
Killomare hight þat hille,
þore þe geantz brouht þam tille.

Qualiter Britones per Merlinum asportaverunt lapides de Ibernia ad Britaniam.

¶ þis

¶ þis Bretons renged about þe feld,
þe karole of the stones beheld,
Manẏ tẏme ȝede þam about,
Biheld within biheld without.
Alle þei said so said þe kẏng,
þei sauh neuer so selcouth þing,
How þei were raised þei had wondere,
& how þei suld be brouht o sondere.
With þat worde þei þam rescued,
þei ne wist how þei suld remued.
Merlẏn said, "Now makes assaẏ,
"To putte þis stones doun if ȝe maẏ.
"& with force fond þam to bere,
"þer force is mẏkille þe lesse wille dere.
þe oste at ons to þe hille went,
& ilk man toke þat he mot hent,
Ropes to drawe, trees to put,
þei schoued, þei þrist, þei stode o strut,
One ilka side behẏnd beforn,
& alle for nouht þer trauaile lorn.
Whan alle þe had put & þrist,
& ilk man don þat him list,
& left þer puttẏng manẏon,
ȝit stired þei not þe lest ston.
Merlẏn wist it suld not vaile
Strength of bodẏ ne trauaile.
He bad þam alle draw þam o dreih,
þorgh strength ne com ȝe þam neigh.

A litille he stode, siþen him bi went,
He spak, bot non wist what he ment.
þei sauh his lippes stir vp & doun,
Bot non herd his quirisoun.
Whan he had gon alle aboute
Within þe karole & withoute,
& said his quirisons,
Agaỳn he cald þe Bretons,
& said, " Now maỳ ȝe lightlỳ bere
" þise stones to schip, withouten dere.
" Go now alle & spedis ȝow,
" For ȝe salle welde þam wele inouh.
Als Merlỳn þam tauht & said,
Into schippes þam lightly laid.
þan had þei won þei fer had souht,
To þe plaỳn of Salesbiri þam brouht,
Of Amnesbiri beside þe abbaỳ,
& was at þe Whitsonendaỳ,
þe kỳng did mak somons
Of bisshopes, erles & barons,
& oþer folk of noble geste,
& did him croune at þat feste.
þre daies sat þe feste of fode,
One þe ferth daỳ gaf he giftes gode,
Kroces to clerkes of pris,
To Saỳnt Sampson & Saỳnt Dubris.
Seỳnt Dubris he gaf Kerlion,
ȝork he gaf to Saỳnt Sampson.

þis gaf he at his crounment,
& manẏ mo bi comon assent.
Bi for þe lordes, þat com þider,
Merlyn set þe stones togider.
Als þei were ore in þat certaẏn,
Stand þei now vpon þe playn.
Within þe compas of þe stones
Er biried alle þe lordes bones,
þat Hengist at þe parlement slouh,
Here beforn ȝe herd wele how.

Num. XV. Vide Præf. §. xvii.

An Account of St. Wenefride, from an old MS. of the Book call'd Festiual *or* Festial, *in the hands of Thomas Ward, of Longbridge near Warwick, Esq;.*

De Sancta Wenefreda virgine.

GOODE men & women, suche a day ȝe schalle haue sent Wenefredus day, þe whiche day is nott ordeynyd by holy churche to be halowed, but þerre as men han deuocyon to þis holy madon. Wherefore ye þat han deuocion to þis holy seant, cummythe þat day to churche to worschip God, & þis holy maydon & martir. þen how sche suffered martirdome ȝe schalle here. For þowȝ sum knowen hit, ȝet sum knowon hit nott, & also þowȝ a goode tale be twyus tolde, hit is but þe better for to lorne and to vndurstoude. þerre was in her tỹme an holy armet was called Bennowe, þe whiche com to a goode monnus hose, þat was called Thownythe, and was sent Wenefredus fadur, & was a ryche mon of londus & rentus, & prayd þis Thewnythe to ȝyff hym a place of erþe, vppon the whiche he mygthe bylde a churche,

churche, to serue God in, and to preche Goddus worde to þe pepulle. þen was þis Thewnythe glad of his askyng, & ordeynyd hym a place nyȝ to his owne howse, þat he myȝte so cum to Goddus seruice. þus þe meyne tyme whille the churche was in byldynge, ofte he preched Goddus worde to þe pepulle, and Wenefrede com þydur with her fader to here hit. And when sche harde hym speke of þe grete mede & joy, þat madones schuld haue in Heyuon, passyng oþer oorderes, þen had sche so grett deuocyon in his sayinge, þat a non sche made a woye, þat sche wolde neuer haue parte of mon, but a byde euer in her madon hode, whille þat sche lyffed. þen on a Sonday, when þis churche was made and bylde, Thewnythe, with alle his mene, ȝude to þe churche, but Wenefrede bode at home, for a seknus þat greuyd her þoo, þat sche myȝte nott goo with hem to churche. þen as sche sott at home her selfe, þer com a kyngus sonne, was called Cradoke, to haue layen by þis madon. But when he spake to hur of doyng of þe synne, sche said, sche wolde go in to hur chambur, & make her more honeste þen sche was, & cum a ȝayne to hym a non. and when sche cum to her chawmbur by an vtter durre, sche ran towarde churche as faste as sche myȝte, hopyng to haue socur þerre. but when Cradok syȝ hur ren towarde churche, he ron aftur, and ouer toke her, & sayde, but sche wolde assent to his wylle, he wolde a non smyte of hur hed. þen kneled Wenefrede downe & saide, "I haue leuer þat þou do me to dethe, þen defowle my "body, þat I have made a woo to kepe in maydon hede, "whille þat I lyue, to my lorde Jhesu Criste." þen Cradok owte with his swerde, and at on stroke he smotte of her hed, & for hit was downe the hylle to þe churche, þe hed stynte neuer tumbullynge, tylle hit com þydur in to þe syȝte of alle þat were þerre. Wherfore men weren so a fryȝte, þat þey madon suche a nowse, þat Bennowe had grett merwayle what hit myȝte be, & com to hem to wytte what was þe cause of þat noyse. þen when he syȝ the hed, he toke hit vppe, and cussed hit ofte tymes sore wepyng, and bare hit vp to the body, byholldyng on Cradoke how he wyped his swerd on þe gras, þat was alle blody of the stroke. þen said Bennow to hym, "þou wykked mon & an selý, aske

" mercy of God for þis orribulle dede, and ȝett God wulle " haue mercy on þe; & yf þow wylt nott, I pray God þat " he send vegance on þe". & a non ryȝte in syȝte of þis alle pepulle, and for he wolde not crye mercy in syȝte of alle pepulle, a non he felle downe to þe erþe, & þer with the erþe oponyd & suowlowyd hym down, body and sowle in to Helle. þen toke Bennow þe hed, and sett hit aȝayne to þe body, & helled hit with her mantelle, & ȝude to his masse, and when he had songon and preched þe pepulle, & tolde myche of þis madon, he sayde, God wold nott that sche schulde so be ded ȝett. For he had ordeynyd myche pepulle to be holpon by hur. Wherfore he bad yche mon pray to God, to reyse hur a ȝayne to lyue, and so God dyd; & when þey commyn to hur, sche satt vppe, and with her honde sche wypid of her face þe doste þat was þer on, & spake to hem as holle and sownde as sche was by fore. þen God schewned þerre þree grett myraculis. On was when þe erþe swoloyd hym bodily, þat had slayne hur. A noþer was, for þer as þe hed a bod, a non sprongе a fayre welle þerre as non seen be fore. þe þride was, when sche þat was slayne sche rose a ȝayne to lyue. þe IIII[rith] was, þat euer aftur whille sche lyffed, þer was a white circle a bowte her nekke þer as þe stroke was lyke a white þrede. Wherfore þer as sche was called be fore Brewa, fro þat day forthe men called hur Wenefrede, þat is in Englysche, a white þrede. þen syȝ Wenefrede þe grett myraculle þat God wrowȝte in hur, and toke hit hyȝly to herte, and gaff hur euer aftur to holy lyffynge, and nyȝte and day was besy to serue God, as Bennow thawȝte hur. þen when sche was perfytt in alle doyngus, Bennow ȝude to a noþer place þer as weron inne mony holy virgynnus, and when he com þydur schee lyffyd so perfettly in alle þyngus, þat alle tokon ensampulle of hur, & for þat ylke white cerue was an euydent tokon of her martirdome, þerfore alle men and [1] womon haddon grett deuocion in her wordus, and in alle her doyngus, so þat mony lafton þe worldis ocupacion, and weron fayne to comme and dwelle in her companye. So when sche had lyffyd þerre mony eyrus, sche was warned by God,

[1] Sic.

þat

þat her dethe day was nyȝte. Wherfore sche made hur redy, & when sche had þe sacramentis of holy churche, þen, in syȝte of halle her systeren, scho gaff vpp þe goste to Jhesu Criste, þat sche louyd with alle her herte, and byrryed in the churche ȝorde þer mony oþer seyntis weron byrryed in by fore. Now how the holy sent com in to þe abbey of Schrowysbury, ȝe schalle here. When þey abbey of Scrowysbury was newe made, þe monkus of þe place madon ofte gret mone, for þey haddon no sent with hem to be her patrone, and beyrer of her preyers to God, as oþer abbeus of þe cuntrey hoddon. Wherfore þe abbot of þat howse, for he had herde by fore of sent Wenefrede, he made his prior to go in to Waylys, and seche were þat sche was byrryed. So wente þis prior forthe, and, by the grace of God and reuelacion of þe holy madon, he com̄ to þe place where sche laye, and so with strenþe of lordschip, and oþer helpe þat he hadde, he browȝte her bownus in to sent Gylus churche at Scrowesbury townus ende, and þerre abode to a certen day, in þe whiche sche schulde be translated, & with honour and worschip be browȝte in to þe abbey. þen when þis day com̄, gret multitude of pepulle com̄ þyder in party for a gret miraculle, þat was done in that churche, of a chelde þat was heyled of grett sekenes, and also to do worschip to þat holy madon, and so þen the abbot of þe place and þe conuent, with mony oþer men of holy churche, browȝtan hur in to þe abbey, and setton her þere as sche is nowe, where God in schorte tyme aftur wrowȝte þrytty grett myraculs þat byn wrytton, with owte oþer mony þat byn not writton, bothe of þose þat sche dyd in her lyue, and oþer mo mony þat byn wrowȝte at her walle. þen to sterre yowre deuocyon þe more to þis sent, now I wulle telle yow a myraculle þat was done to a mon of Erkalle towne, þat was called Adam. þis mon was greuesly payned with þe fallyng euelle, and bothe his hondus weron turned aȝeynward, and layen flatt to his armes, so þat þe armys weron stompus and noe armes. He had also suche a greuance in his on legge, þat he myȝte nott goo but with myche peynance. So þis Adam, with þese grett greuus, with myche penance he comme to þe schryne of sent Wenefrede, & was þerre in his prayers alle a nyȝte. But an þe morowe, what for wach-

ched, what for wery, he felle on slepe, and when he woke he feld hym selfe hoole in alle his lymmys, & syȝ his hondus streyȝte euon owte, and stirryd his fyngurs alle at his lykynge, and sayed whedur he myggte goo, and ȝude forthe wythe owton greue, and felde welle þat he was hoole of þe fallyng euelle. Wherfore with hyȝ voyce he þonked God & þis holy madon, and was fayne of his heyle, þat he made a woo, þat he wolde neuer goo from hur, but by a seruand in þat churche alle his lyue aftur, and so he was. Þus, gode men & women, ȝe han ensampulle to do worschip to þis holy maydon and martir, and þawȝ ȝe by now hooly in body fulle helt, mony of yow byn seke in sowle; wherfore ye han þe more nede to seche hur to haue heyle in sowle þen in body. For ofte tymes God sendus sekenes in body so hele to þe sowle. but sekenes of sowle ys here dethe, but sche be þe soner heylyd. Wherfore prayth too hur to gete yow hele bothe in body and in sowle, so þat ye cum to hym þat is heyle to alle sowlus, þat is, Jhesu Criste God son of heyuon. *Alyud miraculum.* In the towne of Schrowysbury setan IIIe men to gedur, and as þey seton talkyng, an aturcoppe cum owte of þe wowȝ, and bote hem by the nekkus alle þre, & þowȝ hit greuyd hem at þat tyme but lytulle, sone aftur it roncoled & so swalle her þrotus, & forset her breythe, þat II. of hem weron deed, and þe þrydde was so nyȝ deed, þat he made his testament, & made hym redy in alle wyse, for he hoped nowȝte but only dethe. þen as he lay in his turment, he þowȝt on sent Wenefrede and of her myraculus, & so as he mygte he bad his modur go þyder, & offur a candulle to þe schryne, & brynge hym of þe water þat her bones were wasschon yn, and so sche dyd. & when he had þis water, he made whasseche his sore þer with, & when he had done so, he felde þat he amended, & þen he made a wooe to sente Wenefrede, þat giff he myȝte haue lyffe & hele, he wolde make an ymage of syluer & offur to her. þus he mended yche day aftur oþer, tylle he was alle hoole, & þen he made an ymage of syluer as he be hette, & ȝude þyder, & offeryd hit to þe schryne, & be cum her seruant euer whille he lyffyd aftur. *Aliud miraculum.* Also to a day of her translacion þer cum owte of Wayles knyȝtus, & mony men with hem, to se the solempnite & þe maner þer of,

&

& so in her company com a gret mon, þat was dowmbe, & myȝte no þynge speke, but alle by signes. So when þey common in to þe churche, sodenly þis dowmbe mon felle doune to þe grownde, & felle on slepe. þen as he lay sent Wenefrede com to hym, and bad hym drynke watur þat her bonus were wasschon yn, & he schuld be hoole of his speche, & of oþer euel þat he had. þen a non he woke, and bad ȝiff hym holy watur. þen haddon his felowus gret wondur, þat þey hardon hym speke, & asked hym what watur he wolde haue. þen sayd he, þe watur þat sent Wenefredus bonus weron waschon yn; & when he had dronkon of þat water, he was hoole as any fysche, & a non he ȝude in to þe quere, & by þe couent he tolde oponly þat he com þydur for no oþer þyng, but only to se þe doyng of þe solempnite. but now for sche hathe, of her gret curtesy, ȝeffen me my speche, and heled me in my body also, þerfore I wulle be her pylgryme whille þat I lyue, & so he was euer aftur.

Num. XVI. Vide Præf. §. xix.

Extract of a Letter, written to the Publisher from Winchester July 4th. 1724. *by the Reverend Mr. Richard Furney, relating to the Election of an Abbess of Rumsey Nunnery in Hampshire* Anno D. 1333. *which confirms what is asserted in this Chronicle, that the said Nunnery was founded by K. Edgar for an hundred Nunns.*

Dear Sir,

Upon receiving your's, I look'd into the Register of John Stratford, some time Bishop of Winton, afterwards Archbishop of Canterbury, and therein, fol. 82. found the following particulars, which relate to what you mention-

ed, *viz.* That Sibil Carbonel the Abbess dying on June 1. 1333. Joane Icche was elected June 25. following, there being at the time of the Election Agnes de Stanlegh Priorissa, Johanna Gervays Sub-Priorissa, Alicia de Roppeleigh Sacrista, Johanna Icche Celerariar. (the same that was elected Abbess,) Oliva Beaufou Præcentrix, Agnes de Bromore, Cecilia de Blontesdone, Ela Croupes, Elena Baa, Alicia de Roucestr, Agatha de Wynton, Katerina de Grymstede, Beatrix Beaufou, Amicia Bluet, Marg. per me, Agnes Beaufou, Alicia de Waltham, Sarra Okly, Alicia Brembelsshete, Margar. de Tydeleshide, Lucia Gower, Matild de Grimstede, Margir. Deneys, Margar. Poyntz, Amicia Malure, Johanna de Farnlington, Amicia de Forstebury, Johanna de Compton, Alicia Levynton, Katerina Joevene, Johanna Poyntz, Johanna Beaufou, Agatha Bekks, Johanna Payn, Beatrix Neyvill, Isabel de Hameldone, Marger. filia Warini, Amicia de Wynhale, Eugenia Chartes, Marg. Cracy, Margar. Warblynton, Alicia de Groveneye, Katerina de Aysshelonde, Margar. de Buctesthorn, Isolda Roches, Matild. Trenchard, Agnes de Wynton, Johanna de Roppelye, Agnes Waram, Hawysia Luffegrave, Dionisia Golaffre, Alic. de Wynton, Isabella de Staunford, Maria de Roppelye, Alicia de Thuddene, Marg. Forest, Elizabeth

zabeth Syfrewast, Johanna de Sparkeford, Marg. Pauncefot, Marg. Atte Rye, Johanna Boyton, Johanna Purie, Isabella Fraunceys, Juliana de Romesey, Cristna Okham, Eva Doignel, Matild de Roppelye, Eliz. Silvayn, Cristina Brikevill, Muriele Cotel, Katerina de Donton, Margar. de Weston, Elianora Rude, Cristina Bromham, Katerina Warham, Johanna de Totteford, Johanna Carbonel, Alicia Carbonel, Johanna de Enedford, Editha Eymer, Alic. de Aune, Constancia Wauncy, Johanna de Tystede, Johanna de Winterbourne, Katerina Warham, Alic. de Cicestr. Petronilla de Wendlesworth, Margar. Fokeram, Isabell Walraund, sorores: Mag. Ricardus de Chadd Canonicus & Præbendar. Eccles. Conventual. Mag. Robertus de Stratford Canonicus & Præbendar. Eccles. Conventual. de Romsey per Procurator. elegunt Abbatissam. * *

* * * * * * * *
* * * * * * *
* * * * * * * *
* * * * * * *

Num. XVII. Vide Præf. §. xix.

Extract of another Letter, written to the Publisher from Winchester Aug. 15. 1724. *by the said Mr. Fur-*

Furney, relating to the Number of the Nunns at Rumsey some time before the Dissolution, and to a Note, about our old Historians, in a MS. of Trivet at Winchester.

* * * * * * * * *
* * * * * * * *
* * * * * * * * *

Concerning Rumsey I learn, that the number of the Nuns was very much decreased before the dissolution. For Elizabeth Ryprose being elected Abbess 16 Dec. 1523. but 23 Nuns are mentioned. The same Eliz. Ryprose was Abbess in 1534. when the true yearly value of the Nunnery is said to be 395l. 12s. 1d.

The following particulars, tho they tell no more than what you know already, yet as they are taken out of a valuable MS. of Nich. Trivet's Chronicle, wrote on paper, now remaining in the library of the Dean and Chapter of Winchester, I thought, you would give them the reading.

" Historiam de origine & gestis Britonum
" primus ex Gwallico sermone in Latinum tra-
" duxit Galfridus Monothmotensis, desinens in
" Athelstanum.

" Res Gwallicas excepit ab eo Galfrido Mo-
" nomethensi Karadocus Lancarvensis.

" An-

" Anglorum res gestas ab eorum primo ad-
" ventu in Britanniam Beda scripsit ad sua
" usq; tempora.

" Willielmus Malmisburiensis Bedam exci-
" piens & succincte colligens usq; ad regem
" Egbritum, qui, varia sorte profligatis regu-
" lis, insulæ pæne totius nactus est monarchi-
" am. Inde pleno cursu tempora lucide des-
" cribit usq; ad finem Henrici primi.

" Nicolaus Trivettus, Malmisburiensem ex-
" cipiens ,incipit à Stephano, & desinit in mor-
" tem Edwardi primi.

" Ab hoc qui filum Historiæ recto tramite
" deinceps deducerent, non sunt reperti, sed
" pleriq; suo quisq; studio particularia dele-
" git sibi persequenda, principium finemq; pro
" arbitrio statuens.

" Edmerus sobria sermonis festivitate à Re-
" ge Edgaro usq; ad Willielmum primum ra-
" ptim tempora perstrinxit, & inde licentius
" evagatus usq; ad obitum Radulphi Archie-
" piscopi diffusam & necessariam historiam stu-
" diosus exhibuit.

" Ita prætermissis à tempore Bedæ ducentis
" & viginti tribus annis, temporum cursus clau-
" dicavit.

" Henricus Hontendonensis archidiaconus.

" Galterus Oxnefordensis.

" Alfridus Beverlacensis thesaurarius.

" Wil-

" Willielmus Rivalensis.

" Giraldus Cambrensis Res Hiberniæ.

" Joannes Sarisburiensis.

" Florentius Wigornensis Monachus.

" Thomas Walsyngham ab irruptione Nor-
" mannorum usq; ad principium regni Henrici
6ti. cui opus dedicavit.

" Secuti sunt qui omnium ante se scribentium
" particulas in unum corpus conflarent, ut sunt
" hi:

" Ranulphus Cestrensis scripsit varii generis
" variarumq; gentium historiam, orsus à mun-
" di origine, eam texens usq; ad Henricum
" quartum, quam *Polichronica* voluit appellari.

No other particulars are mentioned in this note, which seems to have been written at the same time, that the Index to the MS. was, much later than the MS. which seems to have been written about the time of the Authour.

* * * * * * * *
* * * * * * *

Num. XVIII. Vide Præf. §. xx.

A Copy of Dr. Richardson's and Mr. Thoresby's Letters about the Hospital of St. Mary Magdalen near Bawtre.

For Mr. Thomas Hearne in Edmund-Hall
Oxford.

Dear

Dear Sir,

I received your second letter, which I communicated to a neighbouring gentleman, who immediatly wrote to a friend at Bawtree, to make inquiry after St. Mary's Hospitall. I received an answer, but no satisfactory one. I alsoe at the same time wrote to Mr. Thoresby. He sent me word, that he hoped shortly to give me some satisfaction about it, through the mediation of a new Curate, that was come to Leedes and born at Bawtree. The inclosed I received yesterday, which I beleive wil, in a great measure, answer what you desire. I can not get the least information about the Earth-Horns. If in this or any other respect I can be serviceable to you, freely command

Your friend and servant

Ric: Richardson.

North Bierley
Feb. 8th. 1724.

For Dr. Richardson at North Bierley near Bradford

These.

Honoured Sir,

Just now I receiv'd this Account from the Vicar concerning the Hosp. of St. Ma. Mag. near Bautre. That the Chappel, Hospital and Alms

Alms House are all in good repair, that the annual pensions are 12l. 6 s. 8 d. The present Master of the Hospital is Mr. Benjamin Day, Vicar of Mattersey, who succeeded Dr. Samuel Crowbrow Arch-Deacon of Nottingham; whose Predecessor was John Lake, D.D. Vicar of Leedes, and afterwards Bishop of Chichester. This Reverend Prelat's Predecessor was one Walter Barnard, who enjoy'd it during the Usurpation of O. Cromwell, and preach'd a Lecture on the first Thursday in the Month, in stead of the Morning Prayers on Wednesdays and Fridays, which had before, and have since been duely used. His Predecessor was John Slack, mentioned in the Letter of Mr. Hearne, to whom pray present my service, I not being able to write to him my self, who am his and

Your humble servant

Ralph Thoresby.

Leedes Feb. 2.
1724.

Num. XIX. See the Glossary to this Work, voc. bone.

Ex MS. Dugd. (in Muséo Ashmoliano) E 2. sub finem.

A Transcript of a certain Narrative, written by the late Bp. of Ely (Dr. Matthew Wren) with his own Hand,

Hand, of that remarkable Conference, which, after his Return from Spain with Prince Charles (Anno 1623.) *he had with Dr. Neale, then Bp. of Durham, Dr. Andrews Bp. of Winchester, and Dr. Laud Bp. of St. David's, touching the said Prince: whereat something Prophetical was then said by that Reverend Bp. of Winchester.*

After our Return from Spain, My Lord of Winchester (among other great expressions of his Respects to me) made me promise to him, that, upon all occasions of my coming to London, (for I abode still at Cambridge) I would lodge with him. To which end, he caused three Rooms near the Garden to be fitted and reserved for me: And twice or thrice I had lodged there.

And at another time coming suddenly to London and late, I lodged at my Sister's in Friday-Street, and the next Day (being Friday) I went to Winchester-House to Dinner, and craved his Lordship's pardon, that I lodged not there; because that my businesse was to treat with some Countrey Gentlemen, who lay in Holburne, whom I should not meet with but in the Evening and Morning, when it would not be safe for me to pass the Bridge or the Thames: And so after Dinner I took my Leave of him, hoping to return for Cambridge on Munday.

But

But on Saturnday going to do my Duty to My Lords of Durham and St. Davids, and telling them of my sudden Return, they would needs over-rule me, and made me promise them, tho' I had taken leave of My Lord of Winchester, yet to meet them next Day at White-Hall at My Lord's Chamber at Dinner: I did so, and there we sat after Dinner above an Hour. And then I shewing them, that on the morrow my Business would be dispatched, and I would be gone on Tuesday, I took leave again of them all. But on Munday morne by break of the Day (before they used to be Stirring in Friday-Street) there was a great knocking at the Door where I lay; And at last an Apprentice (who lay in the Shop) came up to my Bed-Side, and told me, there was a Messenger from Winchester-House to speak with me: The Businesse was to let me know, that My Lord, when he came from Court last Night, had given his Steward charge to order it so, that I might be spoken with, and be required as from him without faile, to dine with him on Munday; but to be at Winchester-House by Ten of the Clock, which I wondered the more at; his Lp. not using to come from his Study till near Twelve. My business would hardly permit this; yet because of his Lordship's importunity, I got up presently, and into Holburne

burne I went, and there made such Dispatch, that soon after Ten of the Clock I took a Boat, and went to Winchester-House, where I found the Steward at the Water-gate waiting to let me in the nearest way, who telling me, that my Lord had called twice to know if I were come; I asked where his Lordship was? He answered, In his great Gallery, (a place where I knew his Lp. scarce came once in a Year.) And thither I going, the Door was lockt: but upon my lifting the Latch, My Lord of St. David's opened the Door, and letting me in, lock'd it again.

There I found none, but those three Lords, who causing me to sit down by them, My Lord of Durham began to me. "Doctor, Your "Lord here will have it so, I that am the un- "fittest Person, must be the Speaker: But thus "it is: After you left us Yesterday at White- "Hall, we entring into farther Discourse of "those things, which we foresee and conceive "will 'ere long come to pass, resolved again to "speak to you before you went hence.

"We must know of you, what your Thoughts "are concerning your Master the Prince. You "have now been his Servant above two Years, "and you were with him in Spain; We know "he respects you well; and we know you are "no Fool, but can observe how things are like "to go. What things my Lord?" (quoth I.)

" In brief," sayd he, " how the Prince's Heart " stands to the Church of England, that when " God brings him to the Crowne, we may know " what to hope for.

My Reply was to this effect; That however I was the most unfit of any to give my Opinion herein, attending but Two Months in the Year, and then at a great Distance, only in the Closet, and at Meals; yet seeing they so pressed me, I would speak my Mind freely: So I sayd, " I know My Master's Learning is not equal to " his Father's; Yet I know his Judgment to " be very right: And as for his Affections in " these particulars, which Your Lordships have " pointed at, for upholding the Doctrine and " Discipline, and the right Estate of the Church, " I have more confidence of him, than of his " Father, in whom they say (better than I can) " is so much inconstancy in some particular " cases.

Hereupon My Lords of Durham and St. David's began to argue it with me, and required me to let them know, upon what ground I came to think thus of the Prince: I gave them my reasons at large, and after many replyings (above an Hour together) then My Lord of Winchester (who had said nothing all the while) bespake me in these Words;

" Well

" Well Doctor, God send you may be a " true Prophet concerning your Master's Incli- " nations in these particulars, which we are " glad to hear from you: I am sure I shall be " a true Prophet; I shall be in my Grave and " so shall you, My Lord of Durham, but My " Lord of St. David's, and you, Doctor, will " live to see that Day that your Master will be " put to it, upon his Head and his Crown, with- " out he will forsake the Support of the Church.

Of this Prediction made by that Holy Father, I have now no Witness, but mine own Conscience, and the Eternal God, who knows I lie not; no body else being present when this was spoken, but those three Lords.

Num. XX. See the Glossary to this Work, voc. Kampedene.

Extract of a Letter to the Publisher from Mr. Graves of Mickleton in Gloucestershire, concerning Campden in that County. With a remarkable Passage upon that occasion, out of an old anonymous MS. Author (stiled John Bever by Dr. Powell) in Trinity College Library Oxon.

* * * * * * * *

* * * * * * *

* * * * * * * *

As to the Etymology and Scituation of Campden, as you relate it from Dr. *Skinner's Etymologicon;* I very readily agree with him, but never saw the Book; and consulting with Ant. à Wood, and finding a good Character of the Author, I think to gett it.

I have formerly observ'd, that John Bever, or Castorius, call's it *Campodunum;* which Termination made me believe it to be a Roman Town; for we meet in Antoninus's Itinerary with those of *Cambodunum, Margidunum, Camulodunum, Muridunum, Sorviodunum,* and *Maridunum;* in all which Dr. Gale make's the Termination, *dunum,* to answer to, *collis,* in the Latine; and so likewise the Scituation of those Towns he observe's to be on Hills; and indeed our Campden is ever reckon'd among the Towns on the Cotswold Hills, but at the same time is scituated in a deep Valley, or Den, on those Hills.

For, as you come to it on the North side, on the Road from Warwick, and Stratford, through Mickleton; you goe up hill almost all the way for the 2. last Miles, that is, from Mickleton; and yet you see little or nothing of the Town, but the Church, and some Remains of the Great House, till you come within a Land's length of the Town; and then you fall down, as it were, unexpectedly into it: But,

as

as you approach it on the South side, on the Road from London and Oxford, you come down a Hill for above a Mile to it, and have a full view of the whole Town, which lye's in length East and West, all along the Bottom; but in breadth North and South, on a declining Bank; and the Church, and these Remains of the Great House, stand on a rising ground above the rest.

Lying in this Valley it is encompassed on 3. sides, that is, North, West, and South, by the Cotswold Hills; but lye's open on the East side to the Morning Sun, which make's the Scituation both pleasant and healthfull; and overlook's a pleasant Vale, lying considerably below it; which run's through some Parts of Worcestershire, Warwickshire, and Oxfordshire, to the Borders of Northamptonshire.

Dr. Powel, in his Notes on the History of Wales, pag. 11, 12. ha's translated the whole Passage out of Bever, and it seem's by his Account, that the Place was then (above a Thousand years agoe) of considerable Note, and large Extent; for, upon a threatning Message from the Britains, the great King Ina of the West Saxons summoned all the other Saxon Kings to repair thither; where old King Sibert of the East Saxons making a Speech to them, and, among other things, recommending to

them the choosing a Head to lead them, they made Choice of King Ina; who received Homage of them there, and advancing his Standard, marched forward against the Britains.

Probably it might be then the chief Residence of the West Saxon Kings, at least of this Ina; however it must be necessarily furnished with stately Houses, fitt to give Reception to the Persons of all the Saxon Kings of the Heptarchy, with their Courtiers and Attendants, which must be very numerous: besides, there seemed to have been a great Army along with them, which waited the Result of their Consultations.

I know not, what should induce the Dr. to call the Place *Mount Campeden;* unless there was some word in the original Latine, besides that of *Campodunum,* that answer'd to that of, *Mount;* for, if it was barely that and no more, I think it should have been rendered, according to Dr. Gale, *the Camp on the Mount, or Hill.* But I want very much to see the original Latine; and accordingly, when I was at London last year, went to the Cotton Library to peruse that Copy of Bever, which is said to be there, Vitell. E. XVII. 4. I saw the MS. indeed, bnt there is not the least mention of that Passage in the Book; which Mr. Casley and I, both of us, thoroughly examined; that I concluded, it was

not

not Bever's Chronicle, but some other Anonymous Writer.

The printed Catalogue of MSS. mention's one Copy of this Authour in Trinity Colledge Library Oxon, and another in Sr. Simonds D' Ewes Library, which are all I meet with.

I don't find any Authour ha's follow'd Bever, in calling it *Campodunum*, but Langhorn in his *Chron. Reg. Angl.* who both in the Epistle Dedicatory, pag. 5. and also the Book it self, pag. 250. write's it *Campodunum:* But all Authours and Records, that I have seen, generally spell it with a (p.) which agree's with Dr. Skinner's Etymology.

I have not mett with any mention of the Place, after that Account of Bever's, 'till the Time of William the Conquerour, when in Domesday-book it is written *Campedene*, fol. 166. b. In the next King's Reign, *A.D.* 1093. in the Charter of Will. Rufus, confirming the Grant of Hugh Earl of Chester, (to whom the Conquerour had given Campden,) of the Titles of that Manor, (among others,) to the Church of St. Werburge's in Chester, it is called *Campedena;* Mon. Angl. vol. I. pag. 201. a. lin. 45. And so, through all the King's Reigns, quite down to this present time, it ha's constantly been written with a (p.) but differently spell'd, as *Campedena, Caumpedena, Compedena,* and some-

 times,

times, *Campendena;* as particularly in a Charter of Hugh de Gundeville, who lived in the Reign of K. Henr. 2. to the Abbey of Evesham; which is in a Register of Charters of that Abbey in the Cotton Library, Vespas. B. 24. fol. 44. a. which, because it make's much for the Antiquity of the Markett here, I have added at length, viz.

" Notum sit presentibus, et futuris, quòd
" ego Hugo de Gundevilla concessi omnibus
" hominibus Abbatis de Evesham liberam
" potestatem et quietam eundi, et emendi,
" et vendendi, in foro meo de Campendena;
" et prohibeo, ne aliquis Balivorum meo-
" rum petat ab aliquo suorum Telonium,
" vel aliam consuetudinem; vel aliquam ve-
" xationem eis faciat in foro meo, vel in
" via; nec aliam consuetudinem ab eis exi-
" gat, quam mei faciunt in foro Abbatis.
" Testibus, (inter alios,) Osmundo de Cam-
" pendena, Everardo de Campendena."

And in another Charter in the same Register, fol. 42. a.

" Sciant, &c. quòd ego Rogerus Dei gratia
" Abbas de Evesham, et ejusdem loci Con-
" ventus, concessimus, &c. Johanni Grene,
" et Alitie uxori ejus, filie Everardi de Cam-
" pendena, &c. Testibus, (inter alios,) Willo

" filio

" filio Everardi de Campendena, Everardo
" et Augustino fratribus ejus, &c.

Dr. Gale in his Commentaries on Antoninus's Itinerary, on the word *Cambodunum*, saie's, *Antonini codices aliquot MSS. legunt* Campodunum, *quemadmodum & Beda; alii* Campodonum *et* Campadunum: So that there seem's to have been a Place of the same Name with that of Bever's, in the time of the Romans, in the North of England; and I think our Campden likely enough to have born the same Name, *(Campodunum,)* as long agoe, in the South of England.

Verstegan, (Antw. 1605. 4to.) pag. 287. agree's with Dr. Skinner in his deriving it from the A. S. Lamp, and Den; but fancie's it to have been some Place appointed for Champions, Combat-fighters, or men of Arms, to encounter each other, &c.

I don't know, whether you have Sr. Rob. Atkins; but he saies, pag. 309. a. That it is so called from a Camp, near that Place, where a Battle had been formerly fought; and pag. 322. a. That a great Battle was fought between the Mercians, and West-Saxons, in the Hamlett of Barrington, about a Mile from the Town of Campden: The Camp of the Mercians was at Willersey, the Camp of the West-Saxons on Meen-

Meen-Hill, in the Parish of Quintone, and Mickleton. (*&c.*) A Bridge in Barrington retain's the name of Battle-Bridge. Barrington, antiently Burington, is likewise so called from being the Burying place of the Slain.

I could never meet with an Account of this Battle in any Authour. What Authority Sr. Robert had for it, I know not: but, no doubt, such a Battle was fought there, both from the constant Tradition of the Inhabitants, and the Place still retaining the Name of Battle-Bridge; though at present there is scarce left one Stone upon another, and it is onely a shallow Ford through a little Brook.

There are two such Camps, as he mention's, on Willersey-Hill, (about a Mile from Campden,) and Meen-Hill, but I should rather think, that of the West-Saxons to have been on Willersey-Hill, and the Mercians on Meen-Hill; for the former lye's in the South West, and the latter in the North East, in respect of each other; they are both of a square form, and large extent, with deep double Trenches.

I never saw it written, or called, *Barrington*, but always *Berrington;* and in Antient Records it is, *Berintone, Beritone, Buritone,* &c. It is contiguous to the rest of the Town, and the very Church it self stands in that, which is called Berrington, which confirm's its being the

Bu-

Burying-place of the Slain; Battle-Bridge is indeed in the District of Berrington, but above half a Mile from the Town.

There is another Tradition, very current among the Country People, that it was formerly A Camp of the Danes; and so took it's Name from *Camp*, and *Dane;* but I take the Name to be antienter, then the Time of the Danes being here: However, I find, some in print have mention'd it; particularly Ogilby in his Survey of the Roads of England, Edition in 8vo. pag. 159, who saie's, The Town is of great Antiquity, the Danes being supposed to have their Camp near it, and thence it's Name seem's to be deriv'd; but I don't know, whether there be any more Grounds for this, then that, of it's being formerly called, Little London, which is also very common in the Mouths of the People.

I am sure, I have now sufficiently tired you; but the great Love I have for the Place, where I had a good Part of my Education, make's me dwell the longer upon the Subject; and have nothing more to add, but my most kind Love and Respects, from,

Dear Sir,

Mickleton, Easter Munday, 29th. of March, *A. D.* 1725.

Your most obliged humble Servant,

Richard Graves.

Vpon

Vpon occasion of this Letter from Mr. Graves, I desired a worthy Friend to consult the Harleyan MS. of Bever, which accordingly he very readily did, (by the Favour of the R^t. Honble. the Earl of Oxford,) and from his Answer I understand, that the Passage, referr'd to by Dr. Powell, is also wanting there; but then I find, that 'tis in the MS. of Trinity-College Library in this Vniversity (the same that I have cited in my Glossary[1]*) from which I shall here publish it at large, as 'tis inserted in my MSS. Collections*[2]*, at the same time advertising, that this Trinity-College MS. is a Collection by an anonymous Writer (whom, however, Dr. Powell, to whom it belong'd, ventures to stile Bever) and that 'tis not the true genuine Bever, such as may be met with (as far as I can, at present, understand) in the Cottonian and Harleyan MSS.*

Quoniam ex scriptura commendabili felicis Bedæ presbiteri modernorum traditur memoria, per quot regna, quibus, quotq; regibus olim Britannia subjacebat, id in hoc opusculo redigere non decuit, quod tantus pater suo carmine singulis patefecit. Verum quia felix Beda prælibatus anno nati Salvatoris ex virgine DCCXXXII. ex hac vita transisse fertur, ex tunc regum gesta regniq; fortuita futurorum tradere memoriis studentem racio suadebat. Inspectis

---

[1] Pag. 599. [2] Vol. 107. p. 82.

igitur

igitur cronicarum collectis, ac de gestis Anglorum libellis, actus veritati concordes Auctor hujus operis tenore præsentis paginæ copulavit. Ut itaq; ex certo principio præsens narracio finem debitum per ordinem sorciatur, prodesse creditur ab ejus incipere progenie, qui Britonum rex ultimus reliquit Britanniam alienis. Anno siquidem graciæ DCCXXV. ante decessum Bedæ septimo, Iuorius & Henyhinus, filii filiæ regis quondam Cadwalladri, de Hibernia venientes, duobus Walliæ regibus opem præstantibus, totam Cestriæ provinciam vastaverunt. Venientes quoq; in rure Danorum, quod ex eo Anglice nomen accepit Campedene, Latine campus Danorum, regibus Anglorum mandarunt legatos, ut Britanniam sibi restituerent, à qua suos patres & parentes injustis incursibus expulerunt. Addentes mandando, quod nisi infra quindenam regionem redderent, ulterius vitæ spacium non haberent. Inclitus ergo Westsexiæ Ine rex, filius Kenredi regis, omnibus Anglorum regibus hoc mandatum innotuit, qui mox armata manu in monte de Campedene venerunt, quibus rex eciam Estsexiæ Sibertus ait, " Animadvertamus, karissimi, quales sumus, & " quales qui contra nos veniunt. Vere Britones " sunt, quorum patres & parentes, patres no- " stri à suis hereditariis expulerunt. Nunc siqui- " dem veniunt de jure, pugnando calumpniare

" quod

" quod à suis nostri juribus abstulere. Faciamus " ergo sicut ceteræ faciunt regiones. Eligamus " nobis capud, qui nos ducat, dirigat & guber- " net; cui nos omnes, tanquam membra, sicut " domino, tam pacis quam guerræ temporibus, " inclinemus, quoniam sine capite non speratur " victoria reputari. Nonne anno secundo post " Britonum dispersionem, Saxonicum super po- " pulum, multo nunc nobis forciorem, infra " septennium quindecies applicuerunt, regna " regum spoliarunt, populum trucidarunt, & re- " vertentes nostros vix vivos laceratos vulneri- " bus reliquerunt?" Reges siquidem Anglorum omnes, hoc contenti consilio, strenuissimum militem Ine, Westsexiæ regem, in caput & dominum regum Anglorum unanimiter eligerunt, anno Domini DCLXXXIX. Qui regum acceptis homagiis, vexillum regni erexit, ac excercitum Iuorii & Henyhini ita debactavit, quod in Walliam, relictis tentoriis, fugierunt. Optenta itaq; victoria, rex Ine, cum Anglorum regibus, (præter Sibertum regem Estsexiæ, qui, causa senectutis & impotenciæ, ad suam [1] rediens regionem) apud Southampton se divertit, ubi suus cognatus Adelardus occurrens nunciavit, quod Iuorius & Henyhinus exercitum novum congregarunt, ut Anglorum populum iterum [2] de-

[1] F. *rediit.* [2] F. *debellarent.*

bel-

bellarunt. Rex namq; Ine, miles validissimus, illuc progredi non tardavit, Snaudonem obsedit, Hibernes & Britones ad naves fugere compulit, & totam sibi Walliam subjugavit. Festum vero Sancti David rex Ine tenere volens, cum suis regibus & Walliæ magnatibus apud Bangor accessit, ubi die septimo post festum proclamare fecit, quod omnes reges ad suas redire[nt] regiones, moraturi donec mandatum haberent, ut iterum convenirent. Regibus itaque repatriatis, Rex Ine cum Adelardo suo cognato, & tota Regia familia, suam civitatem Mamecestriam petivit, Ethelburgam suam reginam, suumq; filium Adellum ibidem invenit, cum quibus vix tribus mensibus repausavit. Adellus quoq;, filius regis unicus, præsentem vitam terminavit eo tempore, dolorem patri non modicum propinando. Adelardus interea, Walliam cupiens circuire, tres exploratores obviam habuit, quibus captis & scrutatis, concepit, quod Iuorius & Henyhinus venturi sunt Angliam cum tanta populi multitudine, quod omnes Anglorum reges eorum viribus resistere non valebant. Adelardus igitur ad regem Anglorum Ine rediens, eidem retulit quod audivit. Rex autem Ine, suis statim regibus exspressa causa, mandavit, quod indilate venirent Cestriæ, in equis & armis parati contra suos hostes, suas defendere regiones. Reges namq; mandatum hujusmodi pari-

pariter acceptantes, Cestriæ convenerunt, vexillum regium sectantes, percussoq; bello cum Britonibus, in fugam converterunt adversarios, qui infra sequens biennium Angliam sepcies invadebant, civitates & villas spoliabant, & cum spoliis repedabant. Interea rex Ine optenta victoria remeavit, & annis triginta sex super regno Westsexiæ peractis, Adelardo cognato suo regnum suum legavit.

PETER LANGTOFT'S CHRONICLE.

IN Saỳnt Bede bokes writen er stories olde.
Sex hundreth & four score & nien ȝere mo er tolde
Sen þat Jhesu Criste of Mary was born,
& þe kỳng Cadwaladre þis lond had alle lorn.
For Englis & Sessons he went to lesse Bretaỳn,
To speke with his cosỳne, his name was kỳng Alaỳn.
& fro þien he went vnto þe courte of Rome,
For to tak his penance & of his synnes dome.
Whan he was asoỳled of þe pape Sergie,
He died & was biried in Rome solemplie.
In þe ȝere after nouþer lesse ne more
Kom his & his kosỳn Ini & Iuore,
In schip out of Irelond, in Wales gan þei vprỳue,
þorgh out Chestreschire werre gan þei drỳue.
Had þei no stỳntỳng, bot þorgh alle þei ran,
Unto Wỳnchestre, alle þe loud þei wan.

De Rege de Westsexe.

IN Westsex was þan a kyng, [1] his was Sir Ine.
Whan he wist of þe Bretons, of werre ne wild he fine.
Messengers he sent þorghout Inglond
Unto þe Inglis kynges, þat had it in þer hond,
& teld how þe Bretons, men of mykelle myght,
þe lond wild wynne ageyn þorh force & fyght.
Hastisly ilkone þe kynges com fulle suythe,
Bolde men & stoute, þer hardinesse to kiþe.
In a grete Daneis felde þer þei samned alle,
þat euer siþen hiderward Kampedene men kalle.
Of all þo Inglis kynges, þat þan comen wore,
Sigbert, kyng of Estsex, in elde was he more.
He bigan to speke tille alle þe chiualrie:
" We be comen alle of kynde of Germenie,
" þat chaced has þe Bretons here of þer kythe.
" Now ere þei comen to clayme it, & mykelle force þam with.
" Oiþer bihoues vs defend it, or ȝelde vp our [2] righ.
" I rede we chese a hede, þat vs to werre kan dight,
" & to þat ilk hede I rede we vs bynde.
" For werre withouten hede is not wele, we fynde.
þe barons ȝede to conscile, & teld it siþen on hie,
Ine kyng [3] kyng" of Westsex was a knyght worþie,
Forto gye vs alle, þat now er comen here.
Ine toke þe feaute, displayed his banere,
& went to þe bataile in a fulle faire grene,
þat is vnder Kampedene, a medew I wene.
Iuor & Ini were disconfite þat day,
þe Iris & þe Wals with þam fled away.

---

[1] *Pro*, his name was. [2] *L.* right. [3] *Redundat.*

Alle

Alle were þei nere slayn, & þo þat þer left
Fled vnto Wales vnto þer schippes eft.
Whan þise Bretons tuo were fled out of þis lond,
Ine toke his feaute of alle þat [1] lond helde.
At the fiftend daỳ þei samned at Southamptone,
With joỳ alle at ons þei went tille Snawdone
On Iuor & Ini, þat tapised by þat side,
To purueie þam a skulkỳng, on þe Englis eft to ride.
Bot Ine had þe Inglis euerilkon at wille,
Bot Segbert of Estsex at home left stille.
He was of grete elde, & mỳght not trauaile,
Bot Iuor & Ini þe Englis gan þam assaile.
þe Englis were bolde, & drofe þam to þe sand.
þe fled out of Wales awaỳ tilleI reland.

Iuor & Ini fugiunt.

THE Englis [2] kỳnges turned, þei mot do nomore,
Bot soiorned þam a while in rest a Bangore,

[1] *L.* helde lond. [2] *See pag.* 12, 13. *of a most rare Book, being Mr. Thomas Ellis's imperfect Edition (with great Improvements) of Dr. Powell's History, to which is prefix'd* Sir John Prise's Description of Wales. *Oxon.* 1653. 4*to. I call it imperfect, because it was never near compleated by Mr. Ellis, as will appear from the following Remark, which I have written at the beginning of my Copy that I happen'd to purchase in the Year* 1722. "*The following Description of* "*Wales was published by Mr.* "*Thomas Ellis, A. M. and* "*Fellow of Jesus Coll. Oxon.* "*but 'tis much altered from* "*the Edition which Dr.* "*Powell set out, with the His-*"*tory of Cambria, now call-*"*ed Wales, at Lond. in* 1584. "4*to. The said Mr. Thomas* "*Ellis was a learned Man, and* "*a very great Antiquary. He* "*began also to reprint the* "*said History of Cambria,* "*which was grown (and is* "*now) very scarce. In order to* "*which that great Antiquary,*

þat ilk a kẏng of reame suld mak him alle redie.
At þe Paske after þe kẏng Ine [1] gart [2] trie,
Home forto wend to childe & to wife,
To visitte þer londes, to solace þer life.
Ine kẏng of Westsex for his [3] wife sent
Vnto [4] Malmcestre, þe quene tille him went.

" *Rob. Vaughan of Hengwort* " *in Merionethshire, Esq. (who* " *was diverted by other Business* " *from publishing this Work, as* " *he otherwise designed) com-* " *municated to him his Correc-* " *tions and Additions. But Mr.* " *Ellis finding, that a paul-* " *try, illitterate Author, called* " *Percie Enderbie, had been be-* " *fore hand with him, and some* " *way or other had got Mr.* " *Vaughan's Notes also, and* " *was so bold, as, without Mr.* " *Vaughan's leave, to print them* " *in his Book (which is but a* " *poor thing) in Folio call'd,* " Cambria Triumphans: or, an- " cient and modern British and " Welsh Histories, *he laid by his* " *Design, and so no more was* " *printed than* 128. *Pages, all* " *which are here. After he had* " *desisted (for which all curious* " *and learned Men were very* " *sorry, he being so very capa-* " *ble of doing great Matters)* " *the Copies, all but a very few,* " *were sold for wast Paper.* " *upon which account the Book is* " *now a wonderfull Rarity, and* " *highly valuable. Dr. Powell's* " *Additions are marked thus* " ♣. *Mr. Vaughan's thus* ¶. " *This Book belong'd to the* " *Revd. Mr. Josiah Pullen,* " *M. A. and Vice-Principal of* " *Magd. Hall Oxon." What I have here observ'd about Mr. Ellis & Percie Enderbie is confirm'd by Mr. Wood, Ath. Oxon. Vol. II. col.* 248, 249. *But the chief reason of my referring here to Mr. Ellis's imperfect Ed. of Dr. Powell's Hist. of Cambria is upon account of a Passage that is there published, (as 'tis also in Dr. Powell's own genuine Ed.) out of John Castoreus or Bever, which will very much illustrate this Place of Langtoft.*

[1] *F.* gan. *Quod si* gart *retineas, tum idem erit quod* prepared. [2] *F.* crie. [3] *Ethelburga,* [4] *Id est, Manchester, in agro Lancastrensi, quod* Mamecestre *appellat Hovedenus,* Mamerceaster *Florentius, Ma-*nıȝe-ceaȷtep *Chron. Sax. Futilem autem eorum conjecturam esse*

Ine þe kyng had a sonne, his name Adellus.
Dede him toke & he died, als it salle do vs.
Sorow & site he made, þer was non oþer rede,
For his sonne & heyre, þat so sone was dede.

---

esse arbitror, nec ulla confutatione egere, qui vocem Manigeceaster *(in Chronico Saxonico) non de unica duntaxat urbe, sed de multis civitatibus esse intelligendam putant. Sed en tibi ipsa verba è Chronico, sub anno* DCCCCXXIII. *ubi de Edmundo Seniore agens, docuit, ipsum eodem illo anno, mox post æstatem, ad* Thælwæle [*i. e.* Thelwel, *sive* Thelwall, *viculum ad ripam fluminis Mersey in agro Cestrensi, notante cl. Gibsono, p.* 45. *Explicat. Nominum Locor. in Chr. Sax.*] *cum exercitu profectum, primum jussisse eam urbem construi, & firmari, præsidioque muniri; deinde jussisse etiam alium exercitum, dum ibi commoraretur, de Merciorum terra, adire* Manigeceaster *in Northymbria, ac eam resarcire, præsidioque munire.* Hep on þyrrum ȝeare. ꝼor Eaðpearð cyninȝ mið ꝼyrde on uꝼan hæꝼꝼeyt to Dælpæle. ȝ het ȝepyncan þa buꝼh. ȝ ȝeꝼettan. ȝ ȝemannian. And het oðre ꝼyrd eac oꝼ Myrcna þeode. þa hꝼile þe he þæꝼ ꝼæt ȝeꝼaꝼan Manigeceaꝼtep on Noꝼð-hymbꝼan. ȝ hie ȝebetan ȝ ȝemannian. *Pro* on uꝼan hæꝼꝼeyt, *autumnali tempore habet Florentius Wigorniensis. Sic enim ille sub A.D.* 920. *(quo anno, non, ut Chr. Sax.* 923. *rem gestam fuisse retulit.)* Autumnali tempore rex invictissimus Eadwardus ad Tealweale profectus est, ibidemque urbem construxit, & ad ejus præsidium quosque fortissimos de exercitu suo reliquit. Misit etiam in Northimbriam Merciorum exercitum, ut urbem Mamerceastram restaurarent, & in ea fortes milites collocarent. *Neque hac in re quid discrepat exemplar præstantissimum editionis Florentii Wigorniensis in* 4*to. Londini* 1592. *quod, doctissimi Langbainii notis quamplurimis MSS. (maxima ex parte è duobus Mariani Scoti, è quo pleraq; sua surripuit Florentius, sicut in Lelando nostro, Col. Vol. III. p.* 277. *monui, Codicibus eximiis, calamo exaratis, petitis) adornatum, è Museo Arthuri Charletti, nuper defuncti, redemi, idem nimirum illud exemplar, quod ad pag.* 212. *editionis nostræ vitæ Ælfredi Magni Spelmannianæ commemoravi.*

Ine was kyng of Westsex sex & þrittȳ ȝere,
Fulle wele he ȝemed þe lond fro wo & fro wehere.
Iuor & Ini ost did he þam chace.
In his tyme to rise had þei neuer grace.
Tuentȳ grete batailes Ine ouerkam,
þe quene withouten childe non heyre of hir nam.

Ine perrexit Romam, & ibi sepultus est.

Ine went to Rome als in pilgremage,
Adelard his cosyn he gaf his heritage.
The pape him asoyled in treuth stedfast,
Whan he had don his penance, he ȝald to God þe gaste.

ADELARD of Westsex was kyng of þe empire,
Of Noreis & Surreis, guyour of ilk schire.
He ne suffred neuere wrath to be abouc
Bituex kyng baron, þat ne he mad ay loue.
Alle þe Bretons he ouercome, þat wild him assaile,
& in his þirtende ȝere force gan him faile.
Tille Uttred his kosyn, a stiffe knyght in stoure,
He gaf his kyngdom, & died in langoure.
He ligges at Bathe, for þider was he born.
þe holy man Saynt Bede died a ȝere beforn.

Ecce de Henrico Huntȳngtone.

¶ Henrȳ of Huntȳngton sen þat day & þat ȝere
To write Inglis gestes fond he non his pere.
A bisshop of Lincolne, Alisandre he hight,
Praied him to write þe gestes þat were right.
þerfor þis Henrȳ is cald a compiloure.

De Alexandro episcopo Lincolniæ.

He wrote þe Englis gestes whilom of honoure.
¶ þus wrote to þe bisshop Henrȳ þe same,
He sais, þis lond hight Bretayn, þat now has oþer name.

Inglond

Inglond now is cald, for Inglis men we fýnd
þe folk þat is þerin, it is of diuers kýnd.
He sais þis lond has suffred so manỳ týme wo,
Fiue sorowes he writes withouten oþer mo.
þo ilk fiue sorowes he calles fiue woundes,
þat ere not ȝit haled, ne salle be manỳ stoundes.
Noþeles þe clerk Merlyn sais certeỳn,
That Bretons at þe last salle haf þis lond agaỳn,
Whan Cadwaldre salle calle with him þe kýng Konan,
What týme it salle falle, ȝit wote no man.
Now of fiue sorowes, þat ȝit not endid are,
Henrỳ in his writýng telles what þei ware,

THE first of þise fiue was þorgh Romeỳns,
That wan it of Casbalan in to þer demeỳns.
Grete treuage þei toke of þis lond here.
þre þousand pounde of gold to paỳe ilk a ȝere.
& four hundred ȝere lastid þat ilk wo,
þei mad þe lond fulle pouere, þe folk ded þei slo.

Quinque plagarum terræ primá plaga fuit.

¶ þe toþer sorow of þis lond mỳkelle gan it greue,
þe Scottes & þe Peihtes togider gan þei cheue,
To waste alle Northumberland, þe godes awaỳ þei ledde,
þat men with þe bestes in feldes þei þam fedde.

Secunda plaga.

¶ The þrid sorow of þis lond com þorgh þe Sessons,
þat ten siþes arỳued vppon þe Bretons,
& siþen were chaced ageỳn aw with maistrie,
& eft arỳued oñ þam here þorgh quantise of spie.
At þe last þei chaced out þe Bretons so clene,
Awaỳ vnto Wales þer kýnd is I wene.

Tercia plaga.

þe Englis of þis lond þe lordschip þei toke,
& haf it ȝit in þer hond, þe Bretons forsoke.

Quarta plaga. ¶ þe ferthe sorow of þis lond com þorgh þe Danes,
þe folk of the North slouh, destroied þer wanes.
Siþen wan þei alle þe South, maistrie þei schewed,
& laid þer Dangilde on̄ lered & lewed,
& left þe Inglis þe lond on̄ a forward dere,
To pay ilk a hede a penẏ to þam bi ȝere.

Quinta plaga. ¶ The fift sorow þer after com, whan William conqueroure,
þat arẏued on̄ þis lond, Harald he slouh in stoure,
& barons oþer inouh, þat died in þe feld,
þe lond lese þe armes, changed is þe scheld.
Siþen he & his haf had þe lond in heritage,
þat þe Inglis haf so lad, þat þei lẏue in seruage,
He sette þe Inglis to be þralle, þat or was so fre.
He þat bigan it alle in þe geste maẏ ȝe se.

Henricus dicit. HENRẎ of Huntẏngton testimons þis title.
þe kẏngdom of Westsex, he sais, it was not litelle,
Whan Adelard died þerfro, & Uttred þerto went.

Uttredus regnavit. Uttred in his first ȝere messengers he sent
For kẏnges & barons vntille his parlement,
In stede þer he it sette, þei wist what it ment.
Bot Eadbald it withsaid, kẏng of Lyndesaẏ,
He was of þe Bretons kynde, he stode of him non eẏe.
Uttred wrathed him þerfore, & ran on̄ him fulle tite,
& tuẏs þorgh batale in felde was Eadbald disconfite.
ȝit wild he not be war þer bi, so proude he was in herte,
Ti'le he was wonded þe þrid tẏme, & died also smerte.

Biried

Biried he is at Repẏndon, & in þe kirke he lis.
He þat wille not bowe in skille, I hold him vnwis.
Many tymes on̄ Uttred Bretons bataile souht:
Uttred was so valiant, he gaf of þam right nouht.
He regned fiftene ȝere, & died alle to rathe.
He ligges biried als a kyng in the toun of Bathe.

AFTER Uttred regned Sibriht, his kosyn, Sibriht regnavit.
He luffed wele þe Bretons, þat com tille ille fyn.
He bare him so tille his barons, þat noiþer ȝong ne olde
Wald vnto him bowe, ne bliþeli of him holde.
What did þe barons alle with þis fole Sibriht?
Chaced him fro his reame, & chese a noþer knyght,
Kynewolf, of þe kynred of Adelarde's blode, Kynewolf cœpit regnare.
A while lufed þe Inglis, & wele with þam stode.
Sibriht þat schrew as a lordan gan lusk,
A suynhird smote he to dede vnder a thorn busk.

KYNEWOLF toke þe kyngdom (for better mot not falle) Rex Kynewolf.
& siþen toke þe feaute of þe kynges alle,
As his ancestres had it befor hand,
Bot of Kent & Lyndesay & Northumberland.
þise þre kynges geynsaid it him,
& Kynwolf to þo þre bare him so brym,
So wis he was in dede, of body so valiant,
With dynt of suerd & drede he mad þam recreant.
Kyng was Kynwolf sex & tuenty ȝere,
He was neuer wedded, to woman's daungere.

No

No childe had he neuer, his heritage mȳght to wende,
Bot welth inou to welde, vntille his lyue's ende.
At Wȳnchestre he lis, þider men him bare.
Fulle frely he lȳued here, his soule with God it fare.

Rex Brittrik.

WHAN þe kȳng Kȳnwolf had don his endȳng,
[1] Brittrk his kosȳn þei lift him to kȳng.
Offa, kȳng of Lȳndsaȳ, a faire douhter had,
Brittrik hir wedded, & quene home hir lad.
Whan he had regned foure ȝere, one rȳued vpon his right,
A duke of Danmark, Kebriht he hight.
Brittrik had a stiward, his name was Herman:
Kebriht he kept at Humber, & on him he ran.
Hard was þe bataile, als þei togider stȳnt
Herman was þer slaȳn, þe duke gaf þe dȳnt.
Ageȳn to Danmark Kebriht gan schake,
þat þe kȳng [2] Kebriht ne mȳght him ouertake.
He mot not venge Herman of Kebriht þat him slouh.
He did his ost turne agaȳn, & had sorow inouh.
In his elleuent ȝere com folk, þat misleued,
Arȳued on̄ Brittrik, & sore þei him greued.
þore Brittrik bare him so in þat ilk bataile,
þe dede ȝede Danes to, þe Noreis gan him vaile.
Edburgh hight þe quene, þat I ore of ment,
Scho purueied a poȳson to þe kȳng sonne of Kent.
Hatred before was, S. Bede herd I saȳ,
Biten þe kȳng of Kent, & þe kȳng of Lȳndsaȳ.

[1] *L.* Brittrik. [2] *F.* Brittrik.

¶ Eil-

¶ [1] Eilred of Lyndesaẏ alle Kent he wasted.
þe kẏng after, I saẏ, to hate often he tasted
þe was of Lyndesaẏ, als I ore told.
Scho [2] purueid þat poẏson þorgh hatered of old.

Malim, Eilred *(vel, at alii Cantii regem vocant,* Alric) of Kent alle Lyndesaẏ he wasted. [2] *The Author hath here an eye upon the History of Eadburg, (or, as he just above writes her, Edburgh) King Brictrick's Queen, who was Daughter of Offa, K. of Mercia; but, as he hath represented it, it is very obscure and imperfect; and whereas he tells us, that Brictrick was buried at Tewksbury, others assure us, that it was at Warhame, Whence the Saxon Annals. An.* DCCLXXXIV. Heꝛ Cẏneheaꝛð oꝼ-ꝼloh Cyneꝑulꝼ cẏninȝ. ⁊ he þæꝛ ꝑeaꝛð oꝼ-ꝼleȝen. ⁊ LXXXIV. monna mið him. Anð þa onꝼenȝ Bẏꝛhtꝛic Ꝑeꝼt-Seaxna ꝛiceꝼ. ⁊ he ꝛicꝼoðe XVI. ȝeaꝛ. anð hiꝼ ꝼæðeꝛen-cẏn ȝeð to Ceꝛðice. *The story of Eadburg is given at large by several Writers. She was a most beautifull Lady, and had gained the Affections of the King her Husband (a good natured mild Prince) so much, that he was governed and directed more by her, than was consistent with his Royal Dignity. She was of a very haughty, proud temper, and could not brook, that the King should have any favourites, but such as she approved of. So that if she saw, or knew of, any, that, without her special consent and approbation, were countenanced, and particularly respected by him, she contrived methods to make such away. There happened to be a very delicate, fine young Gentleman (Son, it seems, as Langtoft informs us, to the King of Kent) that the King shew'd a more than ordinary kindness to, both upon account of his exquisite beauty, and the excellency of his understanding. The youth was perfectly innocent, and the King (notwithstanding an Usurper, as being not of the right line [See Dr. Brady's History of the Succession, p. 359.]) of too virtuous a nature to cause any just grounds of suspicion, that there was any immorality in the case. The Queen, however, thought otherwise. She look'd upon the youth as the King's minion, and her jealousy wrought her to such a pitch of madness, that she prepar'd a potion for him (an ordinary*

dinary practise with her, when she had a mind to vent her spleen) that prov'd fatal not only to the lovely youth, but even to the King himself, who had the misfortune (tho' quite contrary to her design) to tast first of the cup. This raised the indignation of the King's Subjects to such a degree, that she was forced, for security, to fly beyond Sea, and the West-Saxons thereupon resolv'd, that, for the future, no Queen should sit on the throne with the King, nor be stil'd his Queen, but only the King's wife. *But this custom being look'd upon as barbarous and very dishonourable, it was soon after broke by King Ethelwolf (father to Ælfred the Great) notwithstanding in the times of some of his successors there was often a respect had unto it, as I have shew'd in my Notes upon Sir John Spelman's Life of K. Ælfred, p. 24. to which place I shall refer the Reader, and, upon this occasion, will only beg leave to insert, what is said about King Brictrick in the prose additions to the MS. of Robert of Glouecester, that belongs to the Heralds Office.* After him [*Kynewulfe*] Brightrik regned. xvi. yere, more studious a boute pees thanne ; bataille. This toke to wyfe Edburge, kyng Offes doughter of Mercheneriche. Whiche Edburge sturied her lorde a yenst giltlese men, notwithstandyng that him self was meoke and benynge. And yf she ne myght nat come to here purpose by counseille to ouercome thoo that here liked by werre, sheo dude hem be slayne by poyson. This was preued in a yonglyng of the kynges whiche he muche loued, which heo with her poysen sloughe. And after that the kyng deyde þorgh a drenche, whiche vnwytyng the quene he dranke, of hure makyng. and whenne the tythinge here of was sprong oute, thulke wikked quene by the comminalte was driue oute of the countre, and a statute i made a mong the West-Saxones, that no quene afterwarde shulde sitte by the kynge atte mete, ne be clepud quene, for the malice of Edburge forsaiden. And sheo þen wendyng to kyng Charles the gret of Fraunce, bi happe on a tyme, as she was essheked of him, whether sheo hadde lyuer haue him, than his sone that stode ther by, into housbond, sheo chees his sone. Thenne Charles, of he answere ameved,

Charles the grete.

Brittrik hir lord, þat scho nouht wiste,
Unwarned drank þerof a drauht als him liste.
He lẏued bot a moneth, þer of gan he die.
At Teukesbiri in toumbe his bodẏ did lie.

---

meved, saide thus. Yf thow haddest chose me, thow shuldest haue hadde mẏ sone; but for thow castest me a waẏ, and chese mẏ sone, nother him ne me shalt þow haue. And then he putte her in a abbey, where she was worshipfulliche I founde. but after sheo was founde gẏltẏ in lecherie, wherefore she was putte oute ther of. Kẏng Brẏghtrẏc had take these to wẏue as for the mightẏest kynge's doughter of Englisshemen, that thourgh the affinite of hure he mẏghte haue his regne atte his wille, and putte of his Enmẏs the lightloker, and a gaste the rebelle to him. Bẏ the helpe of this kyng Offe he droff in to Fraunce Egbright, of the kynge's kynrede alone a lyf, and whiche he most dradde to be a ẏenst hẏm and contrarie to his profẏtes. For this Brightric, and other kynges fram Ine to him, were oute of the right lyne of kynges, as of Certikes kẏn. Whanne Egbright thus was exiled, to Brightric a newe greuance ẏut sprong. For a folke of hethen Danes, ẏ vsed to lẏue bẏ see robberẏ, prẏuẏlich in iii. shippes shende the pes of Westsex. Whiche shippes aspied the plenteousnesse of the londe and the vertues of the men ther inne dwellẏng, and theẏ thenne wendyng home a ẏe, brought more peple, and assaide to stroẏe the contre, so that theẏ toke the kẏngus toune that was neighe and robbed hit. but anon, for drede of the peple rennẏng therto, theẏ flow to her shippus, lesyng her praẏe. And whenne Brigheric [*sic*] was dede, as aboue is saide, bẏ poyson happeliche I dronke, atte Warham his bodẏ was take to buriels.

Si-

Egbriht Rex.

SIBRIHT, þat I of told, þat þe lond had lorn,
þat a suỳnhird slouh vnder a busk of thorn,
Had a kosyn, hight Egbriht, whilom exiled was
þorh þe kỳng Brihtrik, I ne wote for what trispas.
þis ilk Egbriht was norised at Paris
In Charlemaỳn courte, sire of Saỳnt Dinỳs.
[1] Ailrik was his fader, a duke of faire fame,
Lord of Wicombe, of Redỳnges, & of Tame.
His moder was Sibriht sister, þat was a fole kỳng.
þat Brittrik was dede him com tiþing.
He toke leue at Charles, & com tille þis lond,
Among his riche kỳnde gode frendes he fond.
What þorgh lowe of lond, & olde auncestrie,
Wan he þe regne of Westsex alle pleỳnerlie.
Whan he pleỳnere seỳsỳn in þat his eam had lorn,
þat his fiue ancestres had holden beforn,
þorghout þe South to þe North he had for grete nỳth,
If anỳ Breton were fonden holdand lond or lỳth,

De Bernewolf rege.

þat he suld voide þe lond, if he his life wild saue.
Manỳ fled to Lỳndaỳ, socour forto haue,
To þe kỳng Bernewolf, þat was Breton,
& he withsaid his feaute, þat he suld haf don.
Bituex þise tuo kỳnges a werre bigan,
Slaỳn was Bernewolf, & with him manỳ man.
Under Elendoune þe bataile was smỳten.
Men syng in þat cuntre (fele ȝit it witen)

[1] Male. Nam pater Egberti fuit Alcmundus sive Ealmundus. Vide Sax. Chron. p. 76.

" Elen-

" Elendoune, Elendoune, þi lond is fulle rede
" Of þe blode of Bernewolf, þer he toke his dede.
After þat bataile Egbriht, þus herd I saỳ,
Seised Kent & Estsex, Southsex & Surraỳ,
& alle þe grete lond, fro Douer to Grỳmsbỳ.
Wilaf, Bernewolf sonne, þerwith had envỳ.
He wild haf venged his fadere, if he had haued mỳght.
Bot he fond no force agaỳn þe kỳng Egbriht.
If he wild ouht haue, after [1] after// his fader decesse,
Nedly him bihoued com tille Egbriht pes.
At þe last he com, & mad þe kỳng homage,
Egbriht for his curteisie gaf him his heritage.

¶ Egbriht of alle þe lond had þe regante, De homagio Walliæ.
Fro Douere vnto Tuede, alle was his fee.
Wilaf with him he led, Wales forto se.
Bangore with force, þei toke þat cite.
The Walsch men it sauh, it mot no better be,
þei com befor Egbriht, & mad him feaute,

¶ Sone after þe wỳntere, whan þe somer bigan,
þe kỳng & his meỳne went to burgh Konan. Konỳngesburghe.
It was on̄ Witsondaỳ, in tỳme of slepỳng,
Kom messengers of þe North, & teld Egbriht þe kỳng,
þorgh Frithbald a lord of þe Northende,
& said, " Sir Egbriht, our chefe kỳng to tille lende,
" Suffre not Sir Frethebald long to lede þis pỳne.
" His folk beside Tuede es slaỳn & kast þer ine,
" He is now in poỳnt his regne forto tỳne. De Frethebaldo.
" þorgh þam of Danmark þis lond wille þei wỳne,

[1] Dele.

" &

" & if þei Sir Frethebald haf now ouer comen,
" þe to þere remenant of þe North son salle þei nomen.
" Sir, for þis hie feste, & for þe Trinite,
" Suffre vs nouht to lese, for defeaute of þe.

Bellum apud Karham, & rex fugam cepit.

WHAT did kýng Egbriht? Withouten anỳ somons,
& withouten askýng of Erles or barons,
He hied him þider suýth, &, whan he com to Tuede,
He sauh suýlk oste of paiens, þat alle he was in drede.
Neuerþeles at Karham was the bataile gýuen,
þe kýng was narow holden, his folk alle to drýuen.
Tuo dukes & tuo bisshopes for euer toke þer leue,
þe kýng was alle affraied, þer dede gan him greue.
þe kýnge's folk was litelle, it had no dure.
On the nýght he fled awaỳ, þat non suld him se.
Mýght he neuer noure fýnd a restýng place.
Right vnto Donkastre þe Danes gan him chace.
Whan he wend haf passed þo þat gan him drýue,
þan were arýued in Humber þrittỳ schippes & fýue.
Ilkone with folk inouh, redỳ to bataile.
" God wate," said þe kýng, " now comes me trauaile.

De Dardano filio regis Daciæ.

¶ Dardan hight þe cheftaýn of þat company,
Sadok sonne of Danmark kýng Danesrỳ.
þer pauillons had þei sette beside þe water of Done,
Egbriht gadred partie, & ȝared him fulle sone.
Listen now, how Jhesu Criste, for his mýkelle mercỳ,
Agaýn þe fals paiens þe Cristen stode he bỳ.

De militia Anglorum, & nominibus eorum.

SIBRIHT duke of Brailes, Egbriht sister sonne,
He com his eam to socour fro fer þer he gan wonne.
Sẏward þe gode westreis, Edald þe vavasoure,
Wilaf kẏng of Merce, he com to þat stoure.
Harald of Donsmore his lord þider led
Berald of þe Marche, of strength non he dred.
Haldaỳn of Donkastre was chosen þat ilk daỳ,
To bere þe kẏnge's banere ageỳn þe paien laỳ.
Bot Hakon, Hernebald sonne, of best he bare þe voice,
In stede of kẏnge's banere he did him bere þe croice,
In wirschip of Jhesu, & of his passion,
þe paiens were so ferd, þei mẏght haf no foỳson.

IIII°. die Septembris fuit bellum apud Donkastre inter regem [2] Egbriht & Danos.

¶ þe ferþ daỳ of Septembre, in þe [1] heuest tide,
At Donkastre mot men se manỳon to batale ride.
þat to þe kẏng Egbriht alle were þei gẏuen,
For þer heritage þer to die or lẏuen.
þei hewe on̄ þe paiens, as men of wille gode.
þe paiens ageỳn þam fulle stifely þei stode.
þei fauht alle þat daỳ, ne left þei not þe nẏght,
Wilaf þe kẏng of [3] Merte was slaỳn in that fight,
& Berald of þe Marche, & þe duke Uttre
Lord of Cirencestre, þat nẏght slaỳn was he.
Alle þat nẏght þe kẏnge's folk fulle ille were þei led,
Manẏ on was slaỳn, & wonded hard bisted.
Right in þe mornẏng in aldermost nede
Com þe kẏnge's sonnes tuo, als Criste wild it rede,
Out of Germinie with folk inouh of mẏght,
Adelwolf & Ethelbert, knẏghtes boþe fulle wẏght.

[1] *Sic.* [2] *Sic.* [3] *L.* Merce.

Was neuer in alle his lyue þer fadere ore so glad,
Als whan he sauh his sons tuo, þe paiens force to sprad.
Adelwolf his fader saued at þat ilk iorne,
& Ethelbert in the felde his fader lete he se,
How Dardan for his lance doun to þe erth went,
& smote his hede of, his fader to present.
¶ Harald of Donesmore vppon Done him mette
Vibrand, Dardane's broþer, with suerd so him grette,
þat þorghout his armes Wibrand alle to hewe.
Sone with þe Danes gamned þam no glewe.
þat perceÿued Haldaÿn, þat bare þe croice oñ hie,
Sex & þrittÿ paiens enbussed priuelie.
He tok his suerd in hand, þe croÿce lete he falle,
& medeled him in þe pres, among þe barons alle.
Ecce de probitate Haldaÿn, qui portavit crucem pro vexillo.
Before þe kyng & his sons he rinctlied þam þe waÿ,
Manÿ wer þe paiens þat Haldaÿn did slouh þat day.
Bituex vnderon & noen was þe feld alle wonnen.
For alle þat wild abide were ouer riden & ronnen.
þe kÿng with þe maistrie went in to þe toun,
þe pris he had wonnen, in vertew of Criste's passioun.
¶ Whan he had done þere alle þat he suld do,
He went vnto Wynchestre, his conseile gaf him so.
Unto þe somerestide þer gan he lende,
Fyue & þrittÿ batailes had he brouht tille ende.
He felt him heuÿ & ferlÿ seke, his bodÿ wex alle seere,
His childre he wild auance, tille he o lÿue were.
Tille Adelwolf gaf he Westsex, hede of alle þe thede,
Lordschip ouer alle þe londes bituex Douer & Tuede.

Ethel-

Ethelbert held Estsex, Southsex & Kent,
For homage & feaute tille Adelwolf it went.
Whan Egbriht had feffed his sons in londes seere,
Now in his last ende of fyue & þrittỳ zere,
At Wỳnchestre he died, & þer his bodỳ is laid:
Was neuer þe lond so zemed, þe folk so þan said.
Fỳue childir he had, knỳghtes douhtỳ of handes,
& alle were þei kỳnges in diuers landes.

ADELWOLF of Westsex, after his fadere dede, Adelwolf rex.
At Chestre sette his parlement, his tenantz þerto bede.
He sent for alle þe kỳnges, fro Berwik vnto Kent,
& þei with fulle gode wille alle vnto him went,
& mad tille him feaute, withouten anỳ chest,
& cleỳmed him for þer chefe of West & of Est,
Of North & of South in length & in brede,
Fro Kent vntille Berwik, als lastes alle þat thede.
¶ He was first of Inglond, þat gaf God his tiþe[1], Primus rex, qui dedit decimas ecclesiæ in Anglia.
Of Isshue of bestes, of londes or of liþe.

[1] *He was also so great a Friend to the University of Oxford, that he had thoughts of rebuilding it, after it had been destroyed by barbarous Enemies. Whence 'tis that some Historians say, that he was the Founder of that University, which, however, is more truly asserted of his Son K. Alfred, who certainly did raise it up again after the Destruction brought upon it by the Danes. Among others that ascribe this Act to K. Æthelwolf is John Rastell, or Rastall, in his Chronicle, a wonderfull scarce printed Book, lent me by my very worthy Friend, the ingenious Mr. John Murray of London.* ¶ Ethelwolphus (*says Rastell*) son to Egbert began his reyn ouer the westsaxons the yere of cryst. viii. c. xxxii. | some say that this Ethelwold [*l.* Ethelwolf] foundyd furst

Siþen he went to Rome, as man of holy wille,
His sonne & he alle þat ȝere with þe pape duelled stille.
þe toþer ȝere next, after his duellyng,
He went home bi France, & spak with þe kyng.
þe kyng him his douhter, hir name was Juwet,
Fulle wele on Sir Adelwolf was þat maiden sett.
He brouht hir Inglond, & siþen lyued tuo ȝere.
He lies at Wynchestre beside an autere.
þre þousand marke he gaf with testament fulle right
To Petir & Paule of Rome, to susteyn þer light.

Edbaldus rex fatuus.

AFTER Adelwolf, his sonne hight Edbalde,
To ȝere & a half þe regne gan he halde.
Of him in holy kirke men said euelle sawe,
His stepmoder Juwet he weddid agayn þe lawe.
Of his body was no force, non for him wild murne.
Bot þus I fo in my boke, he lies at Schirburne.

Anno Domini. [1] DCCC. LXI°.

þe date of Criste to neuen þus fele were gon,
Auht hundreth euen, & sexti & on.

Ethelbertus rex.

AFTER Edbalde com Ethelbert his eam,
Adelwolfe's broþer, of Egbrihte's team.
He did him coroune kyng, he was a noble man,
& in his first ȝere paiens on him ran

---

the vnyuersyte of Oxonford. *Where the word* furst *is to be understood of the* first founding *it after it had been destroyed, not that there had been no University here before. See my Preface to Thomas Sprot's Chronicle*, §. 15.

[1] *Repone*, DCCC.LXI°.

Right

Right at Wẏnchestre, ageẏn þam gan he stand,
þe kẏng þam bataile, & did þam fle þe land.
In werrẏng & in wo he regned fẏue ȝere.
Men biried him at Schireburn, Edbald fulle nere.
þe date of Jhesu Criste was writtẽ in þis lyue, Anno Domini. DCCCmo. LX.vo.
Auht hundreth wẏnter sexti & fẏue.

AFTER Ethelbert com Elfrith his broþer, Elfridus rex.
þat was Egbrihte's sonne, & ȝit þer was a noþer.
Elfride þorgh heritage toke him þe coroune,
& gaf Alfride his broþer Surraẏ to warisoune.
Tille Elfride oure kẏng com tiþinges starke,
þat fẏue kẏnges & fẏue erles wer comen of Danmarke,
þat wild oñ him renne, & reue him þe coroune,
With alle þer grete folk, þei laẏ in Aluertoune.
þe kẏng & his broþer, þat hight Alfrede,
Gadred folk togider, als men þat had nede,
& com to þe bataile with fulle egre herte.
þe Danes stode þam ageẏn with bataile fulle smerte.
In þe passion tẏme was þe first bataile,
Nene was þat ilk ȝere, grete was þer trauaile.
þe toþer ȝere, þe þrid daẏ after Halwethurs tide,
þe Danes, þorgh Gode's grace, were on þe wers side.
For slaẏn were þei alle, erle & baron.
þe kẏng did mak at ȝork a faire procession,
& þanked Jhesu Criste with herte fulle mẏlde,
þat ageẏn þe paiens his lond mẏght schilde.

De Sancto Edmundo martire, & de morte ejus per totum.

ELFRIDE had a kosyn, þat kyng was of schelde,
Northfolk & Southfolk of Elfride he helde,
þat was Saynt Edmunde, þe croune þat tyme bare.
A duke of Danmark, his name was Inguare,
Ubbe an erle of Huneis with þat Inguar kam,
Uppon Saynt Edmunde Northfolk he nam.
Edmunde sent his messengers, of pes þam bisouht.
Inguar sent bode ageyn, þat pes wild he nouht,
Bot if he ȝald him þe loud, þan he suld haf pes.
þat wild not Saynt Edmunde, þe bataile he ches.
He atired him to bataile with folk þat he had.
Bot þis cursed Danes so grete oste ay lad,
þat Edmunde was taken, and slayn at þe last.
Fulle fer fro þe body lay was þe hede kast.
þe body son þei fonde, þe hade was in doute.
Up & doune in þe felde þei souht it aboute,

Ecce miraculum de capite Sancti Edmundi.

To haf knowyng þerof, alle þei were in were,
Tille þe hede him self said, *here, here, here.*
þer þei fond þe hede is now a faire chapelle,
Oxen hate þe toun, þer þe body felle.
þer where he was schotte a noþer chapelle standes,
& somwhat of þat tre, þei bond vntille his handes.
þe tone is fro þe toþer moten a grete myle,
So fer bare a woulfe þe hede, & kept it a grete while,
Unto þe hede said, *here*, als I befor said.
Fro þe woulf þei it toke, vnto þe body it laid.
Men sais, þer he ligges þe flesch samen ȝede,
Bot þe token of þe wonde als a rede threde.

Now

Now lies he in schrỳne in golde þat is rede.
Seuen ȝere was he kỳng þat tỳme þat he was dede.

IN þe ȝere after, right in þe tỳme of May,
Oseth, þe Danes kỳng, com Inglond to affraỳ.
He arỳued at Berwik, in þe water of Tuede.
Priue help of þe Scottes he had at his nede,
& com fast toward þe South, grete powere he led.
Elfride & his broþere out of ȝork fled.
þei praied God speciallỳ, þat he wild þam saue,
& ageỳn þe Danes help inouh to haue.
At þe poỳnt of þe bataile, displaỳed his banere,
þe kỳng ȝede to þe kirke, his messe forto here.
Bot Alfride his broþer ȝede to þe bataile.
He was ouer hardỳ, þe Danes he gan assaile.
Discomfite was Alfride within a litelle throwe.
þe kỳng herd þat telle, þat his side ȝede lowe.
He dight him to þe bataile, his folk to socoure.
God did faire miracle for Elfride þat houre.
For non of þe Danes askaped with þe life.
Bot þe Scottes kyng, þat mayntend þat strife,
Opon Elfride ran, als traytoure inferd.
Elfride he wonded with dỳnt of a suerd.
Sex ȝere was he kỳng, with werre weldid þe scheld.
Fulle gode was his endỳng, he ligges at Driffeld.
¶ þof alle þat he werred in wo & in strife,
þe foure & tuentỳ houres he spended in holy life.
þe ferst. viii. houres in praier alderbest,
þe toþer. viii. houres in slepe & in rest.

Oseth, rex Daciæ, arripuit portum in Berwik super regem Elfridum

þe þrid. viii. houres he studied, how he myght
Mayntene þe lond with lawe, his folk hald to right.
Haluendele his godes he gaf to Gode's werkes,
Sustened abbeis, norised pouer clerkes,
Did reise vp kirkes, þat were fallen doun,
& alle þat him serued he brouht to warisoun.
Anno. D. CCC°. LXXI°. þe ȝere of Criste's birth was auht hundreth euen,
& þus many mo, sextý & elleuen.

ALFRIDE his broþer, a gode clerk was he one,
Of bodý so douhtý in Inglond was none.
He resceýued þe coroune, after his broþer dede,
Strong were þe batailes þe Danes on him bede.
Tuo & tuentý batailes he wanne þe first ȝere,
þe Danes so maný týmes arýued on him here.
De Rollo pagano baptizato, cui nomen erat Robertus, & hic conquisivit totam Normanniam. þat he so maný slouh a duke had envie,
& eft arýued on þis lond with fulle grete nauie.
Rollo was his name, a knýght fulle douhtý,
þat Alfride wend wele, haf lorn þe seignorý.
Whan þei com to bataile, ilk oþer gan askie,
Alfride vnto Rollo sone gan him alie.
So maný douhtý dýntes was bituex þam tueýe,
Wele þei did togidere, better maý no man seýe.
God, þorgh his grace, þat daý so wele sped,
þat Rollo asked Cristendom at þe kyng Alfred.
þorgh þat Cristendom, þo, þat were so wroþe,
At halý kirke's faýth alle on were boþe.
Rollo was kald Roberd, whan he was baptized,
þorgh þe kýng Alfride, als he had deuised.

Now

Now is Roberd Cristen, he dightes his nauie,
& ferde ouer þe see, & conquerd Normundie.
Duke þan was he cald, þorgh conquest of hond,
Alfrid he left stille here in Inglond.

¶ ȝit a noþer Danes kýng in þe Norþ gan arýue. De Gunteró patre Hanelok, sicut dicit Petrus.
Alfrid it herd, þidere gan he drýue.
Hanelok fader he was, Gunter was his name.
He brent citees & tounes, ouer alle did he schame.
Saýnt Cutberte's clerkes þo Danes þei dred.
þe toke þe holy bones, about þei þam led.
Seuen ȝere þorgh þe land wer þei born aboute,
It comforted þe kýng mýkelle, whan he was in doute.

¶ Whan Alfrid & Gunter had werred long in ille,
þorgh þe grace of God, Gunter turned his wille.
Cristend wild he be, þe kýng of fonte him lift,
& þrittý of his knýghtes turnes, þorgh Gode's gift.
þo þat first were foos, & com of paien laý,
Of Cristen men haf los, & so þei wend awaý.

¶ Bot I haf grete ferlý, þat I fýnd no man, De Hanelok.
þat has writen in storý, how Hanelok þis lond wan.
Noiþer Gildas, no Bede, no Henrý of Huntýnton,
No William of Malmesbiri, ne Pers of Bridlynton,
Writes not in þer bokes of no kýng Athelwold,
Ne Goldeburgh his douhtere, ne Hanelok not of told,
Whilk týme þe were kýnges, long or now late
þei mak no menýng whan, no in what date.
Bot þat þise lowed men vpon Inglish tellis,
Right storý can me not ken, þe certeýnte what spellis.

Men

Men sais in Lyncoln castelle ligges ȝit a stone,
þat Hanelok kast wele forbi euer ilkone.
& ȝit þe chapelle standes, þer he weddid his wife,
Goldeburgh þe kýnge's douhter, þat saw is ȝit rife.
& of Grýme a fisshere, men redes ȝit in rýme,
þat he bigged Grýmesbý Grýme þat ilk týme.
Of alle stories of honoure, þat I haf þorgh souht,
I fýnd, þat no compiloure of him tellis ouht.
Sen I fýnd non redý, þat tellis of Hanelok kýnde,
Turne we to þat storý, þat we writen fýnde.

De comitibus Daciæ.

SON after com an erle, Alfden hight þat hunde,
Arýued vp with Inguar, þat slouh S. Edmunde.
Upon þe kýng Alfrid werre son began,
Bot þorȝh þe gode Northeren slaýn wer ilkaman.
Sex & fiftý batailes Alfrid ouercam,
After nyen & tuentý ȝere þe dede him hiþen nam,
& sex monethes mo, þus þe storý said.
At Wýnchestre in toumbe in þe abbaý is he laid.
þe date þat certeýn es in boke writen here,
Nouþer more no lesse, þan nien hundreth ȝere.

Edwardus rex.

AFTER þis Alfride kom Edward þe olde,
Faire man he was & wis, stalworth & bolde.
At London, at Saýnt Poule's, toke he þe croune,
& purueied his parlement of erle & baroune.
He seid vnto þam alle, þat purueied suld it be,
þat in alle þe lond suld be no kýng bot he.

þe smale kỳnges of þe lond all were þei comen,
Of Scotland, of Wales, of Kombirlond, þei nomen
Inglis & Danes, & þe gode Norreis,
Duke, erle & baron, & oþer knỳghtes curteis,
þei said in þat parlement, þorgh conseile of alle,
þat Edward felle best be chefe, oþer suld non falle.

NOW is Edward chosen kỳng at þer parlement,
& þe lordschip of þe lond alle tille him went.
Fourtene childre he gate opon tuo wifes,
Sex sonnes & auht douhtres, þo were faire lyues.
Athelstan, Edwỳn, Edgar, Edmond, Edred, Edwỳ:
Hilde was his douhter, was kald Hilden ladỳ,
Elfled & saynt Eadburgh þat lyued holỳ life,
þe ferth Octouian Marỳ þat Emperoure's wife.
þei passed of þis world, whan þei were right ȝonge,
What þer names were I kan telle no tonge.
¶ In Edwarde's tend ȝere arỳued vp in Kent
þre kỳnges & sex dukes, þat out of Danmark went.
In to Lyndsaỳ brouht þei him tiỳng,
& purueied oste & dight him als a douhtỳ kỳng.
At Teteford in Northfolk his baner was displaied,
þe þre kỳnges were slaỳn, þe toþer were affraied,
þat þei went to þer schippes, so hard he sette his chace,
Edward had þe maistri, & þanked God his grace.
He com neuer to bataile, þat he ne had þe maistrie.
Foure & tuentỳ ȝere was he kỳng, & þorgh no folie
Neuer in his lyue a fote of lond he les.
Scotland & Cumberland & Wales he had in pes,

Corn-

Cornwalle, Lyndsaỳ & Kent, Dorsette & Surreie.
He ligges at Wỳnchestre, þe sotñ it is to seie.
þe date of God nien hundreth, & four & tuenti mo,
Whan dede his lyfe sundred, þe folk for him was wo.

Adelstanus rex.

AFTER Edward þe olde regned Athelstan,
þat was his eldest sonne, & a noble man.
þe baronage & þe clerȝie were somond to Kỳngeston,
þer wes his fest holden, & gỳuen him þe croune.

De Tributo Walliæ.

þe next ȝere þere after his coronment,
þe Walsh men, þat luf no pes, on him ran & brent.
Bot Athelstan þe maistrie wan, & did þam mercie crie,
& alle Northwales he set to treuage hie.
Tuenti pounde of gold be ȝere, þre hundreth of siluer clere,
& þer to fỳue hundreth kie ilk ȝere to his lardere.
Siluer for Southwales not a ferþing noke
Oþer treuage he sette, a þousand kie he toke.

Isti sunt qui moverunt guerram super Athelstanum regem.

¶ þe ferth ȝere of þe regne Owald a werreoure,
Constantỳn of Scotland kỳng was & traitoure,
Ouwer kỳng of Wentland, þese þre with þer powere
Werred oñ Athelstan with oste fulle austere.
Bot Athelstan, þorgh Gode's graee, so with þam fore,
þei were faỳn to ask pes, & ſeaute þei him suore.
þe tend ȝere of his regne sen he was crouned kyng,
Of Edwỳn his broþer bifelle suilk a þỳng.
At London in his courte with wiknes men him fond,
Athelstan did him bỳnd both fote & hond,
& kast him in tille Temse, whan it was most brỳm,
To chastise alle oþer he tok vengeance on him.

At

At mỳn vnderstandỳng he wild tak no mede
þat was ateỳnt of wikkednes, his broþer to dede ȝede.
¶ Constantỳn of Scotlond, þat I are of spak,
Brak his feaute sone, of treson it is lak,
& alle folk of Danmark with Constantỳn held,
& slouh our Inglish men, wasted toun & feld.
Athelstan herd saỳ, he went to Beuerlaỳ,
& praied to þe bisshop Jon in fertre þer he laỳ,
þat he wild bede his bone, vntille þe Trinite,
& he suld gỳue his kirke franchise & fe,
To haf & to holde als he was kỳng leale.
Of him haf þei chartre seled with his seale.
Siþen he went to Durham, & gaf Saỳnt Cutbert
Londes & liþes, with chartir aperte.
þe bisshop of his gift holdes his fe,
Siþen he went to bataile, Constantỳn to fle.
Constantỳn he reỳmed, & did vnto stresse,
& wan þe lond ilk dele, & wasted alle Cathenesse,
& his son ȝolden vnto his ostage.
Siþen he turned to London, & his baronage.
Athelstan in Scotland a selcouth ded he one,
He smote depe at Donbarre, an elne in þe stone.

De falsitate regis Scotorum.

Misio rex Karolus regi Athelstano pro sorore sua Hilda. lege per totum.

AT þe feste of our ladỳ þe Assumpcion,
Went þe kỳng fro London toward Abindon.
þider out of France fro Charles kỳng of fame
[1] Com þe of Boloỳn, Adulphus was his name,

[1] *Princeps hujus legationis fuit Adulphus, filius Baldewini Comitis Flandriæ, ex filia regis Edwardi Ethelswitha* Guil. Malmsb. de gestis regum Anglorum, p. 28.

&

& þe duke of Burgoỳn, Edmunde sonne, Reỳnere.
þe brouht kỳng Athelston present withouten pere,
Fro Charles kỳng sanz faile thei brouht a gonfaỳnoun
þat Saỳnt Morice in bataile befor þe legioun,
& scharp lance þat thrilled Ihesu side;
& a suerd of gold, in þe hilte did men hide
Tuo of þo naỳles, þat war þorh Ihesu fete
Tached on þe croỳce, þe blode þei out lete,
& som of þe thornes þat don were on his heued,
& a fair pece þat of þe croỳce leued,
þat Saỳnt Heleỳn sonne at þe bataile wan
Of þe Soudan of Askalone, his name was Madan.
¶ þan blewe þe trumpes fulle loud & fulle schille,
þe kỳng com in to þe halle, þat hardỳ was of wille.
þan spak Reỳner, Edmunde sonne, (for he was messengere)
" Athelstan, mỳ lord þe gretes, Charles þat has no pere.
" He sendes þe þis present, & sais, he wille him bỳnde
" To þe þorh Ilde þi sistere, & tille alle þi kỳnde.
Befor þe messengers was þe maiden brouht,
Of bodỳ so gentille was non in erth wrouht.
No non so faire of face, of spech so lufly,
Scho granted befor þam alle to Charles hir bodỳ,
& so did þe kỳng, & alle þe baronage.
Mỳkelle was þe richesse, þei purueied hir passage,
& led hir vnto France, spoused forto be,

Iterum de perjuratione regis Scottorum, & de bello Dacorum.

Athelstan leues stille, & passed not þe se.
In þe ȝere after þat Ilde wedded was,
Constantỳn of Scotlond did ȝit more trispas.

He

He brouht þe kýng Anlaf arýued vp in Humbere,
Seuen hundreth schippes & fiftene, so fele were þe numbere.
Athelstan herd saý of þer mýkelle oste,
He & Edmunde his broþer dight þam to þat coste.
At Brunesburgh on Humber þei gan þam assaile,
Fro morn vnto euen lastell þat bataile.
At þe last to þer schippes þe kýng gan þam chace,
Alle awaý þei fled, þat was of Gode's grace.
Bot þe most partie algate was slaýn,
þat with life fled I tro·e þei were fulle faýn.
¶ Whan þe kýng Anlaf sauh his folk lorn,
He fled vnto Danmark þer pere he was born.
At þe Pask after he rýued in þe South,
At a hauen of Sandwich, in þe portis mouth.
Whan he was arýued, þe folk was affraý,
& com unto Wýnchestre þer þe kýng lay.
He brouht with him a deuelle, a hogge Geant,
Wele haf ȝe herd telle, he hight Colibrant.
Anlaf sent messengers vnto Athelstan,
& bad him ȝeld þe lond, or fýnd a noþer man
To fight with Colibrant, þat was his champion;
Who felle to haf þe lond, on þam it suld be don.
Athelstan tok a daý, a parlement did make,
If any ageýn Colibrant þe bataile durst take.
He fond no man þat durst, for non had mýght,
With Colibrant alone in bataile to fight.
þan praied Athelstan to Criste & sore wepe,
& God sent him tokenýng on nýght als he slepe,

þat

þat he suld fynd a palmere orly at morn,
At þe South ȝate, alone as he was born,
& if he wild praie him, for Jhesu Criste's loue,
He wild do þe bataile, & þei suld be aboue.
Ecce de bello inter Guydonem de Werwyk & Colibrant.
þat was Guy of Werwik, as þe boke sais.
þer he slouh Colibrant with hache Daneis.
Anlaf turned agayn, I trowe him was wo,
He & alle his to schippe gan þei go.
God delyuerde Athelstan of many hard affaies,
Sextene ȝere was he kyng & seuentene daies,
Siþen at Gloucestre dede euelle him toke.
Bot quik he out went, so sais my boke.
Pers can not say where he lies,
Bot as I herd telle I say myn auys.
De fine Athelstani regis.
Men say he was fonden in þe North cuntre
At Hexham now late, I wene soth it be.
Anno Domini DCCCCmo. XL°.
þe date whan he died of God men tellis by
Nien hundreth wynter & fulle fourty.

Edmundus Rex.

AFTER Athelstan þe kyng was Edmunde his broþer,
þe northren did him desceit, & ches þam a noþer.
One Anlaf þei ches, & crouned him for kyng.
Alle þe North ende was in his kepyng,
& alle þe South ende tille Edmunde þei drouh.
Upon þe fals Norreis Edmunde wan inouh.
Fyue cites he wan, þat þei held for þers,
þat whilom was ancestres, fro heires vnto heires,

Lycoln

Lẏcoln & Derbẏ, & [1] Southampton,
Leẏcestre & Stamford, þise fẏue wan Edmon,
& yit þe kẏng Anlaf so hard gan he chace,
þat he asked Cristendom opon Gode's grace.
Boþe he & Reẏnald was Guthefride's sonne,
He exilde þam out of þe North, þer þei wild wonne.
& gaf to Malcolme, kẏng of Scotlande,
þat he suld be him leale, bi se & bi lande.

THE fifte ȝere of his regne he went to Canterbiri,
þe feste of S. Austine, to hold it fulle mẏri.
A thefe of his courte was outlawed late,
þe kẏng knew him fulle wele, he mette him in þe gate.
Whilom he serued in his panterie,
& was outlawed for a felonie.
þe kẏng tok þis pantelere, & strangled him right þore,
& he wonded þe kẏng dedely fulle sore.
Seuen ȝere was he kẏng, & seuen monethis mo.
At Gloucestre is he laid, þe pantelere did him slo.
þe date was nien hundreth fourþty & seuen.
þis was þe selcouthest cas, þat haf herd neuen.

Demirabili morte regis.

Anno Domini. DCCCCmo. XLVII.

EDRED after Edmunde had þe coroune,
Vpon þe Pask daẏ, at London toune.
Siþen of all his barons he tok feaute,
Bot þe Northeren men held him no leaute.

Edredus rex, frater Edmuudi.

[1] Snotingaham (*vel* Notingeham) *aliis. Neque aliter quidem tam apud Florentium quam & Chron. Saxon.* Stafford *pro* Stamford *habet Speedus, secus atque auctores vett.*

Eÿlrike of Danmark for kÿng þei him ches,
& forsoke Edrede, þer were þei les.
Edrede with powere vntille þe North went,
Alle þe toun of Ripon he wasted & brent.
Northumberland was in affraÿ for Edred comÿng,
þei did doun Eÿlrik þe Danes kÿng,
& went out of þe lond with his rascaile,
Was he not so hardÿ at stand to bataile.
Alle þo Norreis, þat had bien so fikelle,
Pes forto haue þei glosed him fulle mÿkelle.
þer londes & þer rentes were at his wille,
He gaf S. Cutbert þerof, ȝit þei hold it stille.
Alle þe regne holÿ was þat tÿme in his hand,
& erles & barons þat wer in þe land,
So wele were þei chastised, alle com tille his grith,
þat þe pes of þe lond þe sikered him alle with.
Auht ȝere was he kÿng, his daies alle filled.
At Wÿnchestre he lies, so himself willed.

Anno Domini. DCCCCmo. LVo.

þe date nien hundreth fiftÿ & fÿue,
Whan þat kÿng Edred passed of þis lÿue.

Edgarus rex homo sanctus, pater Sancti Edwardi martyris.

AFTER Sir Edred was his broþer Edwÿ,
He resceÿued þe croune of þe seignorÿ.
So foole a man of his life non was seene,
þe hie men of þe lond conseild þam bituene,
To do doun Edwÿ at a parlement,
& tille his broþer Edgare gÿf þe tenement.

S. Don-

S. Donstan þe bisshop was at his [1] coronment,
& of alle his ancestres was neuer better kỳng.
He was boþe gode & wỳs in alle his dedis,
& right vnderstandỳng, to help at alle nedis.
Mikille he wirschiped God, & serued our Ladỳ,
þe abbeỳ of Rumeỳe he feffed richely,
With rentes fulle gode & kirkes of pris,
He did þer in of Nunnes a hundreth ladies.
¶ Edgare forto fle licherỳ of lyfe,
His barons gaf him conseile for to take a wỳfe
Elfled þe faire, þe duke's douhter Ormere.
He gate of hir S. Edward, þat is þe martere.
Dame Elfled died sone, ȝit wild he luf mare,
He tok bittere Estrild, duke's douhter Orgare.
Of hir lord Edgar had scho sonnes tueỳe,
Edmunde, þat in his tende ȝere at Peterburgh gan deie.
Eỳlred was the ȝongest, & Estrild fulle dere.
Wo was in his tỳme, as ȝe maỳ after here.
Edgar þer fader had alle Ingland,
He went to Kerlion, þe Walsch men he band
With homage & feaute, in right & in lawe.
Kỳmak kỳng of Scotland, he com for fỳne awe,
& Malcolme of Combirland was at his wille,
Maccum kỳng of þe Iles, Dufnald fitz Omere,
Sifreth & Huwalle, Jacob & Juthille,
He did þam mak feaute, als right was & skille.
Siþen he went aboute, kirkes vp to raise,
Abbaỳes forto help, were fallen in miseỳse.

Omnes isti fecerunt homaginum regi Edgaro.

[1] *F.* coronỳng.

He gaf to Crouland, in þe Abbot tyme Gountere,
þre myle of seignorie, about his autere.
Auhten ȝere Edgar regned kyng & sire,
He lies in tombe in þe abbeý of Glastenbire.

Ecce de miraculo Sancti Edgari.

OF Edgar þe kyng þus fond I writen,
Pers telles þe same þing, at his boke may ȝe witen.
Sen four & tuenti ȝere, þat he in erth was laid,
An abbot of Glastebiri, Edward his name is said,
He did mak a toumbe, Edgar in to laý,
Bot it was ouer litelle, in alle maner waý.
þei brak in tuo his schankes, to mak þe toumbe mete,
þe blode was boþe warme & fresh, þat of þe schankes lete.
þe abbot wex alle blynd, þat did his bones breke.
þe bisshop Owald herd of þat miracle speke,
Renst at at þe toumbe, he tok vp þe bones,
In a fertre þam laid a riche for þe nones.
Anno DCCCCmo. LXXIIIº. þe date was nien hundreth sexti & þrittene,
He was a holý man þorgh miracle was sene.

De Sancto Edwardo martire.

AFTER Edgare was Edward his sonne,
Regnand in alle þe lond, als his fader was wonne.
S. Dunstan corouned him bifor þe baronage
& oþer bisshopes inouh, fulle ȝonȝe he was of age.
A gode man he was, & stalworth knýght als stele.
In Ingland neuer before was kýng lufed so wele,
Ne of þe folk strange non honourd só mýkelle:
þe right lawes did he loke for fals men & fikelle.

Boþe

Boþe riche & pouere he ȝemed in euenhede,
Non suld do oþer wrong for couetise no drede.
Estrild his stepmoder scho þouht on̄ felonie.
Tille wikked men scho spak, Edward to aspie.
þei did als scho þam bad, & wrouht þam seluen wouh,
At Koruesgate þorgh desceit Edward kýng þei slouh.
þre ȝere was he kýng, þe storý þus me said,
His bodý at Westmýnstere in fertre is it laid.
þe date was nien hundreth sexti & sextene,
þat was alle forwondred, for his dede com tene.

Ecce de morte ejus anno. DCCCCmo LXXVIo.

UNTO Kýngeston þe first wouke of May
Com S. Dunstan, opon a Sonendaý,
& of alle þe lond erle & baroun,
To Eilred, Edgar sonne, bitauht him þe coroun.
S. Dunstane hette him wele, in sorow his life to lede,
In alle his life ilk dele, of suerd he mot him drede.
S. Dunstan tille him spak wrothfulle wordes of eýe,
How þei of his mouth brak, listen, I salle ȝow seýe.
" Eilred," said Dunstan, " þi broþer Edward was slaýn
" þorgh þi moder Estrid, þer of scho was fulle faýn.
" For slauhter of þi broþer has þou þe coroune,
" Wele weld it salle þou neuer, þou has it þorh tresoune.
" þof alle Edgar þe gate, Estrild þi moder ware,
" To þe reame has þou no right, bot þorgh slauhter care.
" For þe luf of þe þi broþer did scho slo,
" þerfor þou & þine salle weld it with wo.
" & sone after þi daies þe reame salle men se
" Gouerned þorgh aliens kýnde, & euermore fro þe.

Ecce ea quæ Sanctus Dunstanus promisit Regi Eilredo.

Eilredus coronatus est.

¶ Whan Dunstan had thus said, bifor alle þat were þore,
& taken had his leue of barons lesse & more,
Eilred þe ȝonge kýng toward London ȝede,
A rede cloude in þe skie about Ingland gan sprede,
So mýkelle blode it raýned, þe erth wex alle rede,
þe folk was affaied, & alle heuý als lede.

Decē primum tormentum. ¶ þe toþer ȝere next of his coronment,
þe Danes vp arýued, Souhamptone þei brent,
& robbed Cornwaile, þe folk were alle anoýed,
þat with Norwais Kerlion was destroied.
þei com to London, & brent þe cite.
Eilred & þe barons, þat were of his meýne,
With þe erle of Herford held contek & fight,
þat þer heritage defend þei ne mýght.

Undecesecundum tormentum. Als alle þis sorow & wo was in þe gýnnýng,
Died S. Dunstan, men herd þe angels sýng.

JUSTÝN & Godemunde, of Danmark dukes riche,
Arýued in Southfolk & brent Ipsewiche,
Men & women slouh, & robbed þorgh þe lond,
Tille þei com to Mideweie, cuntre non þei fond.
With þe erle of Kent þei countred at Medeweie,
þe maistrie of him þei wan, þei did his folk alle deie.
þe lerid & þe lewid, þat wonned in þe South,
Sauh werre oñ ilk a side, þei wer in þe woulfe's mouth.
Ten pounde of gold bi ȝere for þe pes þei gaf
To Justý & Gudmund, þei tok alle riffe & raf.
To schip þei turned & went, & charged þam fulle wele,
Arýued in Danmark with robberie ilk a dele.

In

IN to Wales þat coste went Eilred pitouslỳ, Tercium tormentum.
For to gadre him oste, if he mot haf maistrie.
In þat ilk tỳme, as he to Wales went,
Tuo outlandes kỳnges on þis lond hauens hent.
Anlaf of Norwaỳ, of Danmark kỳng Suane,
Arỳued in þis lond, to manỳ wer þei bane.
þer ostes boþe at ons vnto London nam,
þei toun was warned wele, & wist þat þei cam.
Folk inouh redỳ was gadred, to þe cite
þei went egrelỳ, & did þo kỳnges fle.
Fro London þei were drỳuen, & com to Southampton.
Man & beste þei slouh, destroied þe cuntre doun.
Eilred mỳght nouht to stand þam ageỳn,
For pes he þam bisouht, to gỳf þam a certeỳn.
Summa. ¶ Fỳue þousand pound of siluer þe Danes kỳng toke. Quartum tormentum.
þe went to þer schippes, & to Danmark schoke.
& manỳ of þo Danes priuelỳ were left,
& busked Westward, forto robbe eft.
Wilton had þei taken, Southampton also,
Cornwaile & Wales bouwed þam vnto.
þe cuntre of Dorseth, lond & tenement,
Alle had þei wasted, fro Seuerne vnto Kent.
Eilred oñ a stound þe told of þat wo,
Summa. Four & tuenti þousand ponde he gaf awaỳ to go,
To haf pes in his lỳue, þe lond no more schende.
þe Danes tok þe siluer, to Danmark gan wende.

FOUR & tuenti wỳnter lasted þis sorow,
If he had pes at euen, he had non at morow.
For so hette S. Dunstan, he suld alle his lyue
With werre his lond welde, & with his suerd strỳue.
Now has Eilred nede of help & socoure,
For boldenes he wild him bỳnd to som berde in boure.
Fulle so frendes he had, & sele foos inowe,
Unto þe duke of Normundie he went for to wouwe.
He wedded þe duke's douhter, faire Emme þe blaunche,
þre bouwes of þam spronge, þe ton es holy braunche.
De filiis Eil edi regis. Edmunde Irenside was eldest of þo þre,
þe to high Edward, þe þrid Alfrid hight he.
¶ [1] þorgh of Sir Richard, duke of Normundie,
Eilred ȝede þorgh his lond, priuely to spie
Euerilkon þe Danes, & smertlỳ bounde
Or smỳte of þer hedes, aỳ as men þam founde.
þus had Eilred þe lond at his wille,
Bot þe duke died sone, & þat felle him fulle.
þan was Eilred socoure sone awaỳ went.
Tiþing com to Danmark, þat he þe Danes schent.
Suane þe Danes kỳng þerwith had enuỳ.
To arỳue on̄ Hingland he dight his nauỳ.
Whan he was arỳued, he sent fulle baldelỳ
Messengers to Eilred, als tille his enmỳ.
þis was his message, his Danes wild he venge
Ageỳn him in bataile, to renne & to renge.
Eilred our kỳng his help had he lorn
Of þe duke of Normundie, þat dede was beforn.

[1] Id est, *through aid of.*

Suane

Suane, þe Danes kỳng, was of so grete strength,
þat he destroied þis lond in brede & in length.
Fỳue wỳnter holỳ lasted þat werre,
þat neuer Eilred our kỳng durst negh him nerre.
Noiþer bi Norþ no bi South com him neuer help.
Wo was alle his comforth, of sorow mot he ȝelp.
þrittỳ þousand pounde vnto Suane he sent,
Pes to haf his lỳue, & þei to Danmark went.

NOW is kỳng Suane went tille his cuntre,
Eilred sent for Edrik to be his owen priue.
So fals a traytour in erth was non as he,
Of Lincolne he gaf him þat cuntre schire.
þe duke said vnto þe kỳng, " Sir, I salle ȝow saỳ,
" For to saue ȝour lond wele, a fulle siker waỳ.
" Do mak þre hundreth schippes opon þe sees koste,
" To kepe þam of Norweie & þe Danes oste.
" & if þe folk þerin be trewe vnto þe,
" Doute þe of non enmỳs, þat comes vp on þe.
¶ þe sent to seke manỳ a schip wright
To þe toun of Sandwiche, þe nauie forto dight.
Whan Edrik it wist, þat þe schippes wer redỳ.
He sent to Norweie his lettres priuelỳ,
Unto þe kỳng Anlaf, tille Inglond to com.
Anlaf & Sir Thurkille arỳued vp in þei nom.
Anlaf & Thurkille aryued vp in Kent,
Alle about þei robbed, & tok þat þei mot hent.
þe folk of þe cuntre to þis conseile þei ches,
To gỳf þam four hundreth pounde, forto lyue in pes.

þe Danes tok þat siluer, & turned eft ageyn,
& voided þe cuntre, þe folk was fulle feyn.
¶ Bot in þe ȝere after, obowen Grimsby
Eft þei gan aryue þorgh sonde priuely,
þorgh fals Edrike, þat þam þider hasted.
Lincolne & Lyndeseie þei stroied & wasted.
Fals Edrike went, pes with þam to make.
Fourti þousand pounde he did þam take,
þat non in alle þe cuntre more suld be piled.
Bot euer was Eilred fouly begiled.
¶ Whan þe kyng wende, haf pes in his lyue,
Suane of Danmark at Sandwyche gan aryue,
& brouht hider with him his sonne, þat hight Knoute.
þe folk vntille Humber to Suane gan þei loute.
Alle was þorgh Edrik, þat mykelle was to blame.
He was þe kynge's conseiloure, & did him mykelle schame.

ANE erle in þe North, Uctred men kalde,
He com vnto Gaynesburgh, of Suane forto halde,
Forto lyue in pes, & werre forto fle,
He com vnto Suane, & mad him feaute.
Of the North Suane had a partie, þe South he desired,
Ostes tille him his sonne fast þei atired.
Knoute went to þe North, Suane in to þe South,
þan was Eilred in þe wolfe's mouth.
Suane toward Oxenford went fulle smertly,
& in þat ilk toun did he krie a krie,
þat alle þat him serued, & of his meyne ware,
Man, woman & childe, suld þei alle forfare.

Kastels

Kastels suld þei bete doun, kirkes suld þei brenne,
Boþe citez & tounes, þat þei mot se or ken.
Of þe toun of Wýnehestre feaute had he at wille,
Siþen he went to London, þat hated he fulle ille.
þe bode com to þe kýng, þat soiorned þer in,
þat þe kýng Suane þe toun wild he wýn.
A Danes erle, [1] with þe Kurkille he hight,
He halp our kýng defend þe toun at his mýght.
Kýng Suane gaf assaut, þe walles to assaile,
Mýkelle folk he les, & týnt his trauaile.
Four & tuenti þousand in Temse alle at ones
Wer dronkled of Danes, þe Deuelle haf þer bones.

SUANE turned fro London, alle þorgh felonie,
& went to Wallýngford, to mak his maistrie.
Siþen he ȝede to Bathe, & sette þe toun on fire.
Achelmare tille him felle, an Erle of Deuenschire.
Achelmare with feaute to Suane he him bonde,
Fro Wellis vnto London alle felle to his honde.
Suane toward Denmark sped him fulle fast,
& ostage of London he had at þe last.
Ilk cried on oþer, now is Suane kýng
Ouer alle Inglond, & Eilred has no þing.
¶ Eilred is so reýmed of his tresorie,
His wife & his childre he sent to Normundie.
þe bisshop of Londone he hight Sir Alphanie
Led Edward & Alfride, & Emme þat was ladie.

Eilredus transfretavit versus Normanniam.

[1] Vulgo vocant *Turkillum*.

In

IN þe wýnter after Eilred went ouer þe se
Unto [1] Nomundie, with his wife to be.
Whan þe duke herd say, þat Eilred þider cam,
With mýkelle nobleý ageýn Eilred he nam.
Resceyued him curtaslý, & said, " lefe & dere,
" Mý lond is at þi wille, tille þe socoure is here."
Anno Domini. MO. XL°. þe date a þousand was, & mo bi fourtý ȝere,
þat Eilred & his childre soiorned with duke Richere.
¶ Now comes Suane eft ageýn with Criste's malison,
þe lond leid to taliage so mýkelle on ílk a toun,
þat noiþer erle no baron of alle þer heritage
Mýght not lýue þer on, to gif þer taliage.
Treuage als he asked of S. Edmunde þing,
þe corsaýnt & þe kirke he threte for to brennýng,
& bot he had his askýng, þe lond he suld destroýe.
To Gaýnesburgh he kald þe barons forto noýe.
He said befor þam alle, of S. Edmunde's lond
He wild haf treuage, or brenne alle þat he fond.
¶ Alle was wele, tille euen after þe soupere
He ȝede about, & plaied with þo þat were him nere.
He sauh out of þe firmament an armed knýght com doun,
þat was S. Edmunde, cruelle als a leon,
Suerd girded & lance in hand, þan gan Suane to crie,
Non sauh bot he one, he said, " now salle I die,
" Help knýghtes, if ȝe maý, I maý no ferrer go.
" I se Edmunde with me wroþe, I wote he wille me slo.
De morte Suane, With þat word he felle doun dede as aný stone,
Life & saule to Helle, & flesh, blode & bone.

[1] Sic.

Now

NOW is Suane dede, & wonnes with Sathanas,
þe Danes ches Knoute to kỳng of Danmark þat he was,
& Inglond he seised for his fader conquest,
Grete taliage laid he þeron bi Esten & bi West.
þe folk wild not suffre to be treuwageres,
Bot sent after Eilred bi certeỳn messengeres,
& praied him to com home, þe croune ȝeme & take,
þe lordschip of Knoute kỳng wild þei alle forsake.
¶ Eilred sent tille Inglond Sir Edward his sonne
With his letter sealed, & þanke wild he þam conne,
& bliþely tille Inglond wild he com agaỳn,
If he mỳght on þam troste, þat þei were certaỳn.
Alle þe comons of þe lond with letter þam bond,
& ilkon sette his seale þerto with his own hond,
þat if he wild com ageỳn, þe lond forto were,
Neuer more to Danes kỳng faiþe suld þei bere.
Whan he wist þer wille, he hied hider suỳthe,
þei resceỳued him fulle faire, & were of him blythe.
With him alle, þei said, þei wild lỳue & deie
Alle holỳ þe lond, bot þei of Lyndseie
Eilred þer lege lord him þei alle forsoke,
& þer hede kỳng Knout þei þan toke.

Eilredus fugavit Knoutum regem, & iterum regnum cepit.

NOW rises Eilred, & gadres oste stark,
& chaces kỳng Knoute in tille Danmark.
Whan þe Danes were out, þat timbred him his tene,
Lỳndeseie he destroied quite alle bidene.
It was þam self to wite, þei lete of him so lite.
e wrong was alle þairs, þe kỳng did bot right.

¶ Whan

¶ Whan þe kýng wende, þat pes suld forþe go,
þe fals Erle Edrik bigan eft a wo.
Tuo old gentille men Edrik did forfare,
þe ton hight Sigiferd, þe toþer Sir Morgare,
For couetise of þer londes, & seignorie þat þei helde,
& for þei were a partie smýten in to elde.
þe fals Edrik did lede Sigiferde's wife
Unto Malmcestre, hir name was Aldife.
Edmunde Irenside, Eilrede's sonne,
þat euer in þis lond stille wild he wonne,
Of þis ilk treson he herd oft speke,
& of fals Edrik faýn wild he him wreke.
He toke Sigiferde's wife, withouten his fader leue,
& wedded hir at þe kirke, Edrik forto greue.
Whan he had hir wedded, he went also quik,
& oute of alle þo londes he kast þe erle Edrik,
Of alle þat tenement, þat boþe þe brethres ware,
þat longed to Sigiferd, & to Sir Morkare.

De Edmundo Irenside.

NOW is Eilred our kýng fallen in sekenes,
He lies at Euesham, his abbaý it es.
His eldest sonne Edmunde knýghtes gode he sekes,
Fro Douere vnto Wales þe folk tille him mekes.
& þe erle Edrik he gadred mýkelle pride,
Knýghtes & serganz on Lýndesaý side.
Forto slo Edmunde þorgh tricherie,
Bot Edmunde es wele warned of his felonie.
Edmunde bi messengers þe erle he diffies,
Edrik in tille Danmark to Knoute sent spies,

For to

For to com tille Inglond sone suld he assaỳ,
Arỳued þat he ware of ȝole þe tuelft daỳ.
Knoute bi his sonde Edrik ageỳn grette,
To arỳue he suld fonde þe daỳ þat he him sette.

COMEN is Knoute to cuntre, to ride he him hastis,
Man & woman to slo, he robbes & wastis.
A gode erle of Warwik was don to þe suerd,
þorgh þat fals Edrik, als he did Sigiferd.
Eilred was led to London, & seke gan þer lie.
Edmunde praied him of help priuely bi spie.
Londreies inow com tille Edmunde,
& wastid alle & brent Leicestre alle doun.
Bot þe fals Edrik did his quaintise,
þat Edmund with Knoute mette in non wyse.
¶ Knoute & Edrik þei seised þorgh tresone
Bokỳngham & Bedford, þe toun of Huntỳngtone,
Lincolne & Notỳngham, þe toure of Northampton.
Siþen went to Donkastre & vntille Aluerton,
& alle Northumberland it was at þer wille.
Edmunde & þe erle Uctred þat tỳme held þam stille.
To London vnto Eilred hasted þei þer weie,
For bodword men brouh, þe kỳng suld sone deie.
Whan Edrik wist Edmond to London was gone,
His londes & his rentes he seised eft ilkone.
Eilred at London endid his life,
Auht & þrittỳ wynter he regned with strife.
þat tỳme he died in peỳn & in wo,
þe date was a þousand & sextene mo.

De traditione Edrik.

Mortuus est Eilredus rex anno Domini millessimo. xvi°.

Now

Knoutus rex Daciæ factus est rex Angliæ.

NOW is Eilred biried, þat mẏkelle wo bade.
þe clergie & þe baronage samned at a reade,
& com to Southampton, & corouned Sir Knoute.
þe burgeis of London were wroþe & stoute,
& said þei suld fond to felle Knoute's pride.

Edmundus Irenside coronatus apud London.

Þei corouned for enuẏ Edmunde Irenside.
Þerof were þei paied alle þe North cuntre,
þe com alle to London to mak him feaute.
Knoute gadred him an oste, on Edmunde he ran,
& Edmunde on him ageẏn, as a douhtẏ man,
& trauailed sore Knoute, neuer he blanne,
Whan wend haf left, Edmunde biganne.
Tuo ȝere þei werred with manẏ trauailes,
In þo tuo ȝeres were sex grete batailes.
In the sex batailes was manẏ a man slaẏn.
At þe last þei acorded, þe lond was fulle fayn.
Edmunde of þe lond had þe haluendele,
He regned bot tuo ȝere, no more his tẏme felle.

Mortuus est Edmundus Irenside Anno. M°. XVIII°.

He lies at Glastenbire toumbed, as I wene,
þe date of Criste a þousand & mo bi auhtene.

WHAN God had don his wille of Edmunde Irenside,
Knoute vnto London com with grete pride.
He asked þe barons in þat parlement,
If he schewed a þing, oþerwaies he ment:
If Edmunde þe kẏng, whan to acorde went,
If he saued to his heẏers oiþer lond or tenement.
Ilkon said, þat Edmunde þe kẏng
Spak no word þer of, at þer sauhtillẏng.

Whar-

Wharfor þe barons granted him ilkone,
Knoute to be corouned, & haf it alone.

WHAN Knoute had resceẏued boþe þe seignories,
He parted þe lond in foure parties.
Alle þe West cuntre him seluen he held,
Fals Edrik gaf he Lẏndeseie of Lẏncolne þe scheld.
Vnto þe erle Thurkille he gaf Estangle,
Northfolk & Southfolk, ficacie men Iangle.
To þe erle Uctred Northumberland he toke,
þe pes to maẏntene þe suore alle on þe boke.
¶ þan tok kẏng Knoute alle his homages,
þat cleẏmed to hold of him þer heritages.
Edmunde had a sonne, & childre no mo.
þorgh Edrike's conseile Knoute did him slo,
& tok quene Emme & wedded hir to wife,
þorgh Edrike's conseile, scho scorted his life.
¶ Knoute on a day bi his wife satte,
Of Edrike's treson scho warned him of þat.
" Listen me, lord Knoute, if it be þi wille,
" How he betraied mẏ lord, & mẏ sonne fulle ille.
" Whilom Eilred mẏ lord he him bitraist to ȝow,
" & mẏ sonne Edmunde þorgh treson he slouh,
" & if he regne long he salle haf þe same,
" He was neuer with no man, þat he ne did him schame.
¶ þe kẏng one on þe morn went to London,
His ȝole forto hold was his encheson.
Knoute þouht on̄ þat tale, þat his wife him told,
& siþen ateẏned Edrik þorgh treson of old.

Knoutus regnavit per totum.

þe fer þe day of þe fest, no lenger it was,
Edrik was hanged on̄ þe toure, for his trispas.
þan said þe quene, " þat Edrik þe Giloure
" Had not fully dome, þat feile to tray̆toure.
" Tray̆tours with runties suld men first drawe,
" ȝa dame," said þe kyng, " bot he salle haf þe law,
" þat his body salle hang in colde & in hote,
" Schame tille alle his kynd, þat it sees & wote.

Knoutus divisit regnum filiis suis.

KNOUTE of his body gate sonnes þre,
Tuo bi tuo wifes, þe þrid in jolifte.
Bi þe first had he Suane, he was eldest broþer.
Bi Emme, þe second wife, Hardeknoute anoþer.
Harald he had geten on his play̆eng,
Knoute lufed him best, he was his derlyng.
Olaf in Norweie regned fulle stoute,
& bare him ouer strange to þe kyng Knoute.
Knoute com with his kythe, þat kant was & kene,
& chaced him out of Norweie quyte & clene.
þan was he kyng of Danmark, Inglond & Norweie,
Danmark was his heritage, he conquered þe toþer tueie.
Malcolme, þe Scottis kyng, þat tyme died he,
Mathithade his broþer resceyued þe regante.
Knoute as for his chefe he tok his homage,
Of þe kyngdom of Inglond he had þe heritage.
Knoute vnderstode wele, he mot not long lyue,
His sonnes in his lyue his londes wild he gyue.
Suane gaf he Norweie, (Olaf he chaced oute)
Danmark his heritage he gaf tille Hardeknoute.

He

He assigned Harald to Inglond, to had it in fee.
þus he gaf his londis tille his sonnes þre.
Seuentene ȝere was he kýng þorgh conquest & desceit,
At Westmýnstere he ligges in a toumbe purtreit.
A thousand was þe date & sex & þrittý, Anno. M°. XXXVI°.
Whan Knoute kýng died, so sais þe storý.

HARALD was curteýs & strong, of bodý auenant, Haraldus rex.
To be þer kýng & hede þe lond was wele ogrant.
Hardknoute of Daunmark paýd not withalle,
þat he suld bere þe coroune, for he was born thralle,
He gadred of Danes folk right inouh,
& did him toward þe se, & tille þis lond drouh.
Whan he was arýued, he sent to Harald,
& said, þat a bastard no kýngdom suld hald,
Bot if þat he it wan with suerd or with lance
Of tirant or of Sarazin, þorgh douhtýnes of chance.
& if he wille þe lond ȝeld, & to þe pes chese,
For he is mý broþer, he salle not alle lese;
& if he wille þorgh bataile, þer to wille I stand,
& bataile bituene vs wille not be semand.
Harald was fulle, a lone daý he toke,
To here what þe barons þam boþe wild loke.
¶ Vnder Southamptone was þer assemble, Parliamentum suum est.
Of Harald & Hardknoute, what suld bituex þam be.
For þei were breþer, þe luf was more sene,
þe barons portiond þe lond euen þam bituene,
Harald tille his parte suld haf alle þe Northende,
& alle þe Southside tille Harknout suld wende.

To þat ilk lokýng boþe þei consent,
In luf þei departed, Hardknout home went.

IN þat týme, þat Harald & Hardknout held partie,
Died þe duke Roberd, þat regned in Normundie.
William was his heire, resceýued þe heritage,
þat we kalle þe bastard, þat sette vs in seruage.
Richard was Roberd fader, þe duke þat died beforn,
Emme þe quene his douhter, of þe whilk was born
Alfred & Edward, Hardknoute þe þrid,
þe tuo first of Eilred, of Knoute Hardknoute tid.
Alfred & Edward, þam of Eilred kam,
Wer with duke Roberd, now ere þei with William.
þo childre tok to rede, to com vnto þis lond,
To speke with þer moder, at Wýnchester þei hir fond.
Alfrede was eldest, non mot his wille withhald,
To London he wild alle gate, to speke with kýng Harald.

De obcecacione Alfredi fratris Edwardi, & morte ejus.

Godwýn, an erle of Kent, met with Alfred,
Him & alle his feres vntille prison þam led.
Of som smote of þer hedes, of som put out þer iȝene,
Sex hundreth at Gildford did Godwýn slo & pýne.
Alfred he was led to þe abbaý of Elyng,
Bifor Godwýn himseluen þei did his iȝene out þring.
He lýued bot þre daies, & ȝald to God þe gaste,
þe bode com to his moder, scho did Edward in haste
Wende to Normundie, for drede of Alfred pýne,
To William, hir broþer sonne, was Edwarde's kosýne.
Edward told William of Alfred alle þe case,
& praied him of help, for he dred harder pase,

&

& if he mỳght conquere Inglond, þat was his speỳre,
Edward sikerd him wele, to mak William his heỳre,
& bond him with skrite, his seale bỳngand þerbi,
& William hette him wele, to help him sikerlỳ.

De ingra i tudine & malicia Haraldi.

NOW duelles Harald þe kỳng among his baronage,
Tille Emme, Hardknoute's moder, he did a grete outrage,
His broþer a foule despite, him self vileỳn skandre.
He chaced hir out of þe lond, & scho went vnto Flandres.
Unto þe erle Baldwỳn, for scho was of his kỳnde.
He resceỳued hir fulle faire inouh, he did hir fỳnde
To brige in to Danmark, þer Hardknout was kỳng.
Of Inglond & of Flandres brouht men him tiþing,
How kỳng Harald chaced his moder of lond.
What skille he had & whi Herdknout ȝerned to fond.
Now [1] Hardwnout toward Flandres dightes him daỳ bi daỳ.
þat tỳme at Westmỳnstir Harald sore seke laỳ,
Died & was þer laid, als mỳ boke me told.
Fỳue ȝere was he kỳng, & sex & fiftỳ old.
þe date of Criste þan was a þousand & fourti,
Harald for his trespas ȝit felle a vilanỳ.

Mortuus est Haraldus.
Hardeknoutus obtinuit regnum anno [2] M° L. VI°.

NOW is kỳng Harald dede, þat whilom was so stoute,
þe barons sent Flandres vnto Hardeknoute,
& praied him com to lond, þe coroune if he wild take,
If he wild vnderstond, non oþer kỳng wild þei make.

---

[1] Sic. [2] L. M°. XL°.

Whan he wist þer wille, he hasted him þider suiþe.
þei gaf him þe coroune, & were of him fulle bliþe.
He studied, how he mýght venge his moder despite,
He did Harald bodý do drawe vp also tite,
& þorgh þe podels it drouh, þat foule were & deppest,
& siþen in to Temse his bodý did he kest.
þat fischid in Temse on þe nýght, whan þei þer nettes vp wond,
þe bodý of Harald in a nette þei fond.
þei durst it not forth schewe, for þe kýng wer þei ferd.
Som frendes he had, þat biried it in kirke ȝerd.

HARDEKNOUT did charge þe lond in suilk treuwage,
þat noiþer erle no barone mýght lýue for taliage.
So þat alle þe comonalte had him ageýn herte,
þat were to him so fre, forþouht it sore & smerte.
Hardknoute wex fulle wroth toward Godwýn of Kent
For his broþer Alfred, þat he slouh & schent,
& to þe bisshop Alfrik, þat was his conseilere.
þei dred þe kýng folle sore, for he was fulle austere.
þe erle had frendes, to acorde þei gaf him þe weie.
þe erle was fulle quaynte, did mak a riche galeie
With fourscore armed knýghtes, in suilk apparaille dight,
þat so riche armes was neuer sene with sight.
& ilk knýght bare on̄ his arme, be redý acounte,
Also mýkelle brent gold, as sextene vnce amounte.
Withouten alle þis a hundreth knýghtes he toke.
Befor þe kýng & þe barons he suore on̄ þe boke,
þat neuer Alfred his broþer þorgh him was dede,
No blýnfeld no slaýn, bot þorgh Haralde's rede.

þei

þei said he did inouh, þe erle alle vplift,
þe kýng forgaf his wraþe, resceýued his gift.
¶ In Saýnt Edwarde's life it sais, he was forsuorn.
Bifor Edward himself he strangled & was lorn.
& I salle telle þat tale, or I ferrer go,
How falsnes brewes bale with him, and maný mo.
In S. Edward týme þe erle suld with him ete,
A seruitour þer was, þat serued at þe mete,
He stombled at a chance, & felle on his kne,
þorgh þe toþer schank he ros, & serued in his degre.
" A ha!" said þe erle, " had þat schank ne bien,
" þou had liggen þer stille, þe risen suld non haf sene.
" God wote, said þe king, so is it with me nouh,
" & I had mý broþer Alfred, þat þou slouh,
" þof I had stombled þorgh mýn vnmaýn,
" He suld haf bien mý schank, & reised me agaýn.
" þan hopes þou," said þe erle, " þat for me was he dede.
" I praýe God if it wer so I strangle of þis brede.
& putte a morselle in his mouth with þat ilk worde,
Bifor þe kýng & þam alle he strangled at þe borde.
þe kýng biheld him a stound, & sauh no repentance,
He bad drawe awaý þat hound, God has taken vengeance.

Narratio de vita Sancti Edwardi, de comite Godwino qualiter strangulatus fuit propter falsum juramentum.

WHAN Harknout & þe erle wer at an assent,
þorgh alle his lond þe kýng his sonde sent,
Forto reise þe treuage, þat on þe lond was sette,
Pader & Thurston to þat office were fette.
þe folk of Wircestre ageýn þe treuage spak,
Bituex þam & þe messengers broþefulle wordes brak.

Pader & Thurston þer hedes þer þei left.
þe kýng [1] Burd send oþer to ask treuage eft.
þe kýng sone herd saý, his messengers were slaýn,
Toward Wircestre he com with mýght & maýn,
& comanded all þo, þat euer lufed him wele,
Alle Wirecestreschire spare it neuer a dele,
Noiþer man no beste, no manere no no toun.
þe cite of Wircestre þei brent euen doun.
Alle þei wasted quitelý, & slouh þe folk fulle ȝerne,
Bot þo þat fled with þer godes to þe [2] ilde of Seuerne,
& þat wer in þe ilde duelled þer for drede,
Untille þe kýng turned, & his wrath ouer ȝede.

Hic venit Edwardus ad curiam Hardknouti.

¶ Right als Hardeknout had left alle þat folie,
Com Edward, Eilred sonne, out of Normundie,
& Hardeknoute's broþer oñ his moder side,
Right heýre of þe lond, þorgh grace þat maý betide.
Edward was welcom tille Hardeknoute þe kýng,
He bad his wille suld be, als his in alle þing.
Here now of Hardeknoute, how he endid his life.
Tille a duke of Danes he gaf his douhter to wife.
þe bridale was holden at þe maner of Lambithe.
After mete in þe haule þe kýng mad alle blithe.
In alle his joý makýng, among þam ilkone,
He felle dede doun colde as aný stone.
þei bare him to Wýnchester, & biried him þore.
Tuo ȝere & a half he regned, & no more.

[1] *Alii* Thurum *vocant. Vide Flor. Wig. pag.* 403. *ed.* 4to.

[2] Civium vero multitudo in quandam modicam insulam, in medio Sabrinæ fluminis sitam, quæ Beuerege nuncupatur, confugerant: *&c. Flor. Wig.*

A þousand was þe date, & tuo & fourtỳ.
I trowe it was for vengeance, he died so sodenlỳ.

ALLE þe baronage at Pask afterward,
Com to Wỳnchester to coroune kỳng Edward,
Als he þat had gode right vnto þe regalte,
In Inglond was non so right heỳre as he.
Whan he had regned fỳue, & wele was aboue,
Suane þe kỳng of Danmark sent to him for loue,
& praied him for his nauỳ to help him with summ,
Bataile was gỳuen in þe se, ageỳn þe kỳng Magnum,
þat was kỳng of Norweie, with wrong gan him trauaile.
Edward sent him fiftỳ schippes, to help at his bataile.
For alle þe help þat he had, Magnus on him so ran,
& chaced awaỳ Suane, & Danmark on him wan.
Bot þis ilk Magnus lỳued þer no longe.
Eft Suane, þe Danes kỳng, þis lond did vnderfonge,
& eft vntille Edward Suane sent ageỳn,
& praied him bituex þam þe pes wer certeỳn.
Edward him granted, opon̄ suilk a wise,
þat neuer þe Dangilde for ne non of hise,
Suld be chaleuged for man of Danes lond,
& Suane, kỳng of Danmark, to þat conant him bond.
þus was þe pes granted with skrite on̄ boþe sides,
& þe Danes gilde forgỳuen, þat neuer eft bitides.

Coronacio Sancti Edwardi.

IN þis Edwarde's tỳme a riche erle þan was,
þat hight Godwỳn of Kent, I red him ore in pas.

De comite Godwino & Haraldo filio ejus.

He

He had a sonne Harald, heyre of his tenement.
Engle his wife he drofe away, & held in peyrment.
Egyne, þat was an abbes, out of hir hous had
Maugre hire wille in hordom his life with hir lad.
Ageyn the kyng Edward, & of his to wynne,
Godwyn þe Erle to werre wild bigynne.
Harald & Lofwyn, þise were his sonnes tueye,
Douhty knyghtes þei were, after salle we seye.
Godwyn sent for frendes, knyghtes he had inowe,
þe kyng was at Gloucestre, & þiderward þei drowe.
Whan Edward perceyued, his herte was in studie,
How þat werre bigan oñ him so sodanly.
þe kyng gared his folk, on haste alle þat he myght.
þe erle in his askyng had no maner right.
Wherfor þe erle of Ba did Gowyn understand,
To leue alle his werre, & take þe lawe of land.
" At London at þe benke schewe þer þin askyng,
" Alle þat lawe wille, þou wynnes it of þe kyng.

THE kyng com to London, with lawe to mote in benke,
Men sauh oñ þe kynge's side þer was no gile, no wrenke;
& for he had þe treuth, oñ his side were þe mo,
& Godwyn perceyued wele, oñ his side were bot fo.
þerfor Godwyn & his fro London went away,
He stode vntille no more, defaute he mad þat day.
þerfor was þe dome gyuen þorgh þe Justise,
To exile þe erle Godwyn, his sonnes & alle hise.

Godwyn

Godwỳn went to Flandres, vnto þe erle Baldwỳn.
At Bristow in tille Ireland schipped Harald & Lofwỳn.
¶ Whan þe erle was exiled, his sonnes tille Irland ouer,
William þe Normant arỳued vp at Douer,
In luf & in pes to speke with Sir Edward.
He had bien in his courte, whan his happe was more hard.
He resceỳued him with joỳ, & with herte fulle glad.
To se þe lond about þe duke with him he lad.
Whan he had soiorned long, & was in wille to go,
Gode giftes he him gaf, or þat he went him fro.
So þat alle of his were paied of þer parte.
With joỳ alle ageỳn þei went to Normundie.
¶ Thus Harald & Lofwỳn, þat out of lond were drỳuen,
With grete oste of Ireland at Chestre vp arỳuen.
Dorseth & Somerseth þei robbed & did wo,
Of knỳghtes & serganz þei slouh þrittỳ & tuo.
Whan þei had so robbed, þat þam þouht inouh,
þei went ageỳn to schip, & saile vp drouh.
Toward þe South side turned þei þar flete,
þar fader & þei o chance togider gan mete.
Godwỳn & his sonnes at Sandwỳch hauen hent,
Lettres tille his frendes for help about sent,
Of socour & conseile bisouht þam pitously,
Of manỳ had he grante, to ask for him mercỳ.
¶ Whan þe kỳng wist, þat þei had taken land,
For þo barons he sent þat were his wele willand.
& for þe longe duellỳng of barons in þe waỳ,
Godwỳn, þat non wist, arỳued in Surraỳ.

Willelmus, dux Normanniæ, venit in Angliam ad Sanctum Edwardum Regem.

þe

þe kỳng also suiþe ta bataile mad him ȝare.
Godwỳn he diffied, & alle þat with him ware.
Grete wer þo parties, þat ferd in to þe felde.
Eldolf, bisshop of Bath, þe pes maỳntend & helde.
Eldolf, þe gode bisshop, com with his clergie,
& said to kỳng Edward, " Sire, we þe mercỳ crie
" For þe erle Godwỳn, þat wille ȝeld him to þe.
" His sonnes er at þi wille, & alle þat with þam be.
þe barons said, " for þare sake, for þam þan praỳe we,
" þare trespas we vndertake opon alle our fee.
& þe erle com him self, mercỳ forto craue,
þe kỳng, for his curteỳsie, granted þam pes to haue,
& gaf him ageỳn boþe rent & lond,
Harald & Lofwỳn to þe pes þam bond.
Bot Suane, þare broþer, þat died in Lumbardie,
For he slouh his cosỳn, he fled þorgh felonie.
He went to þe holỳ lond, to do þerfor penance,
& died þer for colde in Lumbardie o chance.

De Regina Edith.

THE kỳng wedded a wife, þat Godwỳn douhter was.
Scho soiorned at Romeneie, for hir fader trespas.
þe erle bisouh þe kỳng, to take hir home ageyn.
þe kỳng granted þat þing, to mak pes alle pleỳn.
þe erle vnto þe kỳng bare him siþen so wele,
& his sonnes boþe tille him war trost als stele,
Sithen in alle his courte were non so wele him with,
þei halp him at þare mỳght to maỳnten pes & grith.

On

ON þe Wissondaỳ at Burgh in Lỳndeseie
Com bode to þe kỳng, & þus gan þei seie,
þat þe duke Siward [1] had taken in his balie
Machog, þe Scottes kỳng, þat wild, þorgh traitourie,
Haf traised Edward þe kỳng, þat in þe North was rife.
þerfor Machog les þe reame & his life.
He gaf it to Malcolme, þat was of Cumberland.
þorgh gift of Edward he seised it in his hand.
Malcolme mad homage tille Edward our kỳng,
þat he & alle his age of Ingland suld hold þat þing.

GRIFFỲN, kỳng of Wales, þat ilk self ȝere
Was proued traitoure fals, & þat bouht he fulle dere.
Opon þe tuelft euen Griffỳn his hede les,
To Gloucester was it brouht befor þe kỳng at des.
Edward had a kosỳn in preson at Hungarie,
Edmunde, his broþer sonne, was þer þorgh tricherie.
þe kỳng sent to frendes for him alle aboute,
For praier at þe last þe childe was laten oute.
Home vnto Inglond þe childe tille Edward cam,
& for þat childe's luf forgeten was William.
þouht he not of þe trouth, þat he to William plight,
For to mak him his heỳre, if he þe lond haf mỳght.
Neuerþeles to William he ȝeld him wele his bone,
Of þis no more to speke, þe childe died right sone.
Algar, an erle of [2] Kent, þat tỳme exiled was;
Mỳ boke sais with wrong, he did no trespas.

Griffynus de Wallia bellum movit contra Edwardum Regem.

[1] *Vide Johan. Forduni Scotichron. p.* 396. [2] *Others say, he was earl of Chester. See p.* 121. *of Mr. Thomas Ellis's Ed. of*

He went in to Wales to Griffŷn, Griffŷn sonne,
Haraldus factus est dux turmarum apud Walliam. þese tuo a werre als Walsch men er wonne.
¶ Whan Edward hard saỳ, he samned alle his oste.
Harald, Godwŷn sonne, led þam bi þat coste.
At Herford in Wales þe ostes þer mette,
& dight on̄ boþe parties in batailes to sette.
Harald & his Inglis biheld þe erle Algare,
þam forþouht fulle sore, þat he suld þore misfare.
þis wald þe Inglis conseile, if þei mot Algare saue,
For him þei suld biseke, þe kỳnge's pes to haue.
þe Inglis com to þe kỳng, þer he was in place,
& specially Harald, he had þe kỳnge's grace.
On̄ þe erle Algare had þe kỳng mercie,
& forgaf Sir Griffŷn also for curteisie.

WHAN þat kỳng Edward wend to lỳue in pes,
Griffŷn, kỳng of Wales, eft he mad a res.
He com vnto Herford, & slouh þe bisshop Ligere,
Spared noiþer preste no clerk, to dede alle ȝede in fere.
Kirkes & houses brent, nouht þan wild he spare.
þer þe Inglis had bigged, he mad it wast & bare.
De rege Scotorum. ¶ Malcolme of Scotland kỳng ȝit on̄ Inglond ran,
þe kỳng had him auanced, he was an vnkỳnd man.
Northumberland he brent, & wasted þat he fond.
Kirkes non wild he spare of S. Cutberte's lond.
þe bisshop sent to þe kỳng, for socour him bisouht.
Whan Malcolme herd it saỳ, no more skaþe he wrouht.

---

of part of Dr. Powell's History of Wales. *But it should be rather,* earl of Mercia. *See Dugdale's Baronage, Tom. I. p.* 10.

¶ þe

¶ þe kýng did samen his men, to abate Griffýn's pride,
& Harald þam bitauht ageýn þe Walsch to ride.
" Do him vnto þe suerd, withouten jugement,
" If ȝe maý Griffýn take bitýme at auý went.
Harald went to Wales, his was fulle fre,
& whan he com þer, Griffýn was passed þe se
Unto Irland, þan comandid Harald
þo londes to destroie, þat Griffýn þer gan hald.
His tounes forto brenne, þe houses doun to breke,
& destroie þat kýnde, þat ouht to him couth speke.
¶ Harald þe Walschmen did þam ilkon suere,
þat to kýng Edward faýthe þei suld alle bere.
Siþen to Rotland he went, & exiled Griffýn þore,
Him & alle his heýres for þat týme euer more.
¶ Griffýn com ageýn, whan Harald home was went,
þe folk priuelý of Wales mad þer a parlement.
þei said, þat Sir Griffýn with right he was outlawed,
& Edward of Inglond had þam so gate awed,
þei said, " we wille no more, his vengeance is ȝit hote.
þei toke þer Sir Griffýn, & of his hede þei smote,
& sent it kýng Edward, & presented him with þat
Right at Glastenbiri, at his mete þore he sat.

GRIFFÝN had tuo breþer, Bleoth & Ruthe Walan.
þo tuo were with þe kýng, whan he oñ Griffýn kan. De fratribus Griffini & filio ejus.
þerfor vnto þam tuo he gaf Griffýn's feez.
For South Wales holý þei mad þe kýng feautez.

Harald

Harald to Wales went, vnto [1] Portastiche.
Wrightes he did make, haules & chambres riche,
Whan Harald or þe kýng wild com þider eftsons
In þe týme of gese, to tak þam venýsons.
Karaduk, Griffýn sonne, he fordid þo wones.
He com þider on nýght, þe wrightes slouh at ones,
& alle þat he mot gete, he robbed & reft,
Pený no penýworth, no þing he no left.
In þat ilk týme, þat þis was beten doun,
Harald tille his fader went to Southampton.
For Dunstan, Agilet sonne, wild greue Sir Godwýn,
For Gospatrik was slaýn, þei blamed him þer in.
Mý boke tellis naý, Godwýn did him no dere.
It sais þe quene Egýn, þe blame suld scho bere.
Scho did slo Gospatrik, withouten aný skille,
Tostus of Cumbirland retted Godwýn þer tille.
Tostus of Cumbirland he was chefe Justise,
Ageýn þe erle Godwýn he gert sette assise.
Gospatrike's dede on Godwýn wild he venge,
Harald souht Tostus, to leue þat ilk chalenge.
He praied him for luf, in pes lat him be stille,
& kisse & be gode frende in luf & in a wille.
Tostus wild not leue, bot held on his manace,
& Harald tened withalle, of lond he did him chaee.

De contumelia Dunstani, filii Agilet.

---

[1] *Vulgo*, Port Skeweth. Portascith *autem Florentio, sub A. D.* 1065. *Neque discrepantia ulla in eximio nostro Florentii Codice Langbainiano.*

Tostus

TOSTUS ouer þe se went to S. Omere,
His wife & his meyne, & duelled þer þat zere
With þe erle Baldwyn, þe wynter alle plenere.
His londes he were gyuen to Morkar fitz Richere.
þe gode kyng Edward to London turnes he,
þe feste of zole to hold, with grete solempnite,
At Saynt Petir mynstere, þat he did sette & wirke,
On Saynt Steuen day he did halow þat kirke.
þe kyng fro day to day he heuyed more & more,
Nerhand his endyng, sekenes greued him sore,
þe barons before him kald, & said vnto þam alle,
" Tille Harald, Godwyn sonne, þe regne wille best falle.
Me meruailes of my boke, I trowe, he wrote not right,
þat he forgate Wiliam of forward þat he him hight.
Neuerles þe forward held what so was in his þouht,
I wote wele Criste it wild, þat Edwarde's wille wer wrouht.
Who so lokes his life, & redis his vision,
What vengeance ordeynd was on Inglond to be don
Of princes of þe lond, it sais of þam þis sawe,
þat þei dred no þing God, no zemed euenhed of lawe,
Bot felawes vnto þefes, to robbours of ilk cuntre,
þar wilkednes was fulfilled, venged behoued it be.
Prelates ne no prestes, non of þam lyued wele,
þe did not Godde's hestes, bot brak þam ilk a dele.
Licheros lif þei led, & þouht it in þar breste,
Holynes did away, of þe kirke gaf þei leste.
Edward God bisouht, þat it suld be forgyuen,
& amendid with penance, & þerof clene be scryuen

De Tosto de Cumberland.

De visione & morte Sancti Edwardi.

Of þat þat þei had don, & þat þat suld betide
To warne þam þerfro, & fle it on̄ ilk side.
Bot þis was ansuere ageyn, " a daẏ þer in salle falle,
" þare wiknes is fulfilled, þer in ere waxen [1] hard.
" God has sette þat ȝere, a daẏ þer in salle falle,
" þe Inglis salle go to suerd, to pyne þar soules alle.
" Dede & fire salle fede þe scheperdes & þare schepe.
þis vision is ȝit to drede, þink & gif Gode kepe.
¶ I trowe it is ouergone þorgh William conqueroure,
He com & slouh ilkone þo wikked men in stoure,
& sette vs in seruage, of fredom felle þe floure.
þe Inglis þorgh taliage lyue ȝit in sorow fulle soure.
Now is Edward dede, þe soner for þo affraẏes.
þre & tuenti ȝere, sex moneþes & seuenten daẏes
He regned in þis lond, þe date of God þan wex
A þousand, I fond, sexti ȝere & sex.

Haraldus factus est Rex.

AFTER Saẏnt Edward, Harald kẏng þei ches,
þorgh conseile of þam alle, & he þe scheld les
Right & in lawe, þe barons held him trewe.
Neuerles his falshed brouht vs sorowe alle newe.
Tostus, þat was exiled þorgh Harald ore I told,
He com out of Flandres, brouht an oste fulle bold.
Fro Sandwich to Lincolne Tostus ran,
Tresore alle & bestes he robbed ilk a man.
þat herd Harald, fulle kene he was & kof,
With folk out of þe South toward þe North drof.

---

[1] *Deest forsan* alle.

Tostus

Tostus herd it saỳ, þe best wild he do,
To Malcolme, þe Scottis kỳng, Tostus alied to.
Tostus tok his leue, arỳued in Norweie,
& how þe gamen ȝede lithe I salle ȝow seie.
In Norweie was a kỳng, mỳ boke tellis sua,
Saỳnt Onlaf broþer, Harald Heruegra.
He arỳued in Tỳne, bot sone he went ageỳn,
& smote iu tille Humber, his flete alle pleỳn
In an arme of Ouse vnder Ricalle laỳ,
On Saỳnt Mathew euen, on a Wednesdaỳ.

EDWỲN & Morkare, tuo lordes Kumberland,
To Harald & Tostus þei gaf bataile on hand.
Harald of Norweie had folk right inouh,
A hundreth & fiftỳ þe toþer side alle slouh.
Harald & Tostus vndir Ricalle so sped,
A hundreth & fiftỳ to ȝork ostage þei led.
Nouht þien fulle fer to þam com a tiþing,
þat Harald was comand, neulỳ was mad kỳng.
Of þat ilk tiþing Tostus was affraied,
& Harald Heruegra, I trow, was no þing paied.
þorgh a mede þei passed vnto Staunford brigge,
þar loges & þare tentis vp þei gan bigge.
¶ Whan Harald þider cam, & sauh alle þar manere,
Tille þam smertly he nam, displaied his banere.
In þe morning it was, he mette with his enmỳs,
& alle þe daỳ þei fauht, at euen he had þe pris.
Harald & Tostus boþe to dede ȝede,
þorgh Harald þe ȝong kỳng, of wham I salle rede.

Haraldus rex devicit bellum, occidit [1] Haraldum Tostum apud Staynford brigge.

[1] *Sic.*

Listen & I salle rede, whẏ þe misauentoure
On Harald side gan sprede, þorgh William conqueroure.

THE duke of Normundie, William is his name,
Wolnoth, Haralde's broþer, he had in prison at Kame,
& his neuow Hakon in prison was him with,
I ne wote for what roson so fer out of þer kith.
Harald whan he was ȝonge, he went vnto France,
þe cuntre forto se, & for to here of chance.
Alle his mishappẏng felle, he com in to Pountif,
To Richere þat was erle, men told it fulle rif.
þis lord of Pountif Richer le fitz Izoun
He tok þis ilk Harald, & did him in presoun.
þe bode of him sone kam to þe duke of Normundie,
þi duke went to Pountif, & toke him with maistrie,
& brouht Harald home, & said, þorgh curteisie,
" Harald haf now þin eẏse, in alle mẏ seignorie.
Now has Harald his eẏse at reson in alle þing,
þe meẏne in alle þing plesed him next þe kẏng.

Nota de Conquestore, & de causa conquestus.

¶ William & Harald went þam forto [1] palẏ,
Tales togider þei tald, ilk oñ a gode palfraẏ.
Whan þei had wele riden, þat þam þought right lang,
þei lighted & abiden biside a water stank.
" Harald, " said William, " listen to mẏ resoun,
" What right þat I haue of Inglond þe coroun
" After Edwarde's dede, if it so betide,
" That God haf ordeẏnd so I after him abide.
" Whan þat we were Edward þe king & I,
" He was in mẏ fader courte exiled, I ne wote whi,

[1] *Pro*, playẏ. " Out

" Out of Inglond, þan suore he to me,
" If he þe coroun mot wẏnne, his heẏre suld I be.
" þerof he mad me skrite, his hote to mak leale,
" & for to sikere his dede, set þer to his seale.
" Harald whan þou ses tẏme, do þi help þerto,
" I salle delyuer [1] þ broþer, & þi neuow also,
" & Marie mẏ douhter to wife I wille þe gẏue,
" A man I salle þe make, richelẏ forto lyue,
" Or mẏ chefe Justise, þe lawes to mend & right.
" þi sistere I salle gẏue a rich prince of mẏght.
¶ " Sire," said Harald, " I salle, if þat I maẏ,
" Help þe þe coroun to hald, & euer I se þat daẏ.
" Mẏ broþer delẏuer þou me, mẏ neuow þou me grante,
" & hold þi certeẏnte, & salle hold couenante."
þe presons forth were fette tille Harald or he foore.
To hold þat he had hette, on̄ þe boke he suore.
Now gos he home Harald, & has ouercomen his tene,
þe oþe þat he suld hold, it is forgeten clene.

EDWARD is dede, allas! messengers ouerwent
To William. Harald was, þorgh comon assent,
[2] Was" corouned noblẏ, & for kẏng þei him helde,
Bot þe duke of Normundie to William felle þe schelde.
¶ þe duke wrote to þe kẏng, in luf withouten loth,
Bisout him ouer alle þing, þat he wild hold his oth,
& ȝeld him þe coroun of Inglond ilkadele,
Or Marie to warisoun wed hir, & joẏ it wele;
& if he wild not so, he suld mak him oknowen,
He suld wynne it for do in right as for his owen.

[1] *Pro,* þi. [2] *Redundat.*

Harald wrote ageyn, & said he neuer þouht,
Marie to wedde certeyn, þe lond hight him nouht.
& if he wild it wynne with dynt, als duke hardie,
He suld fynd þerinne kyng Harald redie.

Ecce mira. ¶ ȝit is [1] Halald, I say, regnand in myght & mayn,
þe kyng of Norway in bataile has he slayn.
þe duke forgeten is he of þing, þat Harald hette,
Now is he in þe see with saile oñ mast vpsette.
Toward þis lond þei drouh, to auenture his chance,
With Normandes inouh, of Flandres & of France.
He had redy sailyng, þat to þe lond him ledde,
& at his riuyng þe lond non him forbedde.
His folk went vpto lond, him seluen was þe last,
To bank ouer þe sond, plankes þei ouer kast.
Als William þer on suld go, he stombled at a nayle,
Into þe waise þam fro he tombled top ouer taile.
His knyghtis vp him lyft, & did him eft atire,
William was oglyft, his helm was fulle of myre,
William was not paied, þat falle mad him ofright,
He stode alle dismaied, þan said tille him a knyght,
" Discomfort no þing þe, so faire happe neuer þou fond,
" Stoupe & þou may se, þi helm has wonne lond.
" þat þe lond is þin, þi helm schewes it þe,
" Forsuorn is Haraldyn, he salle no dure.

Bellum inter Haraldum & Willelmum Conquestorem.

WHAN William alle was dight & to þe boun
Redy with him to fight, he forid Harald fulle sone.

[1] Sic.

He

He fond fulle wele & sone, þat Harald nouht ne slepe,
To proue with dede to done fulle wakand oñ him lepe.
To bataile haf þei mẏnt Harald & William,
Bot non stode Harald dẏnt, þat bifor him kam.
þe rouht of þare rascaile he did it rere & rẏme,
Normanz & Flemmẏng taile he kutted manẏ tẏme.
To while þat he was fresch þei fond him fulle austere,
þei felt of his pruesse, als knẏght did his deuere.
For he was ouer prest, & egre to assaile,
He wild haf no rest, tille he mẏght trauaile.
Allas! for [1] for" Sir Harald, for him was mikelle reuth,
Fulle wele his awen suld hald, if he had kept his treuth.
Bot þat he was forsuorn, mishappẏng þerfor he fond,
Suld he neuer els haf lorn for William no lond,
Ne bien in þat bondage, þat brouht was ouer þe se,
Now erc þei in seruage fulle fele þat or was fre.
Our fredom þat daẏ for euer toke þe leue,
For Harald it went awaẏ, his falshed did vs greue.
He was so fer in presse, so fele wer him about,
Him befor alle þei ches, þat he suld not skape out.
Normanz & Burgolons, with lance, suerd & mace,
Bare Sir Harald doun, allas! he had no grace.
So douhtẏ knẏght of dede was non of noiþer sides,
þore to dede he ȝede, als man forsuorn betides.
Nien monethes beforn kept Harald þe regalle
Bot þat he was forsuorn, þerfor he lost alle.
Out of þe stoure þat stode tuo men askaped ware
Of Sir Haralde's blode, Eadwẏn & Morkare.

Haraldus occisus est. regnavit novem menses & tres dies.

[1] *Redundat.*

þei toke þe quene Edith, for doute of treson,
Was kyng Edwarde's wif, led hir to Kelion.
Wele was scho þer, to hold priue soiorne.
Eadwyn & Morkare to London gan þei turne,
Vnto þe Londreis þei told, þat þei had fonden an hayre,
Was Edmund kosyn þe kyng, þe Londreis wer in speyr,
Him for þar kyng vplift, his name was kald Edgar.
For William þei were oglift, & said, " þat we ne dar.
" For slayn is kyng Harald, & in lond may non be,
" Bot of William hald for homage & feaute.
Morkar recleymed es, as es þe faukon fre,
& Eadwyn com to pes, he mot no better se.
þe burgeis of London þar conseile wild it nouht,
To gif Edgar þe coroun, þat for heyr þei brouht.
William þe Conquerour to London has he þouht,
þer þe bataile was stoure an abbay wild he haf wrouht.
þer he & Harald mette, þer standes þe kirke,
For blode þat þer was gette, to praie þei suld not irke.
To London com William, his ȝole feste to hold,
His barons with him nam, knyghtes þat wer bold.
Wardeyns of tour & toun, & oþer þat ne wold
þer landes les alle doun, for tynt wer þei told.
To Frankis & Normanz, for þar grete laboure,
To Flemmynges & Pikardes, þat wer with him in stoure,
He gaf londes bityme, of whilk þer successoure
Hold ȝit þe seysyne, with fulle grete honoure.
Fair grace William fond, his chance fulle wele him satte,
þe reame of Inglond so graciously he gatte.

þe

þe archbisshop Stigand, of Inglond primate,
þat tỳme was suspended, þe pape reft him þe state.
& abbot & prioure, men of Religion,
& oþer men of honour, archdecane & person,
Wer priued of þar office, of woulfes had renoun.
For lichorie þat vice wer manỳ als don doun.
þe archbisshope of ȝork com with deuocioun,
þorgh William praiere, com to London toun,
Bifor þe barons brouht, he gaf William þe coroun.
To chalange was he nouht, Sir Stigand was don doun.
Whan William was coruned kỳng so solemply,
& had taken homage of barons bi & bi,
He turned ouer þe se vnto Normundi.
Dam [1] Helienore quene was sche, scho bare him companỳ.
Whan he had duelled þore at Pask he com ageỳn,
& dam Helianore with manỳ knỳght & sueỳn.
To London alle þei went þe courte holỳ alle pleỳn,
For þe archbisshop þei sent, messengers ȝede tueỳn.
Elred þe archbisshop of ȝork had þe se,
þe kỳng him bisouht, als clerk of dignite,
To coroune Helianore, þat biseke I þe. Helianora regina [2] coronate est.
þe bisshop corouned hir þore, bifor þat faire semble.
Whan þe folk had bien at þe coronment ilk dele,
Boþe þe kỳng & þe quene þe barons paied wele.
þe kỳng & þe clergie ordeỳnd þat ilk seele,
þe pes to ȝeme & gỳue with lawes trewe als stele.
Edmunde & [3] Edwỳn, Harald sonnes of Kent,
Alle Somersetschire þei wasted & brent,

[1] Matildin *appellant alii.* [2] *L.* coronata. [3] Godwỳn *aliis.*

Sir

Sir Adinoth þei slouh, & alle þat þei mot hent.
Whan þei had frauh inouh, ageyn tille Ireland went.
þe erle Robert Comyn, þe West had to welde,
þat non vnto William for no þing suld þam ȝelde.

Multæ adversitates.

WHAN þat kyng William þo tiþinges herd say,
To þe toun of Durham fulle fast he toke þe way.
þe bisshop to him said, [1] & told to him fulle tite,
þat þe Norreis purueied, to do him a despite.
For þat ilk tale, þat þe bisshop told,
þe Komyn had his bale, his lif was lightly sold.
þe lond of S. Cutbert he did serch þat nyght,
William alle apert his oste redy he dyght.
At þat þei mot fynd, to suerd alle þei ȝede,
& or Roberd wist, or þouht on̄ suilk a dede,
Ore was his hous on̄ fire, þer Sir Robert lay,
& brent Roberd to dede, bi þat it was day.
Now is þe Komyn dede, his haires has alle lorn,
William þam it forbede, þat held his londes beforn.

Ecce Danachi.

NOW William has soiorned, & slayn alle his enmys,
& to þe South is turned, als kyng þat wan þe pris.
Tiþynges com him fulle stoute, þat a grete oste & stark,
With Harald & with Knoute, þe kyng sonnes of Danmark,
Were aryued in Humbere, & an erle Turkille,
With folk withouten nombere, þe Norreis felle þam tille.

[1] *Vide Dugdalii Baronag. Tom. I. p. 54. Lelandi Coll. vol. II. p. 380. aliosque etiam Historicos nostros, qui secus atque noster rem narrârunt.*

Co-

Comen is þe erle Edgar with alle þo of his kẏnde,
Sir Wolnoth he is þar, þo with þat he mot fẏnde.
Marlesuaẏn Turkille sonne, & Suane a douhtẏ knẏght,
Of Scotland Gospatrik, with þam at alle his mẏght.
þe Normans in þe South wer in so grete affraẏ,
Of kastels & of touns þei com out alle daẏ,
To ȝork ran ilk a man, to rescet in þat toun,
þat no Danes man þe walles to breke doun.
Sir William Malet was wardeẏn of þe cuntres,
Sibrigh þe Gaunt was set with him to kepe þe fees.
þise tuo brouht tiẏng, þe wer comen bi þat coste,
þerfor William þe kẏng did turne ageẏn his oste,
& suore a grete othe, þat he suld neuer spare
Noiþer lefe no lothe northeren, what so þei ware.
¶ William turned ageẏn, & held þat he had suorn,
Alle mad he wasteẏn, pastur, medow & korn,
& slouh boþe fader & sonne, women lete þei gon,
Hors & hondes þei ete, vnneþis skaped non.
Whan þe Danes herd, þat William held his oth,
þat he with þe Norreis so ferd, spared lefe no loth,
Fulle quaintlẏ þei sent to William messengers,
Of pes þei mad present, to turne ilkon þer pers
Ageẏn to Danmark go with his wille & his leue,
þat he suld no mo slo, ne þei suld him not greue.

Ecce Danachi.

NOW duellis William eft, fulle bare mas manẏ wone,
Of gode men er non left, bot slaẏn er ilkone.
Clerkes vnneþis þei lete, to kirke o lẏue to go,
Horses & hondes þei ete for hunger & for wo.

Grete

Grete synne did William, þat suilk wo did wirke,
So grete vengeance he nam of men of holy kirke,
þat not did no wem, tille him ne no trespas,
Fro ȝork vnto Durhem no wonyng stede was.
[1] Nien ȝere, sais my buke, lasted so grete sorowe,
þe bisshop clerkes tuke, þar lyues forto borowe.
Seynt Cutberte's bones of fertre toke þei out,
With þam þei fled at ons in sere stedes about,
þat vengeance burd be don, als tellis S. Edward,
He sauh in a vision, þat vengeance suld falle hard
De Reliquiis Sancti Cuthberti. Of prestes & of clerkes, of princes of þe lond,
Of God ne of his werkes þei dred not þat þei fond.

---

[1] *Id quod etiam notat Joannes Rastellus, sive Rastallus, in Chronico suo, supra à me commemorato, libro sane rarissimo, mihi vero (pro more suo) perquam humaniter mutuo dato ab amicissimo nostro Murraio, cujus cum ulibi, tum jam supra etiam mentionem feci. Sic autem Rastellus:* ¶ Also about the. iii. yere of his [*Wyllyam Conquerour's*] rayne | Harrolde & Cauntus [*Sic*] sonnes to Suanus kyng of Denmarke enteryd into the North countrey | and with the helpe of some of the people of the contrey and of some of the cytezyns of yorke enteryd the citye | and slewe mo than. iii. M. Normans. But sone after kyng Wyllyam chasyd them out | and droue them to theyr schyppes and toke suche displeasure with the inhabytans of that prouynce | that he distroyed the lande from yorke to Durham | that. ix. yere after it lay vnlaboryd and vntylled | and the people there were kept so harde by the warre of the kynge | & in suche famyne that they ete rattes | cattes | dogges | and other vermyne.

Sege at Yorke.

Saynt

SAYNT Cutberte's clerkes in hidnes euer ȝede,
At Geruans [1] set þer merkes, a hous þe gan vpspede.
ȝit Northermore þei ȝed vntille Bethlyngton,
At Toghalle was þe þrid, & þer restid þam doun:
þe ferth was holy Eland, þer þe se it withdrouh,
þei ȝede oñ þe sand, to þat Ilde wele inouh.
Whan þei wer þerinne, of non had þei doute,
þe flode bigan to gynne, & klosed it aboute.
Siþen dred þei no þing, of þefe ne of feloun
þat were with þe kyng, Norman no Burgoloun.
þe kirke of Geruans þat ilk tyme was brent,
Durham þe same sans, alle to fire went.
þe croice & þe rode, right as Criste vs bouht,
Tille askes alle it ȝode, þe fire spared nouht.
þe Normans did it alle in þe guyse of theft,
þe godes þerof stal, no þing þei ne left.
¶ Whan William vnderstode, how his men ferd with alle,
Of holy kirke þe gode his serganz robbed & stal,
He comandid alle his, to mende þat trespas,
In alle maner wise, as it ore feffed was,
& oñ þe same asise serued & alowed
Of alle þe franchise, þat it are was dowed.
Bot of þat wikkednes, þat men suld haf wroken,
Was noiþer more no lesse of þer penance spoken.
þe bisshop brouh the bones ageyn vnto þe se,
Tille Durhame's wones, þer þei were wont to be.

Reliquiæ Sancti Cuthberti ad Durham ubi prius in feretro reconduntur.

[1] Vide Sim. Dunelm. p. 199. & Leland. Coll. Vol. II. p. 380.

Wil-

WILLIAM the Conquerour changis his wikked wille,
Out of his first errour, repentis of his ille,
& of his cruelties he gynnes forto assuage,
& gaf ageyn þo fees, of whilk he toke [1] ostages.
Gospatrik com tille hand, & left of his manage,
& William Comberland gaf him in heritage.
Gospatrik ȝed alle þorgh, his dedis forto praise,
þe kastelle of Bamborgh þe walles he did vpreise.
Malcolme, þe Scottes kyng, þerwith had envie,
þat Gospatrik of suilk þing bare his state so hie,
Dight him to Combirland, destroied about aywhare,
Ilkon he slouh at hand, þer godes away bare,
Many with him he led, & did þam in seruage,
In Scottland was alle spred mykelle of þat lynage.
¶ On þis Gospatrik William gan affie,
He dight also quik, & went Normundie.
Malcolme in Kumberland dos þat he may tille ille,
Gospatrik his willand lates him haf his wille.
þre þousand pounde Malcolme sent tille Gospatrik tresorie,
To William comyng þat went suld suffre his folie.
Litelle wend William of his trecherie,
A message tille him nam vnto Normundie,
Teld William eueridele of Malcolme robberie,
For silnere þat he toke suffred þe folk to die,
Gospatrik did not wele, maintend his partie.
William also suiþe dight him tille his nauie.

[1] *F.* ostage.

Wil-

WILLIAM has hauen nomen, & is at Southampton. Willelmus applicuit apud Hamptoniam.
þo þat with him er komen, erle knẏght & baron,
Went tille Comberland fulle suiþe opon haste,
þe cuntre þat þei fand alle was wilde & waste.
Malcolme fled beforn in mountaỳns & in plaỳn,
He wend for neuer more William suld com agaỳn.
No more did Gospatrik, þat did him þat disceit,
Bot comen is William quik, & sekes þam fulle streit.
Bi a side of Scotland Malcolme flies fer in,
Bot William Malcolme fand in þe toun of Abrenethỳn.
þer is Malcolme taken, & ȝolden to preson.
Siluer was not forsaken was giffen for his raunson.
To take he bed inouh, for at his wille he was.
William to do his prowe, forgaf alle his trespas.
Malcolme with skrite him bond, his heires of his lỳnage
To hold of Ingland for feaute & homage.
¶ Whan þe pes was siker, þe kỳng turned fulle suiþe,
Gospatrik þat suffred biker, he reft boþe lond & liþe.
Cumberland him reft, his oþer londes als,
þe lif ouer mỳkelle him left, for he was traitour fals.
Siþen to Durham went, þer he destroied þe see.
þe bisshop he bisouht, S. Cutberte's bones to see,
þe bisshop opned þe schrỳne, the bones þei vp raised.
þe kỳng wepte with his ine, that sight mỳkelle he praised,
& siluer grete plente opon the altere laid,
þer franchise gaf þam fre, þe whilk þat þei of said.
þe kastelle did he wirke of his tresore alle,
& S. Cutberte's kirke closed with a walle.

Siþen

Siþen he had þam turne to ȝork, & þer abide,
For þer he wild soiorne alle þe Whitsons tide.
¶ At ȝork did he crie, his pes suld holden be,
þat non did felonie bi land no bi se.
Siþen he ȝede to London, þat cite set to grith,
& to þe lawe alle bondon ilk man in his kith.
Chefe justise he satte, þe sothe to atrie,
For lefe no loth to lette þe right lawe to guẏe.
þe wronges to amend, & maẏnten þe right,
Ageẏn þe fals defend, þorgh dome of Justise sight.

De tribus monachis de Lyndsaẏ.

THAT tẏme þat I of saẏ of William þe kẏng,
þre monkes of Lyndsaẏ ȝede to seke wonẏng.
þe first dan Aldwẏn, þe toþer Elwẏn hight he,
þe þrid hight Reẏnfride, þus told mẏ boke to me.
Hughe le fitz Galdre, of ȝork he was Schirue,
He resceẏued alle þre, & heberd þam bileue.
After þer soiornẏng, whan þat þei suld wende,
He praied þam of alle þing, as gentille men & hende,
To haf saf condite, vnto þe New Kastelle.
& Hugh did as he hight, led þam sauely welle.
Fro þe New Kastelle vnto Geruans þei ȝede,
þer duelled þei non seel, to Durham gan þam spede.

Ædificaverunt ecclesiam & claustrum de Durham.

¶ Whan þei to Durham com to þe bisshop Waltere,
þer þei bigan a home of religiouse manere.
A closter þei bigan, þe bisshop þo þat wrought,
Hired ilk a man, & alle paied & bought.
Or it wer alle ent þe werke þat þei did wirke,
þei ordeẏnd a couent, to ministre in þat kirke.

" Help

" Help Ladý," said Waltere, " of þe þan is þis house
" þat are was prouendere, now is religiouse.
To ȝorke þe com aȝeýn, & wrouht þer worschiply
Cloistre with couent pleýn a kirk of our Ladý.

Ædificatur abbatia beatæ Mariæ apud Eboracum.

¶ Whan it was wrouht tille ende, þe monkes alle þre
To Whitbý gan wende, þat standis on̄ þe see.
þer wirke þei wild an abbeýe wele to preise
In wirschip of Saýnt Hilde, a kirke þei did vp reise.
þus wrouht þise monke þre, þorh þe holy goste,
Abbaýes in sere cuntre, þat wikked men did waste,
& maný a gode man to holy lif did calle,
þat þorgh þe lawe paien men left & lete doun falle.

Ædificaverunt claustrum de Whitebý.

AT London is William, at Lundreis takes leue,
To þe parlement he nam at Paris to Lowis cheue.
þe duze pers of France were þat týme at Parýs,
To William felle þar chance, he mad conquest of pris,
þe toun wan of Terwenne, the castelle of Malbis,
His auncestrie whilom when left it þorgh folis.
Whan William with þe lawe had seisen pleýnerlý,
Siþen he gan him drawe toward Normundý,
þe lond to visite, & to comfort his frendes.
He restid bot a lite, a sonde þe Inglis him sendes.
þe erle of Surreý sent Hacon Henrý sonne,
He to William went, & praied him ȝit eftsonne
To com tille Inglond, or els alle he lesis,
Ageýn him wille men stond, & partie tille him chesis.

Rex venit ad parliamentum apud Parys.

¶ William was in wehere, whan he herd þat tiþing,
In his auhtend ȝere, als he regned kýng,

At Wyncchestre he held his parlement ilk ȝere,
& þer men him teld, who was his aduersere,
Of Northfolk þe erle [1] Roger, men said of him treson,
For praier or for pere þei did him in prison.
Unto þe Marche gan long an erle, Wolnot he hight,
þe kyng with mykelle wrong did him slo þat knyght.
Abowen Wynchestere was schewed tille alle þat þer ware,
To lewed men & lerid, to kirke as þei him bare,
Miracle faire & myrie, whan þei laid him in pitte.
William of Malmesbirie witnesse it in his writte.

SITHEN in his þrid ȝere he tellis þer of a chance,
Of Durham bisshop Waltere was smyten þorgh with a lance.
Quomodo Episcopus Dunelmiæ interfectus est. In Gatesheued it was, & þo þat suld be schent,
þo did þat trepas, Sir Liolfe's kynde of Kent,
þe erle Liolf was slayn, for þe bisshop dede.
My boke sais certayn, þat he gaf neuer þat rede.
þerfor kyng William did fleme alle þat kynde,
þar landes fro þam nam, þat men not knowe & fynde.

SITHEN in his ferþe ȝere he went tille Aluerton,
No man wend in erþe drede of no felon.

---

[1] *His name was Ralph. But his Confederate, the Earl of Hereford's Name was Roger. See Dugdale's Baronage, p.* 67, 68. *This Affair is thus touch'd upon by John Rastall, in his most rare Chronicle:*

¶ About the. x. yere of his raygne | Roger erle of Harforde | and Rafe erle of Northfolke fledde | and were outlaude | & the erle walreffe was behedyd.

On

On warned him of a þing, þat Malcolme with poỳsoun,
Schuld begile þe kyng, with som þat lufed tresoun.
William sent his sond his eldest sonne Roberd,
If he mot vnderstond, or anỳ suilk of herd.
Roberd about did spie, if Malcolme wild haf wrouht.
Bot alle it was a lie, þat þing was neuer þouht.
In his auhtend ȝere þat William was regnand,
Extendours he sette forto extend þe land,
Erldam & baronie how mỳkelle felle to þe schelde,
Knỳght & sergeancie als how mỳkelle þei helde.
How mỳkelle lond & rent holỳ kirke had to a prowe,
Alle þei did extend to witte þe verreỳ valowe,
& William wist of alle, what it suld amounte,
Of lordỳng & of thralle þe extente þorgh acounte.
¶ Roberd Courthose his sonne he gaf all Normundie,
To hold, as it was wonne, als heỳre of ancestrie.
William passid þe se, þer of he mad þe skrite,
Of France to hold þat fe of oþer tenement alle quite.
¶ His oþer sonne William Inglond assigned he,
& alle þat of him cam with chartre mad he fre.
His sonne Henrỳ was sire of Wales with chartre streite,
Of alle Loncastre schire vntille Bromsthueite.
¶ Ade his douhter dere, he lufed hir als his life,
þe erle of Plesance Steuene weddid hir to wife,
& kỳng Steuen on̄ hir gate, þat withouten reson
Of þis lond had þe state, & conquered þe coroun.
¶ His douhter Custance was wedded to Bretaỳn,
With William's ordenance, vnto þe erle Alaỳn.

Extendere fecit terram, & divisit terras filiis suis.

Tuo ȝere & a half he duelled in Normundie,
& in þat lond self at Kame gan he die.

Sepultus est in Kame Anno Domini. M° LXXX. VIII°.

At Saỳnt Steuen's kirke þei laid him with honoure,
Himself did it wirke, he was þar [1] fondoure.
Tuentỳ ȝere had he þe land & nien moneth streite,
þe date was a þousand & fourscore & auhte.

---

[2] *This king, in remembrance of the great Victory he had obtain'd over Harold (by which he got Possession of England) founded the great Abbey of Battel in Sussex. But then that, for which I am chiefly obliged to make this Note, is, his founding the Cluniack Abbey of* Bermondsey *in Surrey, if we may give any credit to John Rastall's Chronicle, which is a most rare Book (as I have before noted) and was written by a learned Man (tho' a Printer, for Printers then were Men of Learning) who had married Elizabeth, the Sister of Sir Thomas More, which was of no small Advantage to him in the History of our English Affairs. The Words in Rastall are these.* ¶ This wyllyam made the newe forest in Hampshyre and therfore cast downe dyuers churches by the space of. xxx. myles. In his tyme he kept the englysshemen so lowe | that fewe of them bare any office of honour or rule | but somwhat he fauored the citye of London. Also he buylded two abbayes in Englande | that is to say the abbaye of Battell | where he wanne the fylde agaynst Harolde and the abbay of Barmeseye in Southwarke besyde London | and also he buylded. ii. other abbayes in Normandye. *Which Words will give some Confirmation to what is asserted by those, that tell us, that William the Conqueror built many abbyes of the order of Cluny, in relation to which there is this Note in a MS. in the Bodleian Library, as is observ'd by the learned Dr. Tanner. A Note (saith the Dr. Pref. to his* Not. Mon. *p.* 42.) annexed to an old MS. book of Ecclesiastical Constitutions in the *Bodleian* Library [Inter MSS. *Junian.* 121.] *desires us* to note the slyght of the Pope, that when he had causyd the Deuke of Normandy to Conquer *England;* under pretence of penance causyd him to give muche Lands to Abbyes,

THE conquerour is laid at Kame dede in graue,
þe Courthose befor said Normundie salle haue.
To William þe rede kyng is gyuen þe coroun,
At Westmynstere tok he ryng in þe abbay of Londoun.
Whan he had alle plenerly seisyn of þe lond,
þe barons & þe clergy ageyns him he fond.
þis was þare comon sawe in burgh & cite,
" þe Courthose with þe lawe suld þare lord be.
" He is broþer eldest, þe coroun salle he bere.
" He is of body best, þe reame forto were.
What did þe grete lordynges, erles & barounes?
Kastels & oþer þinges seised, maners & tounes.
þe kyng had fulle grete þouht, his reame ageyn him ros,
Frendes fast he souht, to venge him on̄ his fos.
þis sorow & þis drede lastid him þre ȝere.
Of pes ne myght he spede, bot euer in þer dangere.
His frendes gan him rede, to go to þe kyng of France,
To conseile him in þis nede, to abate þat distance.
For þis kyng William dight him vnto schip,
His frendis with him nam vnto kyng Philip.
¶ Vnto kyng Philip he schewed ilka dele,
How his barons gan kip ageyn him did not wele,

Willelmus Rufus coronatus est apud Westmonasterium.

Abbyes, and that Deuke dyd bylde many of the Order of *Cluny*, because Pope *Gregory VI.* was a monk of *Cluny*. Tho' I cannot find (*continues the Dr.*) that ever he founded any of this Order, yet he built and endowed the great Abbies of *Battel* Com. *Suss.* and *Selby* in Com. *Ebor.* and the Priory of *Hitchinbroke* in Com. *Hunt.* and the Alien-Priories of *Frampton* in Com. *Dors.* *Paunsfeld* in Com. *Essex*, *Derehirst* in Com. *Gloc.* *Andover* in Com. *Hants.* and *Stanyng* in Com. *Suss.*

" þerfor I am comen, to wite at ȝow our heued,
" þe londes þat we haf nomen, to whom þe salle be leued;
" & at ȝour jugement I will stand & do,
" With þi þat it be ent þe strif bituen vs tuo.
Philip said bliþelỳ, & sent his messengers
Tille Inglond to þe clergỳ, erles, barons þer pers,
& askid if þei wild stand to þer lokỳng.
þe duke Roberd fulfilled, so did William þe kỳng.
þe barons wrote ageỳn, at his demỳng þei ches,
þei held his dome certeỳn, for he was prince of pes.
Philip was fulle wis, with scrite he bond þam boþe.
He said þan his avis, " kisse & be not wroþe.
At þe first þei kiste, as frendes felle to be.
" Of ȝour fader biqueste, dome þan salle ȝe se.
Doun þei sat oñ benke, among þe duze pers.
Philip gan him [1] thnke, & said oñ þis maners.

Ecce discussio facta est coram Philippo inter Willelmum Rufum & Robertum fratrem ejus, ducem Normanniæ.

¶ " William þe Conquerour his ancestres & he
" Held with grete honour Normundie in fe
" Of alle kỳnges of France, & so did he of me,
" For alle oþer distance, with homage & feaute.
" Alle Inglond he wan þorgh his vassalage,
" & Harald kỳng ouer ran, þat did William outrage.
" þerto had he no right, no non of his linage.
" þat William wan with mỳght is told non heritage.
" We se alle daỳ in place þing þat a man wynnes,
" It is told purchace, whedir he it hold or tuynnes.
" & þat comes of grace or of conquest bigynnes,
" He maỳ, tille he has space, gif it withouten synnes.

[1] Sic.

" Heri-

" Heritage þat lynes & leues to þe eldest sonne,
" Purchaced þing men gỳnes, woman weddỳng to mone,
" Or tille a man is strange for his seruise oftsone.
" Heritage salle men not change on purchace wise to wone.
" Roberd, þorgh our assent, þe heritage to þe lies,
" & þou, William, salle hent þe purchace at our avis.
" þus ȝour fader ȝow sette, als man of lawe was wis,
" His dede ne wille we lette, be þe martir Saỳnt Denỳs.
¶ Whan Roberd sauh & wist, how þe conseile ȝede,
To þe holỳ land him list, & þider gan him spede.
Whan he com at Marsille, & ouer þe se suld wend,
Philip sauh his wille, & after him gan send.
þe bode was sent to raþe, þe messenger com ouersone.
For soth it was gret skathe, his passage was fordone.

THE rede kỳng William felle a faire chance,
To Saynt Poule's he cam, withouten greuance.
For erles & barons bi sond he for sent,
& alle at his somons to parlement went.
He schewed on & oþer, þat bated was þe strife
Bituex him & Roberd, & were in luf of life,
With chartre wele wreten & selid certeỳn,
& wele it was to witen no chalange ageỳn,
Wherfor he þam hight, if þei to luf wild drawe,
þe coroune at his mỳght to maỳnten with lawe,
& þat he so suld þe barons had affiance,
His kastels þei him ȝolde, with alle þe purtenance.
In þe ȝere folowand, at þe somere's tide,
Roberd com to þis land, at Douer gan vp ride.

Robertus Courthose applicuit in Angliam cum amore, & venit fratri suo Willelmo.

Whan herd say with luf, tille him he sped,
& with grete noblay tille London him led.
With in þo auht daies com William þis tiþing,
þe North had fele affraies, þorgh þe Scottis kyng,
þe cuntre gan assaile, þe folk forto schende,
Roberd gaf him consaile, þider samen to wende.
With þider þei ferd William & Roberd.
Malcolme, whan be it herd, fled for ferd,
& William toke him þere, his folk slouh ilk man,
& als þei were fleand vnto Louthian,
So ferd thei him found, þei obliged þam to gyue,
Fourti þousand pound, at his pes to lyue.
Opon þat he suore, to hold of him his fe,
& or William fore, tok homage & feaute.
To London William turnes, & had al'e his wille,
& Malcolme soiornes in Scotland with ille.
Whan he was at London, a haule [1] he did vp wright.
First þouht & founden, for chambre was it right.

---

[1] *Concerning which I find a very remarkable Passage in Rastall's Chronicle, together with a Note about the first coming of the Cistercian Monks into England, which others refer to the Reign of King Hen. I. The Book being, as I have before noted, extremely scarce, I shall give the Passage at large from Mr. Murray's Copy.* ¶ The. iiii. yere of his ra ne a great wynde was in London | that blewe downe. v. c. howses and the rofe of Bowe churche | & dyd great hurte in wynchester and in dyuers other places. In this tyme also the welchemen rebellyd | but they were subdued & theyr duke or kyng called Ryse was slayne which was accompted the last kynge of wales. After that Malcolyn kyng of Scottes rebellyd and came into Eng-

ROBERD leue has taken, & went to Normundie,
To Wales is William schaken, estres to spie.
It felle in tỳme of þe ȝere, at Saỳnt Brice feste,
þat he had regned here nỳen ȝere at þe meste,

Robertus applicuit in Normaniam.

The kyng of Scottes slayn.

Englande with his retenewe | whome one Robert erle of Northumberlande inconteryd | & there the kyng Malcolyn was slayne | and by the ayde of kỳng wyllyam Edgare his son was made kynge of Scotlande. ¶ About this tyme the order of Cysteaux was fyrst brought into Englande | by one water Espeke that founded the fyrst Abbey of that Religyon at Ryuall. ¶ This kynge wyllyam was a very couetous man | a proude & wylfull | and pylled bothe the spery-tualte & temperalte | with sellynge of Bysshoprykes | Abbeys | & benefyces | and leuyenge vnresonable taxes & trybutes on the temperalte | specially by the onely counsell of one Ranulphe hys procuratour. whiche ryches the kynge dyd spende vpon the Towre of London | & some say vpon the makynge of westmyster halle: but yf that sayenge be trewe of westmyster halle | it must be some olde halle there | & nat the newe halle that is nowe. For the armes that appere in the halle that nowe is aswell in the stone worke as in the tymber worke | be the armes whiche kyng Rycharde the second gaue | which be. iii. Lyons with the flour delyce quarterly | & the whyte hart for his badge. For there was neuer kyng of Englande that bare the armes of Fraunce | whiche be the flour delyce | before kyng Edwarde the thyrde | for in his tyme the armes of Fraunce was fyrst ioyned to the armes of Englande. wherfore it shuld seme euydently that westmyster halle that is nowe | was nat bylde in the tyme of kynge wyllyam Rufus | except it were onely the foundacyon therof | or els it was the halle in westmyster aboue the steyres | which is nowe called the whyte halle. *Stowe tells us (in his Survey of London, p.* 521. *Ed. fol.* 1633.) *that this Hall was repaired by K. Rich. II. which will reconcile what is observ'd by Rastall about the Arms.*

Ros in Northumberland suilk a sorow hard,
[1] Malcolcolme ȝede robband, & his sonne Edward.
þat herd an erle Roberd, he ȝared him to bataile
With Malcolme & Edward, he gan þam assaile.
þat bataile was hard, so men has no frith,
Slaỳn was þat coward, & his sonne him with.
¶ þe folk that ascaped on Malcolme side,
To Scotland þam raped, & puplised it fulle wide.
þei mad parlement, & toke þam to rede.
Malcolme to God was went, & Edward his sonne dede,
& corouned Dufnald, Sir Malcolme broþer.
His sonnes þei ne wald, þe ton no þe toþer.

De contumelia Scottorum, & de dominio & potestate Angliæ.

¶ Of Malcome þat man left tuo sonnes ware,
þe ton hight Dunkan, þe toþer Edgare.
Dunkan sauh his eam had his heritage,
þer he wist bote of beam, he went þat viage
To William þe rede kỳng, þer he was in Wales.
What tid of þat þing, he told him alle þe tales.
" Mỳn heritage I craue of þe, þat is mỳ heued.
" Help me it to haue, þat Dufnald has me reued.
With scrite vnto William Sir Dunkan him bond,
& to þe heirs þat of him cam, for þe coroune of Scotlond.
Inglis & Normans þe kỳng did somoune,
To wend with Sir Dunkan, & do Dufnald doune,
& seise Dunkan þer in, als heỳr of heritage,
To hold & alle his kỳn of Inglond for homage.
Whan corouned was Dunkan, & þe fest ent,
Inglis & Norman to kỳng William went.

---

[1] *Sic.*

Dufnald, þat is put oute, alle about wendes
In fele stedes aboute, & gadres his frendes,
& conseiled with þam þis cas, þat alle suld þei go,
& spie where þe kyng was, Dunkan if he mot slo.
Slayn haf þei Dunkan, & eft corouned Dufnald,
Of kyng William wild þei no more hald.
¶ þe kyng was in affray, he might not tent þerto
With Roberd þe Moubray, his coroune he wild for do.
Roberd wild haf reft William alle his right,
þe coroune his kosyn left, & gif it him þorgh myght.
William is war of þis, þorgh for Roberd he þretis,
& takes him maugre his, his kastelle doun betis.
Better were Roberd, in pes haf holden him stille,
þan layn in prison sperd, & at his fomen wille.
In Wyndesouere is he leued, sorow þan is his pyne,
þat he wis ouer his heued, þe chip falles in his ine.
¶ þe next zere þer bi William to Wales went,
þe Walsch men did foli, his lond robbed & brent.
þerfor William ne wold vnneþis leue on o lyue,
þat boþe zong & old alle zede to þe kryue.
Neuer bifor in Wales was don so grete greue,
Bi dounes & bi dales, þar folk at suilk mischeue.
Sen þis greuance hard, þe slauhter & þe drede,
Fulle sone afterward þe kyng to zork zede.
þider com Edgar, was Malcolme sonne,
& Sir Dunkan broþer, þat slayn was þorgh tresonne,
& schewed to William, þat heyre he was of kynde,
Of Malcolme he kam, righter salle non fynde.

Contumelia orta est inter Regem & Robertum Moubray.

" Wher-

" Wherfor I ȝow biseke, help me þe lond to haue,
" & I with wille fulle meke ȝour seruise salle I saue.
William vnderstode, þat he said reson,
& was next of blode, & Dufnald did treson.
He dight an oste fulle stoute with Edgar forto leue,
Dufnald to drẏue oute, or his hede him reue.
Eustace of Ferers þat oste suld guẏe,
Of Scotland þei him brouht, Dufdald forto spie,
& seised Edgar in alle, as right was þerto.
To William for þe regalle he did þat he suld do.
Edgar & his peres þe chaced daẏ bi daẏ,
Of Scotland þei him brouht for euer, & drof awaẏ.
Edgar was Malde's broþer, men̄ kald þe gode quene,
ȝit sais on & oþer, so gode has here non bene.

De Ingratitudine Willelmi.

WHAN William had his wille of Scotland & of Wales,
To riche men was he grille, of pouer held no tales.
Clerkes of holẏ kirke he chargis greuoslẏ,
þei were bisie & irke on þer rentes to lẏue bẏ.
Of alle his wikked werkes þese me þouht þe meste,
þat seuenten kirkes he mad tille his [1] foreste,

---

[1] *This was the* new Forest near Winchester, *which was really made by his Father King William the Conqueror, who destroyed many Churches for it, and his Son. William Rufus was only an Improver of it, by enlarging it, in which he committed also much Sacrilege. But then others (and even Peter of Langtoft and Robert of Brunne themselves seem to have been of the same opinion) tell us, that this was not the* New Forest near Winchester, *but the* New Forest of Windsor, *among*

þat neuer ere non was sen þe Cristendam.
He did grete trespas of holy kirke so nam.
Wele tuelue ȝere kept he þis lond,
& how he died here selcouthly I fond.
& if ȝe wille lithe, I salle telle it ȝow,
His dede com him suythe meruelloslý, se how.

De morte Willelmi Rufi, & de visione ante mortem.

ON a Thurday at nyght at euen he ȝede to reste,
To hunte þer he had tight in his new foreste.
On slepe sone he felle, þe sueuen bifor him ran,
Him þouht in his chapelle he was withouten man,
Ne non he sauh no herd, & he biheld aboute,
þe durcs were so sperd, he mȝght in no stede oute.
So grete hunger him cam, & mete had he none,
Ne he ne wist to wham, þat he mot mak his mone.

---

mong which is John Rastall, who writes thus: This kynge wyllyam as is sayd & wrytten of hym | had great pleasure in huntynge | in so moche that he pulled downe & distroyed dyuers houses of religyon to inlarge the newe forest of wyndesore for wylde dere: but a knyght of his named water Tyrell by the glaunsyng of his arowe vpon a braunche whan he shot at an harte in the sayd forest | smote the kyng & wounded hym to dethe wherof shortely he dyed. The fyrst day of August the yere of Chryst. M.C. without any yssue of his body. And he rayned. xii. yere. xi. monethes and. xii. dayes | and is buryed at westmyster. *In which Passage this is also remarkable, that he makes William Rufus to be buried at Westminster, as does also the Chronicle I now publish, whereas it is well known, from our other Historians, that he was buried at Winchester. And indeed it is* Winchester *in the French Original of Peter Langtoft.* Le cors a Wyncestre fet leuesque porter, et mettre le en toumbe, al monster seint Peer.

His

His hunger was so grete, he wend haf waxen wode,
Opon þe rode he schete, & ete it als it stode.
Whan he had eten þat, ȝit him hungred eft,
þe Mariole þer scho sat, of hir no þing he left.
Whan he was turned, & went out of þat affraẏ,
For a bisshop he sent at morn whan it was daẏ,
Sir Ode of Wẏnchestere, so þat bisshop hight,
He told him of alle þe estere, þat him mette þat nẏght.
þe bisshop gan it rede, " God is þe turned grẏm,
" Ouþer in word or dede has þou greued him.
" þerfor alle þat þou maẏ to penance take þou space,
" þau neuer on Friday to wod þou go to chace.
" þe riuer salle þou forsake on Fridaẏ ilka dele.
" þat penance I þe take, Sir kẏng, þou kepe it wele.
Sir Ode þe bisshop es with leue went him fro,
þe kẏng herd his messe, to gamen þan wild he go.
His penance was forgeten, he asked for his archere,
Walter Tirelle was haten, maister of þat mister.
To triste was he sette, forto waite þe chance,
With a herde þei mette, a herte þerof gan lance.
Walter was redi, he wend haf schoten þe herte,
þe kẏng stode ouer nehi, þe stroke he lauht so smerte.
þus died William þe kẏng, on̄ þis ilk manere.
Sir Ode herd þat tiþing, fulle mournand was his chere.
At Westminstre is he laid, at Saẏnt Petir kirke,
In a toumbe purtraid, þe bisshop did it wirke.
þe date a þousand was, & a hundreth mo,
Forgif him his trespas, Jhesu, þat lete þe slo.

De Matilda bona Regina.

ÞAT tỳme in Scotland was a maỳden ȝeng,
As I red biforhand, Malcolme douhter þe kỳng.
Malde hight þat maỳden, manỳ of hir spak.
Fair scho was, þei saiden, & gode withouten lak.
A doughter had Saỳnt Margrete, þat in Scotland lis.
Of þat douhter sute com Malde, þat was of pris,
& Dunkan & Edgar, þat I red biforn,
Malde's breþer þei war, of Margrete douhter born.

De Henrico primo.

AFTER William men cald þe rede kỳng,
Henrỳ þe coroun nam, his broþer þat was ȝing.
þe bisshop Maurice Henrỳ corouned he,
þat tỳme he did þe office, of London kept þe se.
Roberd þe Courthose to þe holỳ lond was went.
A Breton (daỳet his [1] his″ nose) for Roberd þider sent.
A Breton sent þat sond, he did for treson,
& Roberd com to lond, withouten oþer reson.
þat did Roberd trauaile for nouht, he was a file.
Noþeles þe erle of Cornwaile kept his wife þat while,
Charles douhter scho lord of Cezile,
Dame Edith bright as glas; Roberd þouht no gile,
Bot com on gode manere tille his broþer Henrỳ.
He wife þat soiorned here, he led to Normundie.
¶ Henrỳ wedded dame Molde, þat kỳng was & sire.
Saỳnt Anselme men tolde corouned him & hire.
þe corounỳng of Henrỳ, & of Malde þat maỳ,
At London was solemplỳ on S. Martỳn's daỳ.

[1] F. delend.

The

De falsitate episcopi Dunelmensis.

THE bisshop of Durham, [1] Kandolf he hight,
Of falshede to mak a gleam, þe wrong vnto þe right.
For he & oþer fele sent vnto Roberd,
þat stound suld he not spele, sen he þat tiỳng herd.
Roberd purueid him stille, & com whan he wild.
" þe folk is alle in wille, þe lond þe to ȝeld.
þorgh messengers fals Roberd gadred oste.
Henrỳ was warned als, & did kepe þe coste.
To þe fiue portes he sent, & het þam in couenant,
þat aliens suld non hent hauen of Normant.
þer sikernes was fast of þe fiue portes, & þe kỳng
Henrỳ dight him on haste to þe toun of Hastỳng.
A kastelle did vp sette, his oste longe þer laỳ.
þei wend Roberde's flette suld haf comen bi þat waỳ.

De traditione Episcopi. ¶ þe bisshop þouht treson, for warned was Henrỳ.
He went to Southampton, with him alle his clergỳ.
þe maistres of þe portes for gỳftes tille him toke,
þe kỳng & his force for Roberd þei forsoke.
A hundreth schippes & fiftene went to Normundie,
To help & to maỳntene þe duke Roberde's partie.
Roberd mad him alle preste, þe wỳnde gan him drỳue.
þe first daỳ of herueste at Portesmouth gan he rỳue.
Toward Wỳnchestre þam dight, his folk forto eỳse,
In token þat he had mỳght, a kastelle he did reỳse.
To erles & barons lettres he sent aboute.
For riche rewardons to Roberd gan loute.
Fulle fele suilk he fond, þat with Roberd held,
Of Inglis of þis lond agaỳn Henrỳ bare scheld.

---

[1] *L.* Randolf.

Roberd

ROBERD bi his letter his broþer gan diffie,
Him þouht his partie better, of him to haf maistrie.
Bot gode Anselme, þat kept of Canterbirie þe see,
Before þe barons lept, kried, pes per charite.
þorgh conseile of Anselme, þat wild þe comon prowe,
Ilk auailed his helme, & to conseile drowe.
þe parties were fulle stark, neuerlesse þorgh praiere,
Henrỳ þre þousand mark gaf to Roberd bi ȝere.
þus gate was þat werre pesed, withouten lore,
þat noiþer partie com nerre, I blisse Anselme þerfore.
In couenant of pes, men maỳ wele witen,
Bituex þam noþeles a skrite enselid & writen.
¶ Als Anselme þe strif gan pes, of þe duke & þe kỳng,
Com Roberd de Beleỳse, þorgh his ouerwenỳng,
& passed hider ouer þe se, & in to Wales went,
He gadred grete maỳne of alle þat he mot hent.
þe Frankis tille him felle, & alle þe Walsch fulle fikelle,
þe kastelle Arondelle he seised, & als of Tikelle.
Cites, burghes & tounes ageỳn kỳng Henrỳ
At Burgh in Schrobschire to werre mad him redỳ.
Alle Schobschire held with Roberd de Beleỳse,
Henrỳ lift vp scheld, his kastels did he saỳse.
þe walles did doun felle, þe tours bette he doun.
In þrittỳ daies to telle, Roberd was taken in toun.
Within daỳes þrittỳ taken he was þorgh spie,
& led to kỳng Henrỳ, don had he felonie,
& his broþer Arnald, (for with Roberd he fore,)
As for traỳtours bald þe lond boþe forsuore.

De Roberto Courthose duce Normanniæ.

De pace facta per Anselmum, archiepiscopum Cantuariæ.

NOW is Henrỳ venged of his traỳtours,
& lord of mỳkelle þing, & riche man of tresours.
Mald þe gode quene gaf him in conseile,
To luf his folk bituene, & leue alle his tirpeile,
Bere him tille his barons, þat held of him þer fees,
& to lordes of tounes, tille burgeis of Citees.
þorgh counseile of dame Malde, a kỳnde woman & trewe,
þer ore was hatred alde, now gynnes luf alle newe.
Now luf þei fulle wele þe barons & þe kỳng,
þe kỳng dos ilk a dele in skille alle þer biddỳng.

Ecce de Henrico. ¶ Bot Henrỳ þink it stark, þat he is charged so,
To gỳue þre þousand mark, & bonden be þerto.
þorgh conseile of his barons, he sent to duke Roberd.
What was his respons writen, I ne sauh no herd.
Tuo gentille men of blode, þe best of Normundie,
Henrỳ gaf gỳftes gode, to hold on his partie.
Whan Henrỳ wist þer wille, bi messengers priue,
An oste he purueid stille, & passed ouer þe se.
He þouht to compas ille þe same tille him did he.
Now salle Roberd fulfille, þat he tok in his cuntre.
¶ Whan Henrỳ was rỳued þer, þer he wild ame,
þorgh power did he drỳue Roberd out of Kame,
Baỳone rent & fe sone had he lorn,
þe best of þat cuntre tille þe kỳng wer suorn.
Roberd fele siþes at þat comỳng les
Boþe londes & liþes, or he mot haf þe pes.
If he ne were þorgh help of William de Martaỳn,
& Roberd de Beleỳse halp him with mỳght & maỳn.

þise

þise two went to France, & fonden at Parỳs,
Als it was þar gode chance, Sir Philip sonne Lowỳs.
For Roberd þei bisouht of socour & mercie,
Sir Lowỳs failed nouht, his help was him redie.
Lowỳs wrote his letter vnto þe kỳng Henrỳ,
þat þei acorded better, for his luf specially.
þe bisshop of Parỳs þe pes þan formed he,
" If þei at his anỳs boþe wild paied be,
" Roberd salle cleỳme all quite to Henrỳ bifor vs here,
" þre þousand mark be skrite þe Henrỳ gaf bi ȝere,
" þat Roberd, ne non of hise, salle ask Henrỳ þe kỳng
" þis dette on non wise, penỳ no ferþing.

WHAN þis barette was ent, þe bisshop tok his leue, Recessit de Normannia.
& Henrỳ home went, to no mo wild he greue.
þe londes wild he nouht ȝeld, þat he of Roberd wan,
Bot haf þam he wilde, & hold for anỳ man.
Sen þat Henrỳ was gone, Roberd went to France
To Sir Lowỳs on one, & told him þat greuance:
& Sir Lowỳs þerfore bad him tille Ingland go,
To praỳe Henrỳ restore þo tounes he tok him fro.
Roberd tille Ingland kam, & bisouht þe kỳng
þo fees he fro him nam, restore ageỳn þat þing.
Henrỳ ansuerd nay, þerto were him lothe.
& Roberd went[1] awith, with William was he wrothe.
Whan he sauh, þat Roberd for wroth turned so sone,
& no þing ansuerd, bot to wend was alle bone,
Henrỳ mad him ȝare, & after him fulle suiþe
To Normundie to fare, & se what he wild kiþe,

[1] *F.* awaỳ.

& duelled þer a ȝere biside Roberd his broþer,
þat noiþer werre wo did þe ton to þe toþer.

Iterum reversus est in Normanniam.

¶ In alle þis ilk chek of Roberd & Henrỳ,
Bituex þam wex contek, þe kỳng & þe clergỳ.
þe kỳng in þe courte of þe laỳ þe clerkes wild justise.
Saỳnt Anselm saïd him naỳ, he wild on no wise.
þe kỳng on gan hald, to haf þam at his dome.
S. Anselm þerfor appeld vnto þe courte of Rome.

Dicta Anselmi pro clero.

¶ Whan he had sped his nedis, & fro þe courte comen,
þe kỳng for oþer dedis to Normundie was nomen.
Anselm duelled nouht, bot sone ouer þe se
To þe kyng tiþing brouht, what þerof suld be.
þe bisshop schewed him skille, þat he maỳntend þe ille.
þe kỳng consented þer tille, & gaf Anselm his wille.
þorgh Anselm maỳtenỳng was þe contek ent.
He tok leue at þe kỳng, & home to Inglond went.
þe kỳng his retenanz alle tille him he drouh
Of Inglis & Normanz, & gadred folk inouh.
Whan he had samned his oste of folk fer & nere,
He seged bi þat coste þe kastelle of Tenkere.
Whilom Wiliam Mortaỳn þerof lord was,
þe Courthose is vnfaỳn, him þenk it a trespas.
þerfor þe duke him dight, as man of grete value,
Roberd Beleỳse with mỳght, þe sege þei wend remue.
þe Mortaỳn befor spoken, with his nevow Reỳnere,
þe sege þe wend haf broken, þei com with þer powere.

De captione Roberti Courthose fratris Henrici, & de fine ejusdem Roberti vide per totum.

¶ þe kỳng sauh þat þei kam, his trompes did he blowe,
To þe bataile he nam, Roberd side ȝede lowe.

Roberd

Roberd side ȝede doun, for he bitrayed was.
His owen men did treson, þe kýng him tok, allas!
Now taken is Roberd, & brouht vnto prison̄,
At Corue his kastelle sperd depe in a dongeon.
William þe Mortaýn he skapes with no gile,
Fettered he is certaýn Roberd of Stotenile.
& Sir William Crispýn with þe duke was led,
Togider prisoned in ȝeres & daýes þam fed
þe kýng þam þer in mete & cloth inouh,
þat neuer þei were o twynne, vntille ded þam slouh.

OFTEN I haf herd told of þis duke Roberd,
So gode knýght no so bold was non in alle þe werld,
Aȝeýn þe Sarazins in bataile forto go,
Now he ligges in pýnes, sorow wille him slo.
Whý felle him suilk chance, & þis ilk mishap?
For of Gode's ordinance he forsoke þe schap.
Gode's grace he forsoke for ȝernýng of þis lond.
Vengeance þerfor he tok at his endýng he fond.

AT [1] Coue is Roberd dede, þe maner of his endýng
Mý boke it me forbede to telle þerof no þing.

Ecce, heu! dicta Godfridi de Bolýon de Roberto Courthose.

---

[1] *L.* Corue. *Others say Caerdiff in South-Wales. See what is said about his death in p.* 426, 443. *of Rob. of Glouc. To which may be here added, that as neither Robert of Gloucester, nor the Chronicle of Peter Lantoft (that I now publish) say, that Robert Duke of Normandy's Eyes were pulled out, so neither does John Rastall say any thing of that matter, as well knowing (and Sir Tho. More too had told him the truth of that part of our History) that the Story was not vouch'd by such Historians,*

as came nearest to Duke Robert's time. But I shall put down the Words of Rastall at large, because they will give some light to the Reader as he is perusing this work of Peter Langtoft. ¶ In the seconde yere of his [*Hen. the First's*] reygne Robert Courteyse his brother duke of Normandye | whiche had ben longe tyme occupyed in warre agaynst Chrystes enemyes hauynge worde of the dethe of his brother wyllyam Rufus | and that his brother henry had takyn vpon hym to be kynge of Englande | made preparacyon in Normandye and came ouer into Englande with a great hoost to chalenge the crowne. But by mediacyon of the lordes | it was agreed that Robert shulde haue euery yere durynge his life. iii. M. markes | as was promysed hym before by kynge wyllyam his brother. And who so euer lyued longest to be others heyre. And sone after that | this Robert departed agayne into Normandye. This Robert by his manhode | dyd many notable actes | and specially at the wynnynge of the citye of Acon vpon the myscreantes & Turkes | and was chosyn kynge of Jerusalem | whiche he refused to take vpon him. In this tyme began great warre in Normandye betwene kyng Henry & kynge Philyp of Fraunce | but kyng Philyp sone after dyed. ¶ About the. iiii. yere of this kyng | Robert Curteyse came into England agayne | to his brother henry whiche made hym great chere that before that Robert departed | he released to his brother the forenamed trybute of. iii. M. markes | & departed agayne into Normandye. After this a great varyaunce fell betwene this Robert and his lordes in Normandye that they sent vnto kyng henry his brother wyllynge for to come into Normandye | & they wolde delyuer hym the contrey. And also by the intyssement of yll tale tellers | a great varyaunce fell betwene kynge henry & his brother Robert | that the kynge with a great armye sayled into Normandye | & with the helpe of the lordes there | chased his brother Robert from place to place | and wanne from hym Roan | Cane | Faloys | and all the good townes & many castels. But at the last this Robert gaue battell to kynge henry |

battel in Normandye.

A hardy knyght was he, ouer all bare þe pris,
At Jerusalem Cite, opon Gode's enmys.
Godferay Bolion said, that many man it herd,
" More my triste is laid on̄ þe duke Roberd,
" & I had grete nede ageyn þe Sarazines to go,
" & better suld he spede þan a hundreth mo.
" Take him þe kepyng þe coroun of Jerusalem,
" For seke is the kyng, of him is no bote of beem.
¶ þe þrid day of Aduent, bifor Criste's messe,
þe kyng a seknes hent, þe dede him tok alle fresse.
þe folk of þat Cite to God mad orisoun,
At þe temple *dominæ* with gode deuocioun,
Who þan were worþi þe coroune forto haue,
Ageyn þe paemy þe Cristendam to saue,
Godfrey & Roberd, & lered men & lewed,
& God þer praieres herd, & to þam alle schewed,
A brightnesse com fro heuen, & on̄ Roberd light,
þre tymes alle euen, þat alle sauh it with sight.
þris þat alle mot se þe light on̄ Roberd toke,
Vngracious man was he, þris he it forsoke.
þorgh conseile of som of hise, refused he þat present,
þei said, on oþer wise he salle haf auancement.

Ecce quomodo Robertus despexit graciam & electionem Dei.

---

duke Robert taken prisoner.

ry | in the whiche battell this Robert was takyn and sent ouer into Englande | and kept in prison in the castell of Cardiffe in walys | by the space of. xxviii. yere where he after dyed without yssue of his body | and was buryed at Gloucester. And when this Robert was takyn | the kynge Henry seasyd alle Normandye into his owne handes.

Godfreỳ was oglift, to Roberd spak fulle tite,
" Withouten anỳ essoỳne, vengeance salle falle þe not lite.
" Forsakes þou Gode's gỳft, þou dos him grete despite.
þus saỳd Godfreỳ of Bolyon, his hert was fulle of site.
Forsoth vengeance he fond, of Criste þe grace he les.
For couetise of þis lond, his mischene he ches.
Of Roberd is no speỳre to mak of parlement.
His broþer Henrỳ is heỳre of alle his tenement,
Of alle Normundie, withouten geỳnsaỳng,
Als heỳr of ancestrie, Henrỳ seỳsed þat þing.

SONE þan was it told vnto þe kỳng of France,
þat Roberd lif was sold þorgh treson & mischance.
Whan Lowỳs herd þat sawe, þat Roberd was so dede,
Ageỳn right & lawe, tille Henrỳ he misbede.
For traytours of men Inglis to Lowỳs þam bond,
þei hight him forto wisse, how he mot haf þis lond.
He trowed to þer conseile, at Douere he gan vp rỳue,
It had bien wroþerheile, if he ne had went belỳue.
þe kỳnge's kosỳn Thebaut, & Randolf Gobion,
To gyf Lowỳs assaut, samned at Chilỳngton.
Of Wales þei had inowe, þat Sir Lowỳs gan chace,
& of his men þam slowe, to rest þei had no space.
Vnto þe se side chaced þei Sir Lowỳs,
He durst not abide, no turne Thebald his vis.
To schip ilkon þei went, fulle on̄ lond leued.
Mot þei Lowỳs hent, he suld haf lorn his heued.

Whan

WHAN Henrẏ herd telle þis of þat gode cheuẏsance, De Matild filia Henrici regis.
Of [1] of" þe toþer Inglis, þat conseild Lowẏs of France,
þat suld haf bien his owen, & mad þe chance ouer grim,
& þei wer fulle wele knowen, þat wild haf tresond him,
How Gobion was certeẏn, Thebaut his neuow stoute,
Turned Lowys ageẏn, of lond þei chaced him oute,
Siþen with grete nobleẏ, & with mẏkelle honoure,
Henrẏ toke his waẏ toward þe Emperoure,
To þe Emperour of Almaẏn his douhter to gẏue.
Malde hight þat maẏden, a faẏrer mot non lẏue.
þat maẏden moder hight Mald þe gode quene,
Ladẏ to maẏnten right sen sho was has non bene.
Now has kẏng Henrẏ, þorgh þis weddẏng,
Grete power & partẏ ageẏns a lordẏng.
¶ Now Henrẏ kẏng leue nam at þe Emperour Henrẏ,
& his sonne William, & went to Normundẏ.
He gaf William his sonne with skrite & [1] f" seele fulle fre
To hold, als it was wonne, alle Normundie in fe.
To Thebaud of Plesance left with him of his meẏne,
& vntille Inglond eft he turned ouer þe se.

IN his seuentend ȝere þat he regned kẏng, De morte Matildis Reginæ bonæ.
Malde þe quene his pere in God scho did endẏng.
At London at Saẏnt Poule's in toumbe is scho laid,
Criste þan haf hir soule meusk of hir men said.
If anẏ man wille witen, & se of hir storie,
At Westmẏnster written er þei redilie.

---

[1] *Dele.* [2] *Sic. Sed* f. *delend. est.*

¶ Now

¶ Now es þe kyng sory, hir dede dos him fulle gram,
He gos to Normundy to his sonne William.
Tuo ȝere he wonnes, & faire courte þer held,
Untille boþe his sonnes þer moder dede he teld.
& in þe þrid ȝere þe kyng to Inglond went,
His sonnes & þer powere a noþer tide þei hent.
þei toke a noþer tide, allas! it was ouer hard,
& dronkled bi þe se side boþe William & Richard.
Tuo erles & þer wyues with þam dronkled were,
& many oþer lyues in þe se left þere.
William Bigot þer felle, Roberd Maudut þat hight,
& Sir Geffrey Ridelle, & Othes þat was his knyght.
þise men were of Gode, þat dronkled alle in fere.
To lyue non ne ȝode, but on was marinere.
þe bodies with þer godes wer costen vp on þe sond,
After an ebbe of þe flode, euer ilkon þei fond.
Tuo sonnes were our kyng born, þat his heires suld be,
& boþe ere þei lorn, for soth þat is pite.

TO lond com þe kyng, after þat passage,
With many grete lordyng of his baronage.
Godefrey of Louayn, þe duke þat was douhty,
Bi messengers tuayn sent to kyng Henry,
For his douhter Adelayn, þat wele was þan of age.
Sir Henry mad þe fyne, & mad þe mariage.
þe may withouten vice, his weddyng was wele dight,
& Malde þe Emperice is heyre of Henry right.

Matild imperatrix vidua. ¶ þe Emperour Henry, þat Mald has to wyue,
Scho had no child him by Mald in alle his lyue.

þan

þan died þe Emperour, Henrỳ for Mald sent
As Emperice with honour, Mald tille Inglond went.
Henrỳ was alle glad of his douhter comỳng,
Nouht long siþen scho had praier for weddỳng.
þe gode erle of Aniowe of Mald herd he saỳ
Fulle richelỳ to trowe, tille tok his waỳ.
He rỳued vp at Douere, & dight him eft alle bone,
Whan alle were wele ouere, to London com he sone.
þe erle so wele sped tille our kỳng Henrỳ,
þat his sonne suld wed, & Mald was alle redỳ.
þe Emperice was dight, as ladỳ felle to be.
With hir went manỳ a knỳght tille Aniowe þat cuntre.
þe erle þis ladỳ gent gaf Henrỳ [1] his sonne,
Alle his tenement, þat his eldres was wonne.

[1] *The Author here (as he does also in many other Places) strangely differeth from other Historians, in making Maud the Empress to be married to Henry Son of the Earl of Anjou, when she was really married (after the Death of the Emperour Henry IV. who was her first husband) to Geffrey Plantagenet Earl of Anjou, son of Foulk King of Jerusalem. Hence John Rastall (in his most scarce Chronicle) writes thus:* ¶ About the. xxi. yere [*of Hen. I.*) there was a great counsell called in London | for the correccyon of the vicyous lỳuynge of preestes to be done by the kynges offycers. Sone after this Henry the Emperour dyed | & Maude the empresse came to her father kynge henry | whiche caused Dauyd the kynge of Scotlande and the more parte of the lordes of Englande to do othe and fealte to the Empresse | and to kepe the lande to her if the kynge dyed without issue male.

¶ Also about the. xxviii. yere | one Geffrey Plantagenet erle of Angeo maryed the sayd Maude and after by her had issue Henry | whiche henry after kynge Steuyn was kynge of Englande.

Whan

Whan þe fader had ent alle at his auys,
To þe holy lond he went, & died oñ Gode's enmys.

HENRY his sonne & Molde, þat held þe seignorie,
A sonne þei had fulle bolde, & his name Henrie.
Siþen had þei a noþer, þat þei cald William,
þat was Henrý broþer, boþe of Mald cam.
Hir fader þe kyng loued þo childre so,
þat he wild for no þing þe sight of þam forgo.

ÞE kyng went at the last vnto Normundie,
& praied his douhter fast, to bere him companie;
& hir sonnes boþe, Henrý & William,
þei were him nere boþe, gladly with him þei nam.
Henrý regned here þrittý ȝere & fiue,
& þre moneþes sere, in þis feble lyue.
þe dede euele him toke, he died at his daý,
þe bodý did þei loke, þat long abouen erþe laý.
On bere laý kyng Henrý, on bere bigond þe se,
þat non wist certeynly, who his heyr suld be.
Of Mald som had þe speyre, þe erle wif of Aniowe,
Hir sone Henrý & heyre of him was maste to trowe.
So long he laý oñ bere, for doute of his lynage,
Tille men þe soth mot here, who suld haf þe heritage.
Els I ne wote for wham, his biriyng suld men schonne,
De morte Henrici primi per totum. Tille Steuen of Plesance cam, þat was his sister sonne.
Steuen com for þe nons, þis lond to haf he þouht.
After were Henrý bones to Redynge's abbaý brouht.

His

His bones did he laỳ in a toumbe of honour,
It was his owen abbaỳ, þerof he was [1] foundour.

HENRỲ is at his reste, his soule at Criste's wille, DeHenrico comite Andegaviæ.
& Steuen wille do his beste, in Inglond leues he stille.
Thebaud, Steuen broþer, as erle in his cuntre,
Of o side ne of oþer no þing deles he.
Henrỳ of Aniowe takes conseile at frendes,
With Malde, þat is so trowe, to Saỳnt Denỳs he wendes,
& his sonne Henrỳ, þat men helde of grete pris,
þei gaf him Normundie bifor þe kỳng Lowỳs,
& tille his heỳres for aỳ, to hold of þe kỳng of France.
And oñ þe toþer daỳ men teld him of a chance,
þat Gerard of Peiters þe erle Marchis had fet,
Aniowe with þer souders was alle biseged & set.
Whan Henrỳ herd telle, he tok leue at Lowỳs,
Bot Mald scho gan duelle at þe castelle Sir Amỳs,
þat was duke of Gaỳnes, Henrỳ cosỳn þorgh right.
To suffre Henrỳ paỳnes he hette him alle his mỳght.
Also þe duke Henrỳ with his fadere ȝede,
With help of Normundie, þe better mot he spede.

---

[1] ¶ This kynge henry the fyrst | buylded the Abbey of Redynge | & released the Englysshemen the Dane gelt. Also this kynge henry beynge in Normandye in the xxxv. yere of his reyne | the seconde day of December in the yere of Chryst. M.C.xxxv. dyed. Some saỳ he dyed of a surfet | and some wryters say that it was by a fall of a horse | and his body was brought into Englande | and is buryed in the Abbay of Redynge. *J. Rastall in his Chr.*

Bot

Bot William, Henrỳ broþer, died, & þan was wo,
þe werre with alle þe toþer lasted fiue ȝere & mo.
In alle þis ilk tirpelle wex Steuen a fulle wise man,
þorgh quaintise & conseile þe coroune of Inglond wan,
þe date of Jhesu pundred, þat men tellis bi,
A þousand & a hundred & sex & þritti.

De coronacione Slephani.

ON Saỳnt Steuen daỳ, withouten anỳ conquest,
þe barons on gode araỳ at London mad þei feste,
þorgh conseile of ilkon, þai gaf Steuen þe coroun,
Heỳre was he non, no þertille had resoun.
þe Emperice sonne Henrỳ he had right þertille,
Bot right ȝede þer forbỳ, þe barons did no skille.

De juramento Regis.

¶ Bot sen his corounỳng tille Oxenford he fore,
& þer Steuen þe kỳng bifor þe clergie suore,
þat if a bisshopriche vacant wer þe se,
þe kỳng, no non of his, suld chalange þat of se,
With wrong no with right, of non þat fro him cam,
So help him God alle mỳght, & þat halidam.
¶ A noþer oth not lefte, þe clergie did him karke,
þat wodes ne foreste, withouten palaised parke,
þe comon folk suld queme on & oþer in fere,
þe kỳng no man suld deme in courte for wilde dere,
Clerk ne lewed man for no wilde beste,
For comon þe folk it wan wod open & forest.
¶ þe þrid poỳnt þei wild, to suere he was drỳuen,
þat þe Danegelde for euer suld be forgỳuen,
& of [1] of ilk a hide tuo schillỳnges þat he toke
Suld neuer eft betide, he suore þat on þe boke,

[1] *Sic.*

Ne

Ne costom no seruise of þing þat he forgaf,
þat noiþer he no hise suld chalange rif no raf.
Of som poỳntes he spak, & suore vnto þe clergie.
þat ilk zere he it brak þe kyng in som partie.

WHAN wrathed Steuen with Dauid of Scotland,
þat wild not tille him cheuen, no bowe vnto his hand.
Dauid vnto Mald had mad his homage,
Steuen was in defaut, to Dauid did outrage.
Bot Henrỳ Dauid sonne, þat his heỳr suld be,
Contek for to schonne, to Steuen mad feaute.
Steuen sauh his skille, þat Henrỳ did resoun,
With alle þat longed þer tille he gaf him Huntỳngtoun.
Henrỳ of Huntỳngton he wrote þe gestes olde,
& sais in his sermon þat newe ere now tolde.
A bisshop of Lỳncoln, Alisaundre he hight,
þat non suld be forholn, he praied him if he mỳght.
In Alisaundre tỳme kam, & Henrie's þe compilour
Ros þe ordre of Sempỳngham þorgh Gilbert þe confessour.
Saỳnt Margrete storỳ sais Dauid of hir kam,
Of Dauid kỳng Henrỳ, of Henrỳ com William,
Of William Alisandre, & Alisandre of him,
þat wedded kỳng Edward sistir, þat was þe Scottis grim.
þis is þe Genelogie fro S. Margarete þe quene
Of kỳnges bi & bi in kỳnde þat has bene.
Now of Steuen to speke turne we eft ageỳn,
Our tale wille we no breke, bot telle forth þe certeỳn.

At

AT Pask in London þe kýng his feste held,
With erle & baron, with knýght þat was of scheld.
Was non þat þider ȝode, þat holden was of pris,
þat he ne had gyftes gode of Steuen þat was wýs.
After þis fest praised Steuen with alle his here,
þe castellis he seised, þat he hat neuer ere.
& Baudewýn of Beduere he flemed fro toun & felde,
A kestelle with powere ageýn þe kýng held,
þe kastelle tille him toke, Baudwýn had it lorn.
Here how þe kýng forsoke his oth þat he had suorn.

Perjuratus est Rex.

¶ In Huntýngtonschire þe kýng in þat forest
A moneth laý, to spire for wod & wilde beste.
Forsters did somoun, enquered vp & doun,
Whilk men of toun had taken his venýsoun,
& who þat was giltý þorgh þe foresters sawe,
Mercied was fulle hi, & don [1] & fulle grete awe.
þus he brak his avowe, þat he to God had suorn,
For a buske or a bowe þat he forgaf beforn.

OPON þis ilk sýn to Normundie he went.
þo serganz he fond þerin, he exiled þam & schent,
þat had kept þe land þorgh Mald þe Emperice,
þat were hir wele willand were putt out of office.
Siþen he went to Fraunce, & com vnto Parýs,
& þer acordance bituex him & Lowýs,
& gaf it Eustace his sonne alle Normundie in fe,
To hold, as it was wonne, of Lowýs for feaute.
þe kyng for his seruise confermed his gýft,
& on̄ þis ilk wise Eustace to duke was lift.

[1] *F.* in fulle.

¶ þe

¶ þe þrid ȝere of his regne he com to Ingland, — De obsidione Bedfordiæ, & captione ejusdem.
Bedford he beseged, & wan it to his hand.
Siþen dight him to Scotland, & mỳkelle folk him wit,
& slouh alle þat he fand for luf of kỳng Dauid.
For he mot neuer drawe Dauid tille homage.
Dauid did bot lawe, Mald had his seruage.
Tille Mald with alle his mỳght for lefe or for loth,
For scho was heỳre þorgh right, to hir he held his oth.
He sauh he mỳght not spede, & Dauid com no nerre,
To Wales suiþe he ȝede, and oñ þam gan werre.

STEUEN stoutlỳ deles, in stedes þor he kennes, — Misit Gannok in Herfordia.
þat ageỳn him holdes kasteles oñ þam raþelỳ rennes.
In Herford fulle stoutelỳ his gannok has vp set.
With Roberd fitz Henrỳ Steuen so with him met,
þat Bristow kastelle & toun, whedir he wild or non,
& slede with alle þe honour, & oþer sex ilkon,
Carro, Lodelow toun, Schrobesbiri & Warwik,
Dunford & Maltone, Steuen wan þam ilk a stik,
& þo þat þe casteles kept, in penance þei soiorned,
þat eft not oñ him lept, to Wỳnchestre he tourned.
At Wỳnchestre he spires, his frendes drawes tille him,
For folk of fele schires agen him turnes grim.
¶ Whan Dauid of Scotland herd þe soth sawe, — De Rege Scottorum.
þat Steuen was duelland in þe South grete þrawe,
þe folk ferly mỳkelle ageỳn him þei ros,
& Dauid herte gan tikelle, þat him wex fele fos.
Fulle son at Rokesburghe his parlement he helde,
þe [1] solk did somon þorgh of tuentỳ wỳnter elde.

& gaf þam sonde at wille in Inglond forto fare,
Man & beste to spille, non ne suld þei spare.
Southward þe Scottis hasted, bifor þam bare alle doun,
Alle þe cuntre wasted vnto Aluertoun.
Whan þe kýng Dauid Aluerton had sene,
& wend wele at his grith alle Inglond had bene,
þe Norreis so þam defendid ageýn þo þat he brouht,
Whan Dauid alle had spendid, of þam wan he nouht.
Liste how Dauid les his spente & his trauaile,
& whilk oñ him gan pres, to renne oñ his rascaile.

THE archbisshop Thurstan, a gode clerk wele in age,
Herd þe Scottis com ilkan of Dauid baronage,
Forto destroie Inglond, & set it in seruage,
Thurstan sent his sond, tille a bissh sauuage,
Rauf of Orkeneý, noble of lýnage,
þat he suld tak þei weý, opon his kostage,
& do þe Scottis deie, & þer pride asuage.
Whan Rauf herd him so seie, he dight him to þat rage.
¶ þise were þo þat nam, als in þe geste it sais,
Of Almarle erle William, & Walter de Gounteis;
Roberd de Brus þer cam, & Gilbert de la Saý,
& his sonne Adam, & Roger de Moubraý.
Walter Spek was in þat stoure, gode knight at alle nedes,
þe boke tellis grete honoure of his douhtý dedes,
Of monkes & chanones he did mak abbeis,
Wis man in þe lawe knýght gode & curteis.
William Peuerelle com als, he was of þe West,
Ageýn þe Scottis fals, a gode man with þe best.

þise

þise were þe barons, þat com of þe North ende,
þat Rauf mad somons ageyn Dauid to wende.
þise men lift þer standard, þat stoute was & grim,
Ageyn Dauid wandelard, & disconfite him.

SAID Rauf tille ilkon, or þei ta bataile went,
" Of þe bisshop Thurston haf I comandment,
" þe clerkes forto tech, for þe londe's nede,
" þe lewed also to preche, & comforte þam to dede.
¶ " ȝe wite wele a remenant, & forsoth ȝe kenne,
" þat Inglis & Normant be now ons men.
" ȝour ancestres conquered all France quitely,
" Were þei neuer ferde of Frankis men hardy.
" Pople with alle þe recchesse, & akres, als þei wonnen,
" þorgh þer douhtinesse, þe lond þorgh þei ronnen.
" Siþen wan þei Inglond, þat is so plentynous,
" & now er þise bot mansbond, rascaile of refous.
" On ȝour fadres þink, þat were staworth in stoure.
" For þise ne salle ȝe blenk, bot hold vp þer honoure.
" Go we with gode wille, & here I ȝow assoyle,
" Of alle ȝour synnes ille granted of þe apostoyle,
" þat ȝe haf said or þouht, or don þat is schryuen,
" In Criste, þat vs alle bouht, be it ȝow forgyuen.
" þerto my benyson tille alle þat go bliþely,
" In þe name of þe fadere & þe sonne & sprit sancti.

De Radulpho de Orkneye, qui ductor fuit de bello. Hii sunt qui fuerunt in prœlio.

DAUID of Scotland hasted to þe bataile,
Walter Spek ros on hand, þe folk to forme & taile.

He bad, þat non alone breke out of þe rengaile.
William of Almarle acordes to þat consaile.
To while þat þise men bold with þer folk gan daile,
Sir Robert de Brus þe old to Dauid gan trauaile.
Here now of þe Brus, how he Dauid gan saile,
With word þat was Irus, if it mot out auaile.

¶ " Dauid my lordỳng, land I hold of þe,
" & als of Steuen kỳng, for hamage & feaute.
" Leue alle þis foly, þat þou here bigynnes,
" þin heỳres salle it bỳ, & þou no þỳng wynnes.
De consilio Roberti Brus. " & loke, þat þou not lese of lond þis ilk daỳ,
" þe best I rede þou chese, þi lif saue if þou maỳ.
" For Inglis & Normant er stalworth men in stoure,
" It is folk valiant, ouer alle þei bere þe floure.
" For neuer mot þou fỳnde Inglis kỳng giloure.
" To þe & to þi kỳnde haf þei don honoure,
" Londes haf þei gỳuen to þin ancessoure.
" If trespas be misdrỳuen, & do þin owen socoure,
" & I wille mak amendes, tak a daỳ of loue.
" If þou ne wille, þou spendes, & we salle be aboue.
" þou maỳ haf þi wille, if þou to loue chese,
" & if þou turne tille ille, non wote who salle lese.
" Wherfor, my lord Dauid, do bi gode conseile,
" Tak ȝow pes & ģrith, & late be þis tirpeile,
" & late not now be spoken of þe mishap.
" For eft it wille be wroken with a hardere klap.

Dauid

DAVID listend Roberd, to pes fulle ech to drawe,
Bot on þer was ansuerd, & sturbled alle þer sawe,
William his neuen, a man of proude wille,
& said, " Roberd þe bru, traytour hold þe stille.
Roberd said him naý, traytour was he non,
" Dauid haf gode daý, mýn homage now is gon.
He smote his hors with spors, & fleih fro þat rascaile,
& comandid his trompors, to blow vnto bataile.
¶ Rauf of Orkeneý cried, " Inglis go now go,
" & do þise Scottis deie, þei waken vs euer wo.
þe Normans were alle glad, þorgh schet þam als þe ro.
þe Inglis did as he bad, bifor þam stode bot fo.
Almerle his banere sprad, & oþer barons mo,
Mikelle blod þei schad of folk þat þei gon slo.
Dauid awaý fled, þat bigan alle þat þro,
Here how a squier sped, sen Dauid fled þam fro.
¶ A hede þat was of smýten, þat þis squier fond,
Priue, þat non suld witen, in an orfreis it wond,
& sette it on a spere, in an orfreis vnbiwened,
& said, " lo! here I bere Dauid kýng heued,
" þis is þe hede þat was of Dauid þe Scottis kýng.
þe Scottis said, " allas! þis is a grete encumberýng.
þe Scottis þat stode fer fro, & þe hede biheld,
Fulle wightlý gan þei go, flehand out of þe feld.
Wolgrýn & Dufnald for euer more þei left,
Of knýght no squier bald on lyue non þei left.
þe Scottis whan þei cam, bestes ouer alle þei toke,
Hors & nete alle samen bifor þer oste þei schoke.

þei did it for a wile, þorgh & þorgh toun,
To put bestes in perile, our folk to bere doun.
Our men herd it saỳ, þei were warned beforn,
In ilk strete & waỳ þei ordeỳnd an erþe horn.
Whan þe com þam blewe, þe bestes ageỳn fled,
þe Scottis men doun thewe, for rorỳng wer þei dred.
þe bestis þorgh þam ȝede, & ouer þer rascaile ran,
þe Inglis after with dede, & slouh þam ilk a man.
þis was at Kouton more, þat þe erþe hornes blewe.
þer þe Scottis misfore, men telle þe tale ȝit newe.
Sir Henrỳ, Dauid sonne, þe romance sais so þere,
His dedis were more to mone, þan sex þe best þer were,
Our barons had þe pris, with þam held þe right,
þe Scottis side doun lis, þei þanked God all mỳght.

De capcione David, & de Eustathio filio Stephani.

¶ þe moneth of heruest was Dauid disconfite,
þe next ȝole alle preste Steuen dight him fulle tite,
& tille Scotlond went, & tok he kỳng Dauid,
& tille Inglond him sent, his sonne Henrỳ him wit.
¶ A sonne had Steuen þe kỳng, Eustace was his name,
In armes gode gynnỳng, of pruesse had he fame,
Lowỳs douhter of France Eustace tok to wife,
Steuen for þat chance was more stouter in strife.
Alisander, þat was bisshop of Lỳncoln schire,
I ne wote for what trespas, þe kỳng tille him had ire.
Sleford & Neuwerk þe kỳng reft him þo tueỳn,
At Wỳnchestere þorgh conseile he had þam boþe ageỳn.

Matildis Imperatrix venit in Angliam.

¶ þat ilk tỳme so felle Mald þe Emperice com to lond,
þe castelle of Arondelle open ageỳn hir fond.

Whan

Whan Steuen vnderstode Mald was in Arondelle,
With mẏkelle folk & gode [1] bigeged þat kastelle.
Mald þouht of þis stoure, scho biþouht hir straite,
& douted dishonoure, þat mot com þorgh disceite.
Scho did hir to Bristow, & duellid oþer half ȝere,
& þider fro Anjowe com hire a messengere,
& told to Mald here, þat scho fulle wele trod,
r lord laẏ on bere, his soule bitaken God,
& Henrẏ hire sonne had þe heritage,
To hold as it was wonne, don was his homage.
Mald in Bristow lettres fast sendes,
Bi messengers trowe, forto procore frendes,
To burgeis & citez (þe wardeẏns alle scho freistes,)
& to lordes of feez, þat scho on treistes.
Of help scho þam bisouht, in right & leaute,
þat þei failed hir nouht, for heẏre þe wist hir be.
þe barons said, scho had right in hire askẏng.
Son was þe contek schad bituex þam & þe kẏng.
Ilkon on his side to bataile purueid him,
þat power had to bide most was stoute & grim.
¶ Sir William of Almarle wex a stoute sire,
He ȝerned to haue alle Lyncolnschire,
Ageẏn Gilbert þe Gaunt reised his banere.
Gilbert was valiaunt, ageẏn him fulle austere.
Gilbert had þe erledam þat tẏme of heritage.
Bituex him & William was don manẏ outrage.
Of Gilbert first to telle, to William did he wouh,
He did brenne Helwelle, & William broþer slouh.

Misit baronibus pro auxilio.

[1] *Sic.*

þe castelle of Bitham to Gilbert ȝolden was.
It longed to William, þat tyme felle him þat cas.

WILLIAM of Almarle þat tyme Northward rode,
þe castelle of Hundmanbỳ he cast doun alle o brode.
Sir Eustace le fitz Jon at þat dede was,
More him, þan ilkon, þe wited þat trespas.
Who so was wroþe, or oþer, biforn, for anỳ chance,
His enmỳ þe toþere toke þan his vengeance.
þo þat lufed werrỳng mad parties aỳ bituen,
Som held with Steuen þe kỳng, & som with Mald þe quene.
For erles & barons, þat were of Malde's kỳnde,
Souht citez & touns, þe kỳng if þei mot fỳnde.
Hir frendes fulle fast waited aboute & woke,
& Mald at þe last kỳng Steuen scho toke,
& led him to Bristow, & did him þer in hold,
In prison, I trowe, þorgh þe quene Mold.
[1] þan þe riche & pouere, & alle comonlỳ,
[2] For Berwik to Douere held hir for ladỳ.
¶ Whan þe lond gan hir loute, & alle was at hir wille,
þan bare scho hir ouer stoute, & wild vnto no skille.
For or þat ȝere was gon, scho bare hir so stoute,
þat þe Lundreis ilkon of London drof hir oute.
Mald þorgh þe Lundreis fro London is katched,
With hors & herneis Bristow has scho latched.

---

[1] Des riches & des pouers de communalte Eft Malde | leimperice dame rescen de gre. *Gall.* [2] *F.* fro.

What

What for ire & tene, & alle in euelle wille,
Scho stokked kyng Steuen, & þer did scho ille.

NOW turnes eft Mold to Wyncester fulle stoute, De Matilde Imperatrice.
& Steuen out of þat hold quaintly skaped oute.
Roberd went hir with, Malde's half broþer,
& þe kyng Dauid of Scotland was þe toþer.
At Wynchester gan scho duelle, biseged þe castelle:
þe Londreis herd it telle, & ȝared þam fulle welle,
With gode aparaile of alle þat þei mot gete.
þe sege þei gan assaile, & tok hir at þe mete.
Roberd þer was taken in to þe Londreis hand,
Bot Dauid was wele waken, he fled fast to Scotland,
Alle þorgh Chestreschire, he fled to Louthian.
A preste was with hire, þat Mald fro þam wan.
Mald & Roberd Louelle tille Oxenford þei fled,
& seised þe castelle, & Steuen fast him sped,
& gadred him an oste, & went vnto Wilton,
& did reise in þat coste a stalworth donjon.
Mald wist þat fulle wele, hir barons þider sent,
& Steuen left ilka dele, & to Northampton went.
William Marschalle o chance was taken at þat turne:
He gaf for his delyuerance þe castelle of Schirburne.
Folk bigond þe se, þat were of Steuen's kynde,
Tille him com grete plente, & oþer þat þei mot fynde.
Steuen with his power tille Oxenford gan schake,
His sege he set plener, þe castelle forto take.
þe Emperice it held, was it þe wynter tide,
þe snowe lay in þe feld, þe water frese biside.

þe ladý had defaute boþe of mete & drýnk,
& scho dred þer assaute, hunger was at þe brýnk.
Scho asked hir conseile, what was þer of to rede.
" Steuen wille vs traueile, & famen vs to dede.
Non ne couth ne wild conseile on no partie,
Bo þe castelle to ȝeld, & ask þe kýng mercie.
þat ne wild scho nouht, hir herte was so stoute.
Bot here now how scho wrouht, & how scho passed oute.
¶ A fulle selcouth rede tok at hir owen herte,
Scho left for life no dede, ne colde þat was so smerte.
Sone after mydnýght, þat crowe suld þe cok,
In þe snowe for sýght scho ȝede out in hir smok,
Ouere þe water of Temse, þat frosen was iýs,
Withouten kirtelle or kemse, saue kouerchef alle bare vis.
To Walýngford scho wan, & þer scho left a while,
þe waý scho ȝed & ran, on length it is ten mile.
& Steuen þe castelle wan of þam euer ilkon.
þei gelded it ilk man, [1] wham dam Mald was gon.

IN þis týme had Steuen regned auht ȝere in alle,
Lered & lewed were euen, & pere & paringalle;
So þat knýght & squiere, if þei powere mot make,
Of holý kýrke pleýnere tok þat þei mot take.
þe pape þan herd þe pleýnt, he sent hider a legate.
At London þei wer atteýnt, decre was mad for þate,
ȝif aný lewed man laid hand opon clerk,
Or with ille on ran, þat of corun had merk,
He suld not escape, þorgh bisshop granted fre,
Of non bot of þe pape mýght he assoýled be.

[1] *F.* whau.

þe

þe kỳng it was herd, & chastised his meỳne,
& oþer afterward left of þer nỳcete.

THER after half a ȝere þe clergie had gode pes,
þat noiþer wo no werre non on̄ þam gan pres.
Bot Geffreỳ of Maundeuile þe kỳng Steuen him reft
His baronie, þat while robberie with Job was left.
þe abbaỳ of Rameseie bi nỳght he robbed it,
þe tresore bare aweie with hand þei mỳght on hit.
Abbote & priour & monke þei did out chace,
Of holỳ kirke a toure to theft þei mad it place.
Roberd þe Marmion þe same waỳes did he, De Roberto Marmỳon.
He robbed þorgh treson þe kirke of Couentre.
Here now of þeir schame, what chance bifelle.
þe storỳ sais þe same, soth as þe gospelle.
¶ Roberd þe Marmỳon he lepe vp on his stede,
þorgh Couentre þat toun vnto þe kirke he ȝede.
He comandid his men, to drỳue out þe couent,
þe godes him biken, þat þei mot tak or hent.
Whan þei had inouh, als mỳkelle as þei mot lede
þat þei of herneis drouh, to go þei gan þam spede.
He turned his bridelle wiþ querte, he wend awaỳ haf gone,
þe dede him smote to þe herte, word spak he neuer none.
¶ Geffreỳ of Maundeuile to fele wrouh he wouh, De G. Maundeuile.
þe deuelle ȝald him his while, with an arowe on him slouh.
þe gode bisshop of Chestre cursed þis ilk Geffraỳ,
His lif out of þis estre in cursỳng went awaỳ.
Arnulf his sonne was taken als thefe, & brouht in bond,
Befor þe kỳng forsaken, & exiled out of þis lond.

þe

þe marschalle of þam alle, Helys of Saỳnt Omere,
To ded þan gon he falle doun of his destrere.
þe maistir of þer pedaile, þat kirkes brak & brent,
& abbeis gan assaile, monkes slouh & schent,
Was born in Pikardie, & his name Reỳuere,
In suilk felonie gadred grete auere.
He had what he wild, & was of wendỳng ȝare,
& had a schipe wele filled, ouer þe flode to fare.
þer in was wif & childe, & tresore wiklỳ wonnen.
So com a tempest wilde, his schip had alle ouer ronnen.
þe marỳner was ogast, þat schip þat wild not go.
Lotes did þei kast, for whom þei had þat wo.
þe lote felle oñ Reỳuere, & on his wif also.
þris kast at tỳmes sere, selle it on þam tuo.

ÞE schip man wist wele, þe tempest þat þam smote,
For þam com ilk a dele, he did þan tak a bote,
& did þam alle þerin, Reỳuer & his gode,
& whan þei were o tuỳn, þer schip ferd on þe flode.
Reỳner & his wif doun tille helle þei sank,
For his wikked lif þe Deuelle gald him þat þank.

IN his tende ȝere a hatrex wex alle hote,
þe kỳng fulle austere ageỳn Sir Hugh Bigote.
þe kỳng did not wele, with þe wrong he wrouht;
Amendes he mad som dele, bot of þe most right nought.
¶ Rauf þe erle of Chestre, & þe kỳng were wroth,
In his elleuend ȝere, þe wend haf acorded both

In alle maner of þing, þat Rauf felt him filed.
Bot here now how þe kýng Rauf þe erle begiled:
Unto Northampton Rauf to courte kam.
þe kýng, þorgh treson, Rauf þer he nam,
& held him tille he ȝald of Lýncolne þe castelle,
& plenerlý haf he wald þe rentis þat þerto felle.
¶ þe tuelft ȝere of his regne at ȝole he held his feste
At Lýncolne, as in signe, þat it was his conqueste.
Sone after þat feste, þat he þer seýsen tok,
þe courte, moste & leste, tille Arundelle þei schoke.
þat þe kýng was gone, Rauf herd sone saý,
To Lýncoln forth on̄ one Rauf þan tok his waý,
& reised a mangnel, to kast vnto þe toure.
þe burgeis were fulle felle, þei ȝald him hard stoure.
þe Gýour of his oste at þat saut was slaýn,
& Rauf, for alle his boste, fulle fast fled agaýn.

THE ȝere next on hand ȝede þe kýng of France
To þe holý land, with his purueiance.
þe emperour with þo kýnges went withouten grace.
þo & oþer lordýnges mad þe grete manace,
Upon Gode's enmýs forto tak vengeance.
þei sauh þe payens of pris of so grete purueiance,
þe Cristen turned for drede withouten dýnt of lance.
Bot here how þe poraile spede, God gaf þam fair chance.
¶ þe poraile þat went þider, þat had no spendýng,
þei suore þer oth togider, to lette for no þing,
To wend vnto Spaýn, & tuo Citez þei wan.
þe Sarazins was þer waýn, & slouh þam ilk a man.

Ecce kouwardise magnatum & fuga eorum.

þei ȝede fro lond to lond, & non ageyn þam stode.
þe better grace þei fond, þe ferrer þat þei ȝode.
Hidere com þat tiþand tille oþer lordes manymo,
How mykelle grace þei fand, þat durst þe Sarazins slo.
þe lordes mot haf schame, whan þei herd it telle,
þat dred for Gode's name, at home þei ȝede to Helle.

De morte Matildis Imperatricis, & de forma scripti inter Stephanum & Henricum filium Imperatricis.

IN his sextend ȝere Steuen þat þe lond auht,
Mald scho died here, hir soule to God betauht.
& hir sonne Henry to lond was he comen,
þe barons & þe clergy tille him alle þe nomen,
& with þe kyng Steuen þei held parlement,
þat Henry & he euen acorded or þei went.
With skrite was set þe pes, & ordeynd þorgh baroun,
þat Steuen tille his dises of Inglond suld bere coroun,
& his gyft certeyn be holden stabilly.
To Normundie ageyn suld turne þe duke Henry,
& Ingland alle holy after Steuen þe kyng
Suld turne to þe same Henry, withouten geynsaiyng.
& if þat Henry die, or Steuen mak his deses,
Henry heyr we scie salle haf þe lond in pes,
Coroun forto bere, as heyr & eldest sonne,
His heritage to were in right, als it was wonne,
So þat Steuen þe kyng, no non of his heyres,
For heritage no ing salle chalange fer þeires.
þis dede was enseled bitauht þam of S. Poule's,
þat wrong were not deled for drede of lif & soules.

Now

NOW wendes duke Henrỳ vnto Normundie,
Seỳsine has plenerly of alle his cheualrie,
& Steuen leues here, Inglond is his balie.
After in his þrid ȝere Steuen fulle seke gan lie,
& in þat grete languour endid he his life,
Ninetene ȝere þe honour he kept in werre & strife,
At Feuersham he lis, at a heuen in Kent,
In an abbeỳ of pris he founded with lond & rent.
& Mald þe Emperice þer þan is scho laid,
þat serued þer office to me, so þei said.
þe date a þousand right a hundreth [1] & fiftỳ, Anno. M°. C°. L°.
þat Steuen to dede was dight, now comes þe secunde Henrỳ.

NOW is Steuen dede, & lies at Feuersham, Henricus secundus factus est rex.
þe barons þair red, & after Henrỳ nam.
To London þei him brouht with grete solempnite.
þe popille him bisouht þer kỳng forto be.
þe daỳ of Saỳnt Liger [2] was Henrỳ corouned kỳng,
Thebald of Canterber gaf him þe coroune & þe rỳng.
þis Henrỳ was Mald sonne, þe erle wif of Aniowe.
þe Emperice was wonne, & right heỳre forto trowe.
For Henrỳ douhter scho was, & his heỳre þorgh sight.
Now comes hir sonne in pas, Henrỳ hir heỳr þorgh right.

---

[1] *Obiit re vera Stephanus rex Oct.* 25. 1154. *Ipsius autem reginaMatildis defuncta est Maii* 3°. 1152. *apud* Hedningham *nimirum sive* Hengham, *vulgò* Heningham, *elegans olim castrum* (*notante Camdeno*) *& Oxoniæ Comitum antiquam habitationem, in agro Essexiensi.* [2] *Oct.* 2. *Sed de tempore Coronationis variant historici.*

Henrỳ

Henrỳ has four sonnes, & douhters has he tuo,
As þe storỳ mones, þese ere þe names of þo:
Henrỳ & Richard, erle Geffreỳ & [1] Jone,
[2] Ilkon afterward was kỳng, & quene [3] bot on.
Geffreỳ was no more, bot erle of Bretaỳn:
& dame Helianore scho we quen of Spaỳn.
Dame [4] Jon was ȝongest, & ladỳ of Cezile.
þer fader kỳng richest lỳuand in alle his while.
¶ þis ilk Henrỳ is told Henrỳ þe scecunde,
So riche a prince in wold in þis lond siþen non funde
Aniowe & Normundie alle holy he held,
Of Gascoỳne þe seignorie bowed vnto his scheld.
Ilk a knỳght & squiere, clerkes were to him suorn.
þan was his Chancelere Thomos of London born:
Saỳnt Thoma fader I fỳnd hight Thomas Beket,
In London of noble kỳnd, & maste of alle was let.
A riche man he was, mot spend þre hundreth pound:
Ersdeken his sonne Thomas of Canterbiri þat stound,
In alle manere cause he sought þe right in skille,
To gile no to fraude wild he neuer tille.

[1] John. [2] *Perperam. Nam tres duntaxat reges erant, Galfridus vero Britanniæ tantummodo Comes sive Dux, id quod mox ipse notat Auctor, qui proinde forsitan voluit, comitem hic loci pro regulo accipi. haud enim aliud alibi etiam valet, sicut ex Hemingo nostro colligi potest.* [3] *Quin & hic etiam auctor secus atque alii, qui docent, tam Johannam quam & Elianoram reginam fuisse. Adeo ut pro eorum sententia mox infra* quene of Cezile *pro* lady of Cezile *sit reponendum. id quod etiam liquet ex Petri de Langtoft Codicibus Gallicis, in quibus,* Alỳenore sa fỳlle fu Raỳne de Espaỳne, Raỳne de Secylle Johane la fỳlle daraỳne. [4] Joane.

þe

Sanctus Thomas factus est archiepiscopus Cantuar.

Ecce controversia orta est inter regem & clerum.

Ecce de clero per totum.

þe Ersebisshop þat was þat tyme died he,
þe Erresdeken Thomas was sacred in his se.
Wele mayntend he holy kirk, & alle þe dignite,
With þe lawe to wirke mayntend þe ordine.
If any man mad pleynt of clerk for hastiuenesse,
Or if þei were atteynt in oþer wikkednesse,
Thomas suffred nouht [1] cleke to be alle schent,
Ne to þe lay courte be brouht to tak þer jugement,
Bot tille holy kirke, of whom he bare þe merke,
& at þat lawe to wirke, if he were ordeynd clerke.
þe kyng for þat cheson wrathed with Thomas.
Here now þe reson, whi þat wreth first was.

CLERKES often tide misdo blithely,
For deynoushede & pride, & for þer state is hy:
þei passe mesure & right, forto haf þer wille,
& whan þei ere in myght, wille þei kepe no skille.
For þei wille vnderfong a fulle gre emprise,
& susteyn it with wrong, with sleiht & quaintise.
þo þat felt þam greued, of þer wikked dedis,
To lordes, þat þei to cheued, pleyned þei most nedis.
þat suilk was not lees, it com to þe kynge's ere,
He comanded his pes to lered and lewed þat were.
& if a clerke men founde in his lond þat reft,
þorgh slauhter or wounde, or þorgh oþer theft,
Men suld schewe his guilte in þe courte of lay,
& þer be saued or splite, bot Thomas said him nay.
Thomas said þe kyng, þat othe suld he wele loke,
þat he suore at þe gynnyng, whan he þe coroune toke.

" þorgh God I þe forbede to chalange anỳ clerke
" In lay courte for non nede, of holy kirke has merke;
" Ne þe franchise fordo, þat it ouh to halde,
" Bot tille þat courte com to, of whilk he is membre calde.
¶ þis was at Clarendoun, þat Thomas gaf respouns,
& siþen to Narthamptoun Thomas com eft sons,
Delỳuer his clerkes fro dome, bot no grantise was.
Wherfor to þe courte of Rome þan kalled S. Thomas.
Thomas toke þe waỳ, & passed ouer þe se.
þe kỳng Henry herd say, his messenger sent he.
[1] . . . . . hop Rogere of ȝork þan kept þe se,
. . . . . his powere corouned forto be,
. . . . . oynt also with wrong, þei mad alle mirie.
Tille Thomas felle it to þe kirk of Canterbirie."
Whan Thomas it wist, he did mak a cursỳng.
Roger he cursed first, þat corouned þe ȝong kỳng,
& alle þat wer him with, or in his courte wer sene,
Saue þe kỳng had grith, his childre & þe quene.
To Thomas þe kỳng bisouht, þe bishop to assoile,
Bot Thomas wild nouh, bot þorgh grace of þe apostoile.

[1] *Torn off. But the sense, notwithstanding, is plain, especially if the passage be compared with the French, which is thus*: Ceo fu a Claringdoun, ou Thomas ad parlez, Et a Norhampton vint il altre feez, Deliuerer ses clers, mes rien luỳ fu grantez. A la courte de Rome ad Thomas appellez. Thomas deuers la courte va la mere passer, Et le Reis Henry fet maintenaunt maunder. Lerceuesqe de Euerwik son noun fu Roger, Et son fiz Henrỳ le fist corouner, Et oyndre en Reis, le regne pur [*the word* pur *is wanting in Mr. Anstis's Copies*] gouerner. Toit fist a Thomas, ke fust outre mere. Kar pur veir a luỳ appent cel mester. Wher-

Wherfor þe kyng wex wroth, & Thomas did exile,
His kynred lefe & loth he did fleme & reuile.
¶ þe kyng suld haf no plight, þat Thomas so was dede,
He said bot tille a knyght, þat Thomas him misbede;
& if he had had men, as he wend, of renoun,
þei suld haf venged him of suilk a clergioun.
Foure kyngtes it herd withouten any more,
To Canterbiri þei ferd, & slouh Thomas right þore[1].
¶ Who so wille wit þis chance his lif & his languour;
& how þe kyng of France did him grete honour;
& how þe pape sent his bulle with a legate;
& how, or he went, he serched alle þe state;
& how at Pountney þe angelle to him said;
& how alle his kynde exile was on þam laid;

De morte Sancti Thom.e.

[1] *In the Cathedral Church at St. Bennet's Altar, as even Rastall takes notice, in his most wonderfull rare Chronicle, lent me by the curious and ingenious Mr. John Murray.* ¶ Also (*saith he*) for dyuers actes that the kynge procured to be made agayne the lybertes of the churche. There fell a great debate betwene hym and Thomas then Archebyshop of Canterbury | that the byshoppe fled vnto Rome. But after whan Thomas came agayne to Caunterbury. iiii. of the kynges knyghtes because the kyng beyng in Normandye | they harde the kyng say these wordes | if he had any men about hym | he had ben a venged vpon that traytour longe or that tyme. Therfore these knyghtes came fro the kynge beynge in Normandye | and slewe this Thomas in the cathedrall church in Canterbury at saynt Benettes auter: whiche Thomas is nowe by the churche canonysed for a holy saynt | & dyuers myracles auctorysed by the churche that god hathe shewed for hym.

saynt thomas of Caunterbury slayne.

& how þe apostoile laid on þam grete payn,
Or he wilde þam assoile, þat had Thomas slayn;
& how for holy kirke he suffred passion,
& how God dos wirke in schrine þer he is don;
Open his boke & se, for þer in ere þei writen,
Meruailes grete plente, þat fele of vs ne witen.

COMEN is tiþing, þe bishop slayne is he,
& þe zonge kyng is went ouer þe se,
Of Almarle erle William with þe kyng was þen,
Tuo castels he nam open þe Frankis men.
Of Almarle in þe castelle þre lordes he toke,
Of messengers fulle suelle he sent hider to loke
Untille Inglond, of Flandres men fulle ille,
In warde or in bond in prison leue þei stille.

¶ þe fader kyng Henry in herte had he payn,
& anguised greuosly, þat Thomas was so slayn.
William þe Scottis kyng therfor was fulle blithe,
þat Henry had ille likyng, werre on him gan he kithe.
Burgh his way beforn he sesed þat kastelle,
Mulgard þorgh him was lorn, Prudhow saued welle.
His way left he nouht, tille he com tille Alnwik,
þer was he taken, & brouht to Richemunde also quik.
Richard þe Moruile knyght of gode renoun,
Richard Comyn þat while with him com to þe toun.
þe Northren so wele stode in treuth to þe kyng Henry.
þat gyftes he gaf þam gode, & þat was largely.
So þat alle þe toþer com vntille his grith
Of lordes on & oþer, & fayn to hold him with.

De falsitate Scottorum.

Captus est rex Scottorum.

Contek

Contek in countes alle was peŷsed wele,
Baret of baron feez forgŷuen ilkadele.
þan was Inglond in pes & charite,
& alle in Henrŷ gracious kŷng & fre.
In his nientend ȝere of his regalte,
Henrŷ his sonne his pere was ȝit ouer þe se.
þe kŷng sister of France Henrŷ allied him to,
Here of a desceŷuance þei conseild him to do.
þe erle Philip of Flandres gaf him in conseile,
& Thebald of Plesence egged to þat tirpeile,
Ageŷn his fader to rise, þer he had no right:
þe kŷng of France & hise hight him alle his mŷght.

De consilio & falsitate Francorum.

WHAN þe fader wist þe sonne wild werre on him,
I blame him not if him list turne ageŷn fulle grim.
For þam of Scotland he sent William & Dauid his broþer,
Tille bliþely þei went, & with þam manŷ oþer.
þe erle of Leŷcestre þe oste alle did he guŷe,
Of werre he was þer maistre, dight þam to Normundie.
¶ Whan þei were vp arŷued, þei fond þer þar chance:
þat reame was biseged with þe power of France.
Henrŷ chaced his sonne þorgh force fro toun to toun,
þe kŷng of France eftsonne left tent & pauilloun.
Philip of Flandres fleih & turned sonne þe bak,
& Thebald nouht ne deih, schame of þam men spak.
Fro toun to toun of reme þe Frankis did þei fle,
Ouertok it to ȝeme, & saued þat cite.

De remotu obsidionis per Henricum.

Our Inglis duelled þer, vnto þe pes were pleyn.
þo þat þer were beforn wild no more com ageyn.

Reversi sunt in Angliam.

IN þe moneth of May our Inglis of was ȝare,
Vpon þe first day tille Inglond forto fare.
Fulle sone þe ȝong kyng with goḍe man þat wer gayn
Purucid his wendyng, & Richard fitz Alayn,
þe duke of Peiters, & þe erle of Bretayn,
þise & oþer pers to sauhtillyng did þer payn.
þise on̄ knees gan falle bifore þe kyngis face,
For luf þei praied him alle to grante þe kyng his grace.
" ȝour wrath him forgyue, þe trespas to amend,
" In pes with ȝow to lyue, & at ȝour conseil descend.
þe sonne cam also suiþe, & cried his fader mercy.
þe kyng þerof was bliþe, forgaf him gentilly;
& he with scrite & oth mad obligacion,
þat for leue no loth, þorgh conseile of treson,
Suld werre on him begynne, bi water ne bi lond,
Ne his pes breke no tuynne, þe sonne þertille him bond.
In alle þis sauhtillyng bituex þe fader & þe sonne
Com þe Scottis kyng, & asked Henry a bone
Of grantise of grace, to haf his seignorie.
Bifor alle in þat place he gaf it him bliþely.
þan wer boþe þe kynges brouht alle tille euen,
& pesed in alle þinges, þanked be God of heuen.

þan

ÞAN said Sir Henrý, nedes burd him wende
To France & Normundie, to witte a certeýn ende.
At Parýs wild he be, at þer parlement.
þer wille wald he se, to what þei wild consent.
At þe duzepers þe sothe wild he wite,
& on̄ what maners, & wharto he suld lite,
& whedir þei wild to werre, or þei wild nouht,
Or alle in luf sperre þat þing þat þei had wrouht.
¶ He sauh wele bi signe, he drouh fast tille elde,
Long mýght he not regne, ne on̄ his lif belde.
Wherfor Henrý said he wild, or he went,
þat þe summe wer laid of his testament.
Liste & I salle rede þe parcelles what amountes,
If aný man in dede wille keste in a countes.

SEX þousand marke tille Acres did he fend.
Ageýn his comýng þidere, bi marchandz so he wend.
Fiftý þousand marcs had he lent abbeis,
þat wer in pouerte, vp þam forto reise.
Alle þat was gýuen, & befor hand lent,
þat was not in cofre, whan he mad testament.
Of þat þat was in cofre, & in his cofines,
He mad his testament, als did oþer pilgrimes.
¶ To Waltham ȝede þe kýng, his testament to make,
& þus quathe he his þing, for his soule sake.
¶ To temples in Acres he quath fiue þousand marke,
& fiue thousand to þe hospitale, for þei were in karke.
¶ To þe folk þat duelled, Acres forto fende,
Oþer fiue þousand marke he gaf þam to spende.

De testamento Henrici secundi, facto apud Waltham, per totum.

¶ Tille oþer houses of þe cuntre fiue þousand marke he gaf,
Tille heremites & tille seke men, & oþer of suilk raf.
¶ Tille monkes & to Chanons, þat were in Inglond,
Fiue þousand marke resceẏued þei of his hond.
¶ To þo of þat religion, þat were in Normundie,
Fiue þousand mark vnto þer tresorie.
¶ & to meselle houses of þat same lond,
þre þousand mark vnto þer spense he fond.
¶ To ladies of habite, Vilęrs & Mortaẏn,
He gaf tuo hundreth mark, I trowe þei were faẏn.
¶ To þo religiouses þat were in Gascoẏne,
He gaf a þousand mark, withouten essoẏne.
¶ To þam of Founz Eberard, þer his bodẏ lis,
He gaf tuo þousand mark, þo ladies of pris.
¶ To þe ladies of Bretaẏn, men calle Seẏnt Suplice,
He gaf a hundreth mark, to mend þer office.
¶ To þe houses of Chartres tuo þousand mark bi counte,
& þre þousand mark to þe order of Grant mounte.
¶ To þe ordre of Cisteaus he gaf tuo þousand mark,
þe ordre of Cloný a þousand, to laẏ vp in arke.
¶ þe ordre of Premonstere tuo hundreth mark þei had.
To þe ladies of Markaẏne a hundreh mark þei lad.
¶ To þe houses of Arroẏs, þat ere bizond þe se,
Tuo hundreth mark þorgh testament gaf he.
¶ To women of Inglond, of gentille lẏnage,
A hunderth mark of gold, to þer mariage.
¶ To gentille, & tille oþer, þat were in Normundie,
A hundreth mark of gold þei had to þer partie.

To

¶ To gentille women of Aniowe, of non auancement,
A hundreth mark of gold vnto þam was sent.
Withouten þis testament þat he did writen,
& þe grete tresore tille Acres was witen,
& þat he lent religiouse to bring þam aboue,
Fourtỳ þousand mark he gaf for Gode loue.

[1]WHAN þe kỳng Henrỳ had mad his testament,
He dight his oste redỳ, & to Parỳs went.
Fro . . erwent to Douere þat best wer worþi
With . . . . . went þei ouer, atired richeli.
þa . . . . . nd þe folk in Parỳs, þat þei wele herd,
With so faỳre folk of pris neuer to prince ferd.
Of þe kỳng of France he asked amendment,
þe duzepers for chance þei ros with on assent,
& in þer conseile kaste þer chance on ilk side,
þei acordid at þe laste, þat pes mot best betide.
Whan pes was set certeỳn bituex þo kỳnges tueỳe,
& Normundie þorgh seỳen, tille Inglond he tok þe weỳe.

IN þe ȝere afterward at midsomer men teld,
þe kỳng in Oxenford his parlement held.
Bi his writte he sent after kỳng William:
Willîam dight him & went, tille Oxenford he cam,

[1] Kaunt le Reỳ Henrỳ ad fet son testament, Al parlement de Fraunce son chemỳn enprent. Touz les melz vanez [*sive* vauez] de Douer a Derwent Sunt oue [*sive* ouf] le Rey alez, atỳrez richement. Dount par mỳ Parỳs est dist communement, Ke vnkes virent Reis oue si [*sive* ouf lỳ] bele gent, *Petri nostri exemplaria Gallica.*

&

& suore to kyng Henry þe next Assumpcion,
þat was of our Lady, suld com to zork his toun,
& bring þider his clergie of Scotlond þe barons.
He did so certeynlie þe day of his somons.
þer þei mad ilkon homage & feaute,
Not to þe fader alle on, bot tille his heir suld be,
& obliged þam with scritte, hyngand ilk a seale,
þat þer dede was perfite, & his homage leale.
& þe kirke of Scotland to Canterbirie ore se
Obliged þam & band, as to þer primalte;
& if þe Scottis kyng mistake in any braide

Statutum factum inter Angliam & Scociam per assensum.

¶ Of treson in any þyng, ageyn Henry forsaid,
The barons & þe clergie in on wer alle schryuen,
Vnto kyng Henrie ageyn William suld be gyuen.
& if it so betide, þat any thefe or feloun
Fle fro Inglond side to Scotlond regioun,
Bot he mak þam to wite, whi þat he is comen,
þat þe courte may him quite o chance if he be nomen.
If he be els funden, for thefe tald & hent,
Tille Inglond brouht alle bunden, & þer haf jugement.
¶ Als if it so be, of Scotlond skape a thefe,
& tille Inglond fle, als a felon grefe,
Bot if he to þer baylifes mak his sikernesse,
þat þei wille him maynpis, if he wer cald to stresse,
If he folowand were souht for þat felonie,
Ageynto Scotland be brouht, & þer hanged hie.

Whan

WHAN þis þing was grant, Henrỳ dred disceite,
He wild, þat his conant were holden stable & streite,
He sesed fiue castels, & held þam in his wage,
Foure erles & sextene kỳnghtes þerfor in his ostage,
Ilkon of þe knỳghtes had a baronỳ,
þei & alle þer rightes were don in his mercỳ.
¶ Whan Henrỳ for his owen had holden þat seignorie,
& þe dede was knowen þorghout Albanie,
þe castels & ostagers he ȝald þorgh curteỳsie,
& [1] with" William with chartre bond him tille Henrie,
þat he & his heires, & alle þer progenie
Of Scotlond, suld hold of Henrỳ certeỳnlie
& of alle his heires, & com to þer crie.
& homage & feaute to mak þam redie.
Whan þis was set & stabled, & pes cried on hii,
Henry þe ȝong kỳng ȝede to Normundie,
& died [2] þer þat ȝere, & biried solemplie.

---

[1] *Abesse malim. Num exemplaria Gallica*, par chartre ensele leReỳ descoz se lỳe, *i.e. per chartam sigillatam Rex Scociæ seipsum obligavit.* [2] *His death was much lamented by his Father, notwithstanding he had been a disobedient Son; which disobedience arose (in a great measure) out of discontent, that his Father had abandon'd his* [*young Henry's*] *Mother,* [*Q. Eleanor,*) *and given himself up intirely (as it were) to the Will of the fine young* Wench *Rosamond, a thing that struck also very much upon the young King's Brothers, Richard and John. For which reason it is, that we have this Passage in Rastall's Chronicle:* This kynge henry let crowne henry his eldyst sonne kynge of Englande | and went hym selfe into Normandye | but his son henry dyed before his father | and therfore he is nat accounted in the nombre of kynges

Whan þis ȝong kýng was dede & laid in graue,
Fro Jerusalem com tiýng, þat help burd it haue.

WHAT týme in Jerusalem [1] wad dede a douhtý kýng,
(Was blode non of his teme, bot a maýden ȝing)
De Baldewino leproso, & Willelmo Aquitaniæ, pro auxilio in Angliam veniente. Baldewýn þe meselle, his name so hight,
Noble kýng & lele, & wele ȝemed his right.
Neuer in his lyue he lese a fote of lond,
The Sarazins gan him drýue, þei were him euer fleand.
For foule meselrie he comond with no man,
Sarazin with maistrie neuer nouht of him wan.
With him was a knýght, & vnder him chefetaýn,
& name couth of mýght, William of Aquitaýn.
Whan Badwýn was dede, he weddid þe maýden ȝing,
þorgh þe Cristen rede William was chosen kýng.
For þis bold Baldewýn Cristen men gan morne,
Gode hap had þe Sarazin ageýn on vs to turne.
þe Sarazins on̄ vs cam, our Cristen foue gan felle,
So þat kýng William no langere þer durst duelle.
Bode com to þis lond, for help & socour,
Kýng Henrý he fond, & schewed him alle his stour,
How þe fals soudan destroied alle þe lond,
Slouh ilk Cristen man, or els in prison bond,

---

kynges of Englande. This Henry his son and his. ii. bretherne | John̄ | & Rycharde | made warre agaynst theyr father. Some say the cause of the warre was because the kynge imprisoned Elynor his wyfe | whiche was kept in prison tyll the kynge dyed | and he kept the wenche Rosamonde.

[1] *Pro*, was.

" þer-

" þerfore I pray to ȝow, haste þat ȝe wer comen,
" Bi þis is Acres now biseged, or alle nomen.
¶ Whan þe kyng it herd, he wept with his ine, Rex lacrimatus est.
þe Cristen so misferd, þe Sarazins did sò pyne.
He said, " My sonne, myn heyre, þat was corouned late,
" Of his lif was my speyre, he myght haf taken þe gate.
" Bot now is he dede, myn heyre þat bare coroune,
" þerfor I kan no rede, I doute me of tresoune.
" For if I were of lond, þe werre suld sone bigynne,
" Aliens suld sone fond, our heritage to wynne.
" Richard my sonne is knyght, with me wild he go,
" Sone suld we lese our right, if we were fer þer fro.
" Fayn I wild purueie for Acres, þat cite
" Ordeyned wer som weie, how it mot saued be.
William tok his leue at our kyng Henry,
Giftes wele to leue he had richely.
He went to þe kyng of France, & schewed him his resons,
þorgh þer ordenance þer duzepers gaf respons.
Bifor Sir William þe duzepers gaf ansuere,
" It er bot tuo kyngdams on þis half Grece to were.
" France & Inglond þise tuo regions, Responsio Francorum Willelmo Aquitaniæ per totum.
" & er in diuerse lond, & in sere bandons:
" Henry in Inglond wonnes, & has tresore inouh,
" Richard & Jon his sonnes fulle felle, & wille non bouh.
" & if þat ȝe were gone, & we went with ȝow,
" þat Richard & Jon wille waken vn mykelle wouh.
" Bot whan kyng Henry & his sonnes wille go,
" We salle be redy, forto wend with þo.

William

William went ageyn vnto Jerusalem,
Of þise kynges tueyn was ȝit no bote o beame.

HENRY for his trespas did fulle grete honour
To þe martir Saynt Thomas, for mercy & socour.
Sex ȝere siþen lyued he in wo & sorow soure.
He went ouer þe se, & lay in grete langoure.
In grete sekenesse & hard he lay in Normundie:
Tille him com his sonne Richard, forsoth, fulle kyndelie,
& whan Henry suld die Richard þorgh blissyng bond,
He suld his cheualrie vse in þe holy lond,
" I salle leue þe inouh for to do with alle.
" Fader," he said, " for ȝow certes þider I salle.
Whan he had regned here, & felt of fele assaies,
[1] Foure & tuenty ȝere sex monethes & tuelf dayes,

Mortuus est Henricus secundus, Anno Domini. M°. C. Lxxxix°.

No more of him to scie, he died sone afterward.
He ligges in an abbeie, men calle þe Founz Everard.
A þousand & a hundred þe dete fourscore & nyne.
So many ȝers it pundred, whan he passed þis pyne.
In a moneth mirie, Septembre þe gynnyng,
Baudwyn of Canterbirie com to coroune þe kyng.
Richard at Londoun, opon a Sonendaȝ,

Coronacio Regis Ricardi apud Londoniam.

At Westmynstre tok þe coroun, of ȝork bishop Geffray
Was sent after þat tyde, him felle to be þe toþer,
Opon þe fadere side he was Richarde's broþer.

---

[1] *Lege*, Foure & thritty *&c. Nam*, Apres. xxx. iiii. annz. vi. mays. xii. jours Du regalte ReyHenry cessaynt ses labours. Il gist al Fount Ebrard en labbeye de sorours *in MSS. Gallicis.*

Richard

Richard his pallion bi messengere did com,
& his confirmacion fro þe courte of Rome.
¶ Comen er to kẏng Richard boþe erle & baroun,
þat had þe lond in ward þorgh out þe regioun,
Knẏghtes & burgeis, serganz als was resoun,
Homage to mak alle weis þat felle vnto þe coroun.
þe pes did he crie, & purueid warnisoun,
þe Sarazins þorgh maistrie haf won Acres toun.
Inglis & Normant, knẏghtes for rewardoun,
With Richard ere in conant ageẏn Sarazins feloun.
His fader left him inouh, penẏes grete foẏsoun,
¶ þat he þe waẏ not widrouh opon his benisoun.
þe kẏng of France was went to Saẏnt Denẏs to holde
His priue parlement, & þer one him it tolde,
þat Richard priuely his purueiẏance did gynne
Opon þe paemẏ, þe lond Surrie to wynne.
To Paris turned þe kẏng, for þat ilk sawe,
& þer a samenẏng his barons þider gan drawe.
He bisouh in þam alle, to conseil at þat nede,
What help mot best falle, for þe Sarazins drede,
& teld þam an outrage, þat Richard þe kẏng,
Wille stele þis viage, withouten mẏ witẏng.
Loke how kẏng Philip said vncurteislẏ,
Daẏet haf his lip, & his nose þerbẏ.
Forto þat parlement com Richard messengers,
þat to Philip wer sent, & to þe duzepers.
þe names of þam þat cam was þe erle of Peiters,
Of Almarle erle William, & an erle Rogers,

Ecce de stultiloquio regis Franciæ.

Lucas

Lucas de Lucie, & Roberd de Coynguers,
þise grete Philip of France, & alle his conseilers.

Nuncium Ricardi editum in curia regis Franciæ.

THE erle of Almarle said, " Richard our Inglis kyng
" His luf is tille ȝow laid, & luf is his gretyng,
" þat ȝe wille tak to herte, þe grete noyse & crie
" Fro Acres þat comes so smerte, lorn is so doelfullie.
" Our Cristen men ere lorn, þe Sarazins alle aboue,
" þerfor Richard beforn praies ȝow for loue,
" For him þat on þe croice died for mankynde,
" Bes boþe at a voice, in one ȝour wille be mynde,
" To help þe Cristen men, þat Jhesu Criste bouht,
" Ageyn þe oste paen, þat him lufed neuer nouht.
" Richard him atires, his wille þerto is fest,
" So mykelle he þider desires, þat he may haf no rest.
" If ȝe of him haf help, & he for ȝow socour,
" Alle þis world salle ȝelp of ȝour grete honour.
¶ Whan þe duzepers herd þe bodword of Richard
To Philip, þei ansuerd, " his sond ȝe salle reward.
" He bedes ȝow luf inouh, ȝe þank him of his sond.
" So noble bot on of ȝow is non, be water no land.
" Richer kyng is non in þis world bot ȝe,
" No valianter of bon in Cristendam als he.
" Large er þo londes, þat his eldres wonnen,
" þe dedes of þer hondes þorgh reames er ronnen.
" Siluer he has inouh, his fader has him fonden
" Knyghtes to do his prouh, with skrite tille him er bonden.
" To whom Acres salle be ȝolden also tite,
" His felauschip to fle, to God ȝe do despite.

Pilip

[1]PILIP sent ageyn to Richard curteylỳ
Bode bi þo certeyn, said often grant mercỳ,
& þanked him his gode wille, & his noble sond,
& he wild fulfille, & at his mỳght suld fond,
& sent Richard to saỳ, þe next Marche folowand
He suld take þat waỳ, if wỳnde wild with him stand,
At Marsile to arỳue, if he of lif had space,
& if þe wỳnde wild drỳue, þorgh mỳght & Gode's grace.
He praied Richard þe kỳng, & alle his men of Gode,
To leue for no preching, þat waỳ þat þei ne ȝode.
¶ Whan Richard had conceỳued, þat Philip þerto stode,
His mobles on siluer reised þorgh Inglond alle his gode,
Rentes & som feez he comandid to selle,
þat burgh no Citez of taliage suld non telle,
þe tende suld be nouht, no þe tuende non make.
þe bisshop of Durham bouht Saberg, with þe wapentake.
þe bisshop of Wỳnchestre at þe kỳng he bouht
Two maners tille his estre, & Richard wisly wrouht.
For he wele vnderstode of taliage was grete drede,
It suld neuer do gode, ne þer withalle suld spede.
Namelỳ to þe holy lond, þider he þouht to go,
In taliage non he bond, ne robbed ne did wo.
He sent to þe Scottis kỳng, þat he suld com & do,
& mak pes for þat þing, þat he was halden to.
¶ þe moneth of Nouembre, after Alhalwemesse,
þat wele is to remembre, com kỳng William alle fresse,
Batand to Canterbiri, & þer ȝald him his fee.
Kỳng Richard our sire homage & feaute

Responsio regis Francorum.

Vendidit mobilia & maneria.

De homagio & obligacione regis Scottorum.

[1] Sic.

He mad for alle þo landes, þat he of Inglond held,
& tille þe pes he standes, þat bowes tille his scheld,
ȝit of penýes rounde to Richard gan he bede
Sexti þousand pounde, to mende his misdede.
& Richard on þis wise forgaf it William so,
To saue þat seruise, þat Malcolme was wone to do
Unto þe Inglis kýnges, as right was & skille,
& do alle þe comýnges, whan bodword com þam tille,
To London forto com, whan parlement suld be,
Als custom was wonne, & tak þer his liuere.
& Richard als quik ȝald to kýng William
Rokesburgh & Berwik, þat he in his hand nam.
William tok his leue, his waý to Scotland ches,
Welc mot William cheue, & alle þat lufes pes.

Stabilivit justitiarios & custodes terræ.

KÝNG Richard ȝit duellis, & purueis him to fare,
& mýkelle þing sellis, siluer forto ȝare.
Wardans sette he stable, trewe men at his mýght,
þat neuer lufed fable, bot maýntend pes & right.
Sire Huge of Durham, bisshop & man worþi:
An oþer Sir William, bisshop of Elý.
þise suld kepe þe lond, & þe dignites,
Justises tille þam he bond, to kepe þe lawes & feez;
Huge Bardolf fulle fers, William Marschalle his pere,
Geffreý le fitz Pers, William dela Bruere:
þise were maýntenours, to sustene þe coroun,
& rightfulle gouernours þe folk in feld & toun.
¶ Now has he brought to stalle, his lond stabled redý,
& now with his folk alle, he wendis to Normundý,

&

& þer he purueis him tille Acres & Sullȳ. Applicuit in Normanniam.
On Gode's enmȳs grim he gadres gode partȳ.
In þe cite of Rouhan his ȝole feste he held
With manȳ douhtȳ man, & knȳghtes gode of scheld.

ÞE Monendaȳ þat felle to be next after þe tuelft daȳ,
þe kȳng of France & he, at þe riuer of S. Rȳmaȳ,
Held a parlement, gode sikernes to make,
þat boþe with on assent þe waȳ suld vndertake.
Ilkon sikered oþer with scrite & seale þerbȳ,
Togidere suore þam breþer, wherfor þe clergȳ
Gaf a grete cursȳng on̄ whilk of þam so brak,
Bigan a wikked þing, þat euelle bituex þam spak. Modo paraverunt se ad terram sanctam.
¶ Now is Philip certeȳn, he gos to S. Denȳ,
& Richard turnes ageȳn, to dight his nauȳ.
He serches ilk coste of alle his seignorie,
þe Guȳours of his oste, þise wer withouten lie:
þe Ersebisshop of Anxus, danz Guard of renoun,
With anoþer bisshop, Bernard of Baȳoun,
& Richard de Cameuile, & Roberd du Sabloun,
& William de Fortiz was lord of Oleroun,
þise gouerne þer nauie, now ere þei in þe se,
Toward þe paemie, þider þei ȝerned to bę.
Richard said þam his wille, " mariners if ȝe moun,
" Arȳues in to Marsille, with Gode's benisoun.
þis was þe first woke of þe passion,
As I on on boke gan loke, þe oste clerke & baron
Wer sailand in þe se toward Marsille þat toun.
Help þam þer þei wild be Criste & Saȳ Simioun,

þei had in þer route a hundreth schippes & ten,
Bot God þei had no doute, ne no defaute of men.

Ecce miraculum & de maris periculo.

ON þe fifte daỳ changed þer wỳnde,
Reft þam þe right waỳ, to wend þe wer blỳnde.
þe right se of Bretaỳn, þer out were þei went,
In to þe se of Spaỳn wer drỳuen in a torment
Among þe Sarazins, bot God, þat grace þam lent,
Saued þam alle þo tỳmes fro þer encumberment.
Ten schippes wer drỳuen, þorgh ille auisement,
þorgh a tempest rỳuen, þe schipmen held þam schent.
On þer was on depe kroken & alle to rent,
þe nien God gan kepe, þat grace he þam sent.
Eft God þei bisouht, to saue þam in þat cas,
Sauelỳ to hauen be brouht, for luf of S. Thomas,
þat for holỳ kirke suffred martirdam,
& God for þam gan wirke, her how a voice cam.
A schip þer was of London, richelỳ atired,
A hundreth þer in fondon, to serue God desired.
Biside þam on þer schip com a bisshop doun,
þe mast in hand gan kip, with croice & pallioun,
& a kỳng þe sihi, of gold schone his coroun,
A noþer bisshop þam bi, þe first said his sermoun.
þan said þe Ersbisshop to Londreis wordes suete,
" I am Thomas ȝour hope, to whom ȝe crie & grete,
" Martir of Canterbire, ȝour bale salle I bete.
" Seỳnt Edmunde þe martire his help I ȝow hete,
" þe bisshop S. Nicholas, whos help is aỳ redie
" To schipmen in alle cas, whan þei on him crie.

" We

" We þre haf þe ward of God & our ladie,
" þe schippes of kỳng Richard to kepe & ȝow þam bie.
After þis biheste, þat Thomas to þam said,
Sone alle þe tempest in a throwe was laid.
þise nine schippes gan ride þer wỳld wỳnd þam driue,
þei ne wist to what side, ne what hauen in to riue.

AT Leons ſur le Rone was Philip & Richard, De Johanna, sorore sua.
þei spak & mad þer mone, what hauen þe mot toward.
In alle þe cuntre þorgh so grete folk mot men se,
þat nouþer cite ne burgh mỳght þei in herberd be.
Philip toward Gene his oste did alle go,
& Richard oste bidene at Marsille left alle þo.
¶ To mete on a while þe trompes blowe alle clere,
Batand fro Cezile com him a messengere,
Fro þe quene dam Jone, his awen sister dere.
Bifor þam euerilkone he told kỳng Richere,
Dede is kỳng William, þat regned in Cezile,
þat Jone þe ladỳ nam, he lyued bot a while.
þat erle is of Tancre, Geffreỳ a douhtỳ knỳght,
& valiant man of dede, & to þe coroun has right,
He regnes after him, & late had þe coroune,
To Jone he is fulle grim, & haldes hir in prisoune.
Herfor kỳng Richard wrathes him & sais,
" Dight vs þider ward our busses & galais,
" Mi sister I wille out wỳn or I ferrer go.
" Bot he bigyn Cezile he turnes fro,
" & bot he wille with pes acorde in reson,
" It salle rewe him þat res, þat he to Jone has done.

M°. C°. LXXXX°.

Þe date was a þousand a hundreth & ninetie,
Þat R. was sailand toward paemie.
¶ Þe seuent daẏ of heruest, in þat ilk ȝere,
Þat I rakend last, writen abouen here,
Þat Richard turned to Gene, & whan he com to lond,
Philip was mẏkelle to mene, R. seke him fond.
Bot mẏkelle he comfortid him, & siþen tok his leue,
Toward Cezile fulle grim, þe kẏng he þouht to greue.
¶ Whan his flete was alle at Tibre euerilkone,
Hic venit Octobonus Cardinalis ad Regem Ricardum.
Þe pape a cardinalle sent Sir Octobone.
What Richard spak, & he conselle is & was,
To me it is priue, I sauh it in no pas.
Þer duellid R. schip þre daies to gesse,
Bi þat was kẏng Philep risen of his sekenesse,
& was in Cezile ariued at Meschẏne,
& after in a while com R. euen as lẏne,
Þe daẏ of þe croice, in þe heruest tide,
Right als Gode's voice had ordeẏnd him to ride.
Were þo schippes nine, þat R. wend haf lorn,
In þe hauen of Meschẏne ariued litille beforn.
It was a Gode's grace, þat þat ilk nauie
Ariued in þat place, þer Richard suld lie.

Misit nuncium ad Tancredum Regem.

THRE daẏs in þat cite duellid kẏng Richard,
To þe kẏng of Tancre he sent his letter hard.
" To deliuer his sister Jon out of his prison
" Men mad tille him grete mone, it was without reson.
" Bot he deliuer hir me with luf, at mẏ praiere,
" þat tẏme salle he se, scho salle be bouht folle dere.

¶ Þis

¶ þis kýng of Tancrede he was a wýs knýght,
He sauh it was to drede, & he did not alle right.
He sauh Richard an ired, & his mýkelle mýght,
His folk armed & tired, & aý redý to fight.
He sent his sister Jone with mýkelle honeste,
With his barons ilkone, to Mischines þat cite.
Philip was curteise, ageýn dame Jone he ȝede,
Tille hir broþer paleise with grete honour did lede.

AN ilde was þer biside, þat a Sarazin held,
Trouage he gaf bi tide to Cristen men, þei teld.
Allas! said Richard, þat euer it suld so be,
þe Cristen þorgh forward suld grant a Sarazin fre.
A water þat closed it in, þat flum was de la fare,
þe wonnýng of þe Sarazin, þat ilde hight Labamare.
Kýng [1] Richad it wan, & tille his sister it gaf,
þe Sarazins ilk man he slouh alle rif & raf.
¶ An oþer ilde biside, men cald it Griffonie,
Richard þat ilk tide, he did þam alle out flie.
þe wonnýng of þat ilde Richard gon þam reue,
Was non of þam so wilde, þat lenger durst þer leue.
¶ Whan þe folk þis herd, þe burgeis of Meschýn,
þer ȝates ageýn him sperd, & wild not lat him in.
Wherfor þe contek on þis maner it cam,
& for þei did þat chek, an oth he suore to gram,
Bot þe kýng wilde mende þat þei did him þere,
A þing he suld sende, to do als lawe it were :
Fulfille þe testament of kýng William þat was,
þat tille his sister ment for dowerie þat trespas,

[1] Sic.

& bot he ȝald it alle, þat is writen þer in,
De fictione regis Philippi. With luf, els I salle with werre fond him to wýn.
¶ Whan þe kýng of France herd þo tiþinges,
þat so grete distance was bituex þo kýnges,
Conseil gan he take, þat he suld be partie,
A gode acord to make, forsoþe fulle faýntlie.
De humilitate & sapientia regis Tancredi. Noþeles þe kýng of Tancrede did fulle curteislý,
To kýng R. he ȝede, & said he was redý,
þe testament to fulfille of kýng William,
& þat his men fulle ille vnskilfullý nam.
" Alle þat was reson, I wille amend it wele,
" & tille þi sister haf don plenerlý ilka dele,
" Alle þat me felle to do of William's [1] testamet.
" Witnes I tak hir to hir seluen in present.
" Hir seluen dame Jone acorded with his sawe,
" Of þe testament alone he has don alle þe law,
" Alle þat felle to me, bot ȝit I ask a noþer,
" þat fallis vnto þe kýng Richard mý broþer,
" Of mý lordes witeword, witnes þer of haf I.
" Of gold þer is a borde, & tretels þer bi,
" Of siluer oþer vesselle gilte fulle richeli;
" & ȝit a noþer jowelle fairer & worþi,
" A pauillon of honour, with riche atisfement,
" To serue an Emperour at a parlement.
" þus quath mý lorde þe, þat týme he suld die,
" þe soth forto saý, & witnes wille not lie.

---

[1] *L.* testament.

" Dame,

"DAME," said Tancred, "of trestels & borde
"Fulfille I salle in dede þe kýnge's witworde.
Fourti þousand vnces of gold he bede þe kýng,
& R. tok þe pundes, withouten more saýng.
"Bot þis," he said, "I saue, þat Arthure mý cosyn
"Tancred douhter salle haue, & alle þat now is þin.
Of Bretaýn Arthure is als erle of heritage,
& he granted to þis, confermed þat mariage.
¶ Als þise tuo kýnge wore about þis forward,
At Meschýne righ þore þe kýnge's moder Richard
Ariued at þat riuale, brouht him busses þritti
Charged with vitaile, with gode men & douhti.
Of Flandres þe erle Philip, a lorde of honour,
Of Helianore schip he was hir gouernour.
Elianore brouht þer a fair maiden ȝing,
þe kýnge's douhter of Nauere, to R. þe kýng.
Hir name was Berengere, faire woman of age,
Was þer non hir pere of no heiere parage.
In Cipre of þat maý was mad þe mariage
At kýng R. paý, þorgh conselle of baronage.
Whan þei were trouth plight, & purueied þe sposage,
Helianore forth hir dight to Rouhan hir menage,
Bileft dame Berengere at Richarde's costage.
Dame Jone kept hir dere, þei lyued als birde in cage.

Hic venit mater regis R. ad eum.

WHAN pes was alle certeýn of Richard & Tancrede.
To þe cite of Kateyn in pilgrimage þei ȝede.

Ricardus & Tancredus peregrinati sunt ad sanctam Agatham virginem.

To

To þe fertre of Saỳnt Agate Richard made offerỳng,
& praied hir of grace to duelle þat with þe kỳng.
Alle þre daỳes tide Richard mad soioure,
þe barons bi þat side did him grete honoure.
Whan Richard suld wend, he tok leue at Tancrez,
Tancrez was fulle hend, conueied him tuo journez,
Gaf him four schippes grete, & were of waỳ beforn,
þe tuo charged with whete, þe toþer with oþer corn,
& fiue oþer galeis with alle þer apparaile,
Richard was curteis, þanked his trauaile,
& Richard at þat turne gaf him a faire Juelle,
þe gode suerd Caliburne, þat Arthur luffed so welle.
¶ þan said Sir Tancrede vnto Richard our kyng,
" God, þat saues at nede boþe þe olde & ȝing,
" Kepe þe fro mischance, & fro þe fals enmỳs,
" þat er with Philip of France, euer ageỳn þi vis.
" Bi Hugh of Burgoỳn he sent a letter vnto me,
" þat I suld, or þou went, be bitraied þorgh þe,
" & if werre or wo had risen vs bituen,
" þe & þine to slo with me he suld haue bien.
" þe soth þan schewes it, þat mỳ sawe is trewe,
" Sir haf here þis writ, & schewe him alle newe.
" If he it geỳnsaỳ, I wille proue it on him.
¶ Tancred went his waỳ, & Richard wex fulle brim.
R. tok his leue, Sir Roger turned & went,
& R. gan him greue, to Philip þe letter sent.

De altercatione inter Ricardum & Philippum per totum.

¶ þe nauie com ōn a stounde, to Meschỳns þat cite,
Biforn him he founde his sister & his meỳne.

R. with Philip dele wild he nouht.
Philip bote oñ his lyppe, & perceẏued R. þouht.
Whi þat it ment, Philip gan aspie:
A wiles to R. sent, how long he wild þer lie,
& what tỳme he had tight forward his nauie,
His sege to sette & dight, to help þe Cristen crie?
¶ R. ansuerd þer tille, & said, " it is folỳ,
" To schewe counseil & skille, þat not is to affie,
" & þhit þer owen writte þer dede dos certifie.
" Me þink in mỳn inwitte it semed traytorie.
¶ þan spak Philip ogrefe said, " I wote what þis menes,
" þat was a fals brefe, & forged wele, it semes,
" For mỳ sister Aleỳse, þat is now forsaken,
" For on of mor richenesse of Nauer þou has taken.
" It salle not so Richard, I wille þe gif a gỳue,
" þou salle hold forward, if þou wost þat I lyue.

WHAN Richard vnderstode, þat kỳng Philip had suorne,
Bifor þe clergie he stode, & proued it oñ þe morne,
þat his fader Henrỳ þat ilk Aleỳse had knowen,
A childe scho him bỳ, þat he held for his owen.

---

[1] Respouns del Reỳ de Fraunce qaunt Richard ad oỳe, Al matỳn lỳ proue deuaunt la clergỳe, Qe le Reis son pere, duk de Normendỳe, A neỳt conou Aleỳs, qaunt lauait en baỳllỳe, Et fỳlle engendrait, ke mort est & seuelỳe. La leỳe de seỳncte eglỳse trop serraỳt blemỳe. Et Richard & Aleỳs de dampne dieu maldỳe, Si en maryage Richard par la se lỳe, *Codices Gallici.*

A mayden childe it was, & now dede is it,
" þis wer agrete trespas, agayn myn owen inwitte,
" So febli forto wirke, for drede of Gode's awe,
" I Richard haf maugre, & I Aleyse take,
" Whan my fader & she suilk samenyng gan make.
¶ þan said kyng Philip tille alle þo of France,
" Of gile þis is a trip of Richard desceyuance,
" Gisors my gode cite, with alle þe purueiance,
" Richard I gaf it fre, to mak þis aliance
" Of him & hir þo tuo, þat er now in distance.
" Ten þousand mark & mo, þat now er in balance,
" & I betraised of alle, bi God, þat alle may auance,
" I salle bring him to stalle, bot he mak me acquitance.

" NOW," said kyng R. " þe manace late alle be,
Concordati sunt per barones. " þou salle haf reward of Gisors þi cite;
" þe tresore ilk a dele, þat þou me bitauht.
" For me salle haf wele alle þat þou euer auht.
þe barons suffred nouht þe kynges to be wroth.
Luf & pes þei souht, þat þei acorded both.
Richard ȝald him his right, his tresore & his toun,
þorgh witnes & sight, of clerk, erle & baroun,
His sistir forto marie, where God wild loke,
To mak certeyn partie, R. a quitance toke.

AFTER þe acord sone, Philip dight him forward,
To boote mad him bone, & toke leue at Richard.
þe wynde was in his saile, tille Acres gan him driue,
Bot litille was his trauaile, tille R. gan ariue.

Whan

Whan Philip tille Acres cam, litelle was his dede,
þe Romance sais grete skam, who so þat pas wille rede.
þe Romancer it sais, R. did mak a pele,
On̄ kastelle wise alle wais, wrouht of tre fulle welle,
Ageyns holy̆ kirke tille Aleyse forto drawe.
In schip he did it lede, to reise vp bi þe walle,
&, if him stode nede, to couere him with alle.
He reised it at Meschines, of werre tiþing he herd,
For þe ilde of Sarazins þer ȝates ageyn him sperd.
þe Romance of Richard sais, he wan þe toun.
His pele fro þat forward he cald it *mate Griffoun.*
Tancred he was wy̆s, he did R. wille,
To Philip turned his vy̆s, so þat he held him stille.

NOW is Philip on̄ flete, ky̆ng R. ȝit duellis,
Hes pele þat he vpsette eft ageyn it fellis.
For wrath first of Tancrede R. vp it reised,
If he had turned to nede, his folk forto haf eised.
Bot whan þei were mad frendes, þorgh sight baroun,
Tancred to him sendes, praied him take it doun;
þat no man for envie eft ageyn him held,
Ne þorgh non oþer harie to do him reise his schelde.
¶ Now purueies him Richard ilk a day̆ alle preste,
Tille he be forward, he may̆ haf no reste.
Acres þan is his triste, opon þe Sarazin feendes,
To venge Jhesu Criste þiderward he wendes.
þe ky̆nge's sister Jone, & dame Berenger,
Formast of ilkone, next þam his Chauceler.

De navibus periclitantibus in mari versus Cipriam, & Cancellarius submersus est.

Roger

Roger Mankael þe Chancelere so hight
His tide felle not wele, a tempest ōn him light.
His schip was dounborn, his self gan þer deẏe.
þe kẏnge's seale was lorn, with oþer busses tueẏe.
Dame Jone þe fre to Jhesu scho bisouht,
In Cipres scho mot be to hauen sauelẏ brouht.
þe maẏden Berenger scho was alle ofright,
þat nouþer fer no nere þe kẏng scho sauh no sight.
Tuo busses wer forfaren, þat in þe tempest brak,
þe godes attached waren to þe kẏng of Cipres Isaac.
þat þat askeped þat drede, & to Cipres wan,
De navibus. Isaac did þam lede, to prison ilk a man.

¶ Whan kẏng R. herd of þat mischuos tide,
& how his schippis misferd, he turned vnto þat tide;
Tille Isaac lettres sent bi Roberd of Thornham,
Sir Steuen with him went, a noþer knẏght William,
" Praie him for God aboue, als I am his pilgrime,
" ȝeld it me with loue, þat he holdes of mẏne.
" Mẏ godes þat he has þare, mẏ men deliuere of bond,
" & destorbe not our fare, we salle to þe holẏ lond;
" & if he wille nouht deliuer me mẏ þing,
" Fulle dere it salle be bouht, bi Jhesu heuen kẏng.
e messengers kamen to þe kẏng ẏsaak.
ẏsaak tille alle samen, þis ansuere he spak.
" Messengers, wherto chalange ȝe mẏ þing,
" & what haf I to do with Inglis taẏled kẏng?
" þe godes þat be fonden on mẏ londe o chance,
" Tille him I am not bonden to mak deliuerance.

" It

" It is my profit, to myn I wille þam holde.
þei went ageyn fulle tite, to kyng R. alle tolde.

WHAN kyng R. herde say ysaak respons,
" Turne we þiderward, & delyuer our prisons,
" & so it may betide, þei salle dere abie
" My þat þei hide, my men in prison lie.
Now he changes his weie, tille Acres may he nouht,
Many þerfore gon deie, I schrowe Isaak so wrouht.
It was Isaak to wite, tille Acres he com no nerre,
þe skaþe oñ him gan bite, þat R. turned þe werre.
¶ Whan Isaak had tiþand Emperour of Griffons,
þat R. drow to land with him alle his barons,
He did gadre an oste of Cipre & Griffonie,
& com vnto þat coste, to waite Richard nauie.
R. was perceyued, þei were renged redie,
& how þer pencels weyued, son he mad a crie:
" Arme we vs I rede, & go we hardilie, De capcione Cipriæ.
" & we salle mak þam schede, & sondre a partie.
He was first þat stirte to lond out of þe boote,
Armed & suerd girte, bot an axe he smote.
With þat axe he hewe, þe Griffons mad him weie.
Many to dede he threwe, & to grounde doun leie.
His maryners gan vp riue about in stedes seere,
þe Griffons þei gan driue bifor þam alle plenere.
þe kyng Isaak fleih, his men had no foyson,
At þat tyme he ne deih, his partie ȝede doun.
R. cried on hie, " Londreis folowes me,
" Loke ȝe be me nehi, fulle gode giftes ȝete ȝe.

" Take

" Take we þis Emperour, þat getis þise Griffons,
" Falle salle þis honour for hold of our prisons.
Isaak had a spie, þat warned him aỳ beforn,
To tak þe mountaỳn hie, & bide þer tille þe morn.
¶ Whan þe euen cam, R. dred tresoun,
Agen to þe water he nam, did set his pauilloun.
þe godes, þat þam gan falle geten at þat iorne,
Felawes were þei alle, als forthelỳ as he.
ỳsaak sauh his vow [1] tille & S. Sỳmeoun,
What falle þer of or how þe morn he suld com doun,
With schelde & lance in hand to saue his regioun,
To mak þe Inglis fleand, þat had robbed his toun,
If he of his mot take ouþer erle or baroun,
His prison suld he wake, þat wer deppest donjoun.
For patriarke no pape, for bulle ne pardoun,
þer of suld he not scape, withouten grete ransoun.
In tentis R. rested alle þat ilk nỳght,
His men wer wele gested with brede, wỳne & light.

Mane venit ad civitatem Lymosin.

ON þe morn he ros, & went to Lỳmosoun,
A cite large in clos, þe folk were fled þe toun.
Griffons þei it held, þei wer scaped awaỳ,
Vitaile inouh at weld, þei fond of corn & haỳ.
Isaac did it store, to hold for tuo ȝere.
Ariued wer þer bifore dame Jone & Berengere.

---

[1] *F.* tille Criste & Sỳmeoun. *Nam*, Isaqe ad fet son vowe a dieu & Seint Simouns, *Gallice.*

¶ þat

¶ þat tuo bargcs mot lede, of þat ware did he fille.
Tille his siþen he ȝede, & warned þam fulle stille
In þe mornỳng to rise, þe tỳme at þe daỳ sterne
þe Emperour & hise to seke þei suld alle ȝerne.
His barons euerilkone be þat tỳme wer dight,
þe kỳng formast to gone, þe waỳ he led þam right.
Was non in tente ne toun behind him durst be,
Bot Bernard of Baỳoun, þat was kepand þe se.
¶ R. rode stillỳ neihand þe Emperour, De fuga Isaac Imperatoris.
He gaf a bold crie, whan he bigan his stour.
þe tentes doun he hew, Isaac to reuile,
& for non him knew, askaped he þat while.
[1] Bare in serke & breke Isaac awaỳ fled,
It was not told a leke, þat non of his þien led.
R. alle ouer ran, & toke alle þat he fond,
A faire þing þer he wan, þe baner of þe lond.
Som of þam were gode, to R. gaf bataile,
Bot alle to dede ȝode, & lost alle þer trauaile.
Taken were a partie, bot maste of þam were slaỳn,
Als man þat wan maistrie R. turned agaỳn,
To Lỳmoson þam led, his fest he did þer crie,
Berenger wild he wed, & þer soiorne & lie.
[2] þe þrid daỳ of þe fest, Sir Bernard of Baỳoun,
Newed eft þer geste, þe quene he gaf þe coroun.

---

[1] En chemỳse, en brayse fuaunt eschapait, Ses chiuals, ses armes al Reỳ Richard leissait *Gallice.* [2] Le terce jour de la feste le Rey comaundait, Qe Bernard de Baỳoun la dame corounaỳt *Gall.*

Ecce tot reges & duces venerunt ad nupcias Regis Ricardi.

TO þat sollempnite com lordes of renoun,
þat weddýng forto se, for grete affectioun.
Of Jerusalem cuntre þe gode kýng Guýoun,
Gaufreý his broþer was he, & Aunfreý of Turoun;
Reýmoun of Antioche, of Triple þe erle Bumoun,
Frere [1] Ruffýn Delmount, & þe duke Leoun.
þise mad R. homage douhteli, kneland doun.
Ageýn þe Sarazin lýnage, þat leues on Mahoun,
Alle þei same þis same, þat ȝare þei were & boun
To die in Jhesu name with gode deuocioun,
þat for vs suffred schame, & died þorgh passioun.
" We trowe it is our frame, his resurrectioun.
R. said his skille, " lordýnges, þis is resoun,
" Bituex vs if ȝe wille mak obligacioun,
" þat I be ȝour aller broþer, & ȝe in mý bandoun,
" þat non faile oþer, ne consent to resoun.
þei granted alle þerto, kýng, erle & baroun,
& who þat wille not so, gaf him þer malisoun.

Divisit turmam Guidoni.

ALSO suiþe R. has armes did crie,
& his oste did parte to þo þat couth it guýe.
þe noble kýng Guýon tok of his cheualrie
Oþer lordes of renoun, assigned þam þer partie.
Whan Isaac herd seie, what help R. was comen,
& how to stop his weie parties had þei nomen,
Of his men most worþi, at þam conseile gan take,
þe best he mot go bi, a cord with R. make.

[1] Ruffýn dez mounz *Gall.*

þo messengers camen, þe conseil þat he ches
Bifor R. alle samen, & enformed his pes.
" ȝour wille wille he alle do, & be at ȝour mercy."
R. ansuerd þerto, " I grante it bliþely.
¶ þan com þe Emperour bifore kyng Richard
" þat I did dishonour, Sir, haf it to no reward.
" þe dede þat I did ille, my foly it was,
" I praye þe with gode wille, forgyue me þat trespas.
" þi man wille I be bi water & bi land,
" þis reame to hold of þe, & bowe vnto þi hand.
" þo men, þat I did take to prison þe toþer morn,
" Amendes I wille make, & bring þam þe biforn.
" þi godes þe biken, or þe valow verray,
" þat þi dronkled men tynt þe toþer day.
" & with þe wille I go als felawes in ferd,
" A hundreth knyghtes mo, armed & gird with suerd.
" & four hundreth to bote, squieres of gode aray,
" & fiue hundreth o fote, to whilk I salle pay
" Ilk day þer wages to þo ilk plenere,
" Knyght, squier & pages, þe termes of tuo ȝere.
" [1] My douhter & myn heyre to loke hir I þe grante,
" þat þou be in speyre I salle hold conante.

Imperator dixit Regi humiliando se hæc verba.

RICHARD curteise was, þat sauh bede suilk loue,
Forgaf alle þe trespas, wirschipid himself aboue.
Tent & pauillon tille Isaac did he signe,
Wirschipped him at reson, right as himself was digne.

[1] Ma fylle eyr de mes teres te doray a garder, Taunt com coe[*sive* ceo] couenaunt te auerayt fet enteer *Codd. Gal.*

¶ Whan þe day was ent, to rest men wer alle laid,
Isaac gan repent, þat he to R. said.
Fulle stille away he went, þat was a theues braid;
A messenger he sent þat þus to R. said:
¶ "Isaac wille not grante, to oblige him to þe,
"No to be þi tenante his body bonden be,
"Ne to suilk seruage his heyrs disherite,
"Ne ȝeld at terme & stage rent mykelle no lite.
"O deuel," said þe king, "þis is a foltid man,
"Whan he with trechettyng bi nyght away so ran.
"þei red him alle a mysse, þat conseil gaf þerto.
"Wenes he our men Inglisse for to trecther so?

De mansione per totum.

NOW gos kyng R. his purueiance to make,
How & whider ward he hoped Isaac take.
To þo lordes þat camen, als Bumund & Sir Guyc,
& þe toþer alle samen, he toke galeis tuenty,
& busses þat were gode o hundreth of þe most,
To fare opon þe flode, to waite wele bi þat coste.

Ricardus circuit terram, & accepit Nichoci & filiam Isaac

¶ Eft bi Cipres side Isaac to aspie,
If he toke any tide out of lond to flie.
R. south þe lond with gode folk & hardie,
þe tounes þat þei fond þei felle to his mercie.
[r] Roberd of Thornham bare him nobilly,
Bi þe se side he nam, & wan it per maistrie.
þan turned he to þe kyng after his conquest,
þei mad þan a samenyng, to go toward þe West.

---

[r] Robert de Turnham se meue noblement, La tere souz marýne ad conquýs nettement *Codd. Gallici.*

þe

þe cite of Nichoci þei wan, & were þer in,
& a noþer þerbi, a toun men calle Cherin.
Doun of the kastelle mote Isaac douhter cam,
& felle R. to fote gretand, þat doole him nam.
" Lord kỳng," scho said, " oñ me þou haf mercie,
& R. hand to laid lift hir curteislie,
& sent hir tille his wife, & tille his sister Jone,
& þer scho led hir life with þo ladies ilkone.
þe castels & þe godes tounes stored wele,
Vitaile vnto þer fode R. toke ilk dele.
[1] Sir Guỳ & Bumund þei com as þei ȝede,
þe ne tỳnd ne fond, ne were at no dede.
Roberd bisouht þe kỳng, to turne toward Bufnet,
& þer ouer alle þing his sege þer to set.
" In alle Griffonie ne es so strong a toure,
" & þat ȝe wille þer lie, it is to ȝour honoure.
R. also suiþe to Bufnet he ȝede,
His maistrie gan he kỳe, engỳnes dight to dede.
Whan þei were alle dight, stalworþelỳ & fast
Boþe daỳ & nỳght vnto þe toure he kast.

To while þat kỳng R. was kastand to þe toure,
Statin his stiward spak to þe Emperoure,
Als his mete he sat, & was his seruitoure,
" Forto amend ȝour stat I wille conseiloure.

Nota de Statino senescallo consiliando Imperatorem, & ecce Imperator amputavit nasum suum cum cultello.

[1] Guỳoun & Reỳmound reuenent unement, Pur coe [*sive* ceo] qil ne ount conquis tere ne tenement *in the French, tho' in one of Mr. Anstis's Copies* ne ount *is wanting.*

" Sir kỳng Isakin I am þi vauasoure,
" Mỳ nam is Statin, I wille be no traitoure.
" I haf kept þi lande, I se þat dishonoure
" Is now þe nerhand, þorgh þis conquerour,
" [1] þat an Inglis kỳng, a wỳs werreour.
" Loke þou lese no þing for þi fole erroure,
" Ne þe lond be not lorn, þat þin ancessoure
" So wele kept biforn, als noble gouernoure.
" Go & mak his pes, or he do þe more stoure,
" & þou to þi deses maỳ haf þe frute & floure.
þan said Isaac tille him, " ert þou his maỳntenour?
Fulle broþelỳ & brim he kept vp a trencheour,
& kast it at Statin, did him a schamfulle schoure.
His nese & his ine he carfe at misauentoure.

STATIN vp he stirte, him þouht þerof grete schame,
" Sir þou has me hirte, þerfor þou ert to blame.
Als so suiþe he ȝede vnto kỳng Richard,
& schewed him all þat dede of Isaac þe coward.
" Sir be mỳ socoure, & venge mỳn outrage.
R. did him honoure, & he mad him homage.
Statin wele þan lete, he ȝalde him alle þe honour
Of Baaf & Bufnet, [2] þat he of Is Diendamour.

---

[1] *Deest* es, (*i. e.* is.) *Nam in Codicibus Gallicis*, Qe Reis est des Englaỳs, e sage gwereỳour. [2] *I. e. Diendamour, that he had of Isaack. But it should be rather read*, Candare and Diendamour. *For the French Copies have*, Baffe & Buffenet, Candare & Dendamour, Et totes les citez dount Isake fu gwỳour.

Castels

Castels & citez þat he he of Isaac held,
Baronies & feez, he ȝald him ilk a scheld.
þe grete lordes Inglis, þat þe werre had gonnen,
Wer fulle glad of þis, Cipres so sone was wonnen.

BE side of S. Andrew was an Abbaý,
Cape þe name men knew, & þer in herd þei saý,
þat kýng Isaac was priuelý hid þer in,
To R. so þei spak, he went him out to wynne.
Isaac tiþing herd, R. com him to seke,
Ageýn R. he ferd, to fote he felle fulle meke,
& said, " Sir mercý, mý life þou saue it me,
" Do not þat vilaný, fettred þat I be.
" In prison þou me do, bot nouht in bondes býnde,
" I praý ȝow it be so, for schame of mý kýnde.
Said R. " þou salle haue at þin owen deuýs,
" þi life I salle þe saue," Isaac he did vp rise.
" O dele," said þe kýng, " þis is a fole Briton.
" He spak no maner þing, for regne to gif raunson,
" Ne no þing him bisouht, he was of kýnge's blode,
" Bot for prison bisouht, als fole þat couth no gode.
" Now er his anens wrouht, of siluere wele ouer gilt,
" Daýet þat þerof rouht, his was alle þe gilt.
Taken is he to loke to Berenger & Jone,
& þei him vndirtoke þo ladies euer ilkone.
[1] To Statin gaf R. þe cite in kepýng,
& bad him be stiward, als ore was with þe kýng.

Captus est Isaac in qua'dam abbatia, ubi absconditus fuit.

[1] Et le Reý Richard ad maýntenaunt donez Al seneschal de Cýpre la garde des citez. Partaunt com il estait

For Isaac did him schame, his lord suld be,
þei caled him þis toname, *Statin þe nasee.*

Cipria conquæsta est per Regem Ricardum.

NOW is Cipres lorn fro Isaac & hise,
& to R. suorn for his valiantise,
þe mene folk (comonly fulle gode men & wise)
Com to his mercy, doand him seruise,
þat bies woule & wyne, & sellis with conant.
" Do com," said Statyn, " burgeis & merchant,
" & knyght & squiere, & mak þam your tenant,
" Citez & tounes sere, hosbond & sergant,
" & tak of þam homage, as custom is & haunt.
" To do þat ilk seruage," þe folk said, " we graunt,
" & þerto half our þing, for to haf þo lawes,
" þat Samuel þe gode kyng gaf bi olde dawes,
" & sikred it with skrite, hyngand set his seale;
& R. gaf it so quite, þat þei suld him be leale.

NOW has kyng R. of Cipres þe seignorie,
What with nesshe & hard wonne þe maistrie.
To Statin þe nasee did he grete curteisie,
Alle Cipres gaf him fre ageyn his vilanie,
With a suerd to holde, of R. heyres alle
Inglis kynges tolde, to whom þe chefe salle falle.
Statin þe reame nam, in þat ilk conaunt,
þat Roberd of Thornham, if þe kyng wild him graunt,

---

si vilement maygnez, Statyn le nase des ore est surnomez *in the French, unless it be that in one of Mr. Anstis's Copies this verse,* Statyn le nase des ore est surnomez, *is wanting.*

With

With him forto duelle, to maỳnten þe pes,
þe foles forto felle, þat rise wild in res.

NOW leues Roberd with Statin nasee,
Tille tiþing be more herd, or pes better be,
With þe kỳnge's leue þe lond to justise,
His enmỳs to greue, þat ageỳn him wild rise.
His wille has R. sped in Cipres fer & nere,
& Isaac forth is led with Jone & Berengere
At Triple to sojourne, & þer þei mad a crie,
Tille Acres forto turne alle holỳ þer nauie.
Bihỳnd left non of hise, bot alle with him þei nam,
Bot he þat was justise, Roberd of Thornham.
Now er alle oñ flote, God gif þam grace to spede,
With douhtỳ fo to note, whan þei com to dede.

Ecce de navi in mari [1] capto.

AT none þe toþer daỳ þei sauh fer in þe se
A grete busse & gaỳ, fulle hie of saile was he.
þe weder was fulle soft, þe wỳnde held þam stille,
þe saile was hie o loft, þei had no wỳnde at wille.
In Philip nauie of France a pencelle þei put oute,
His armes on a lance ouer alle þe schip aboute.
So mỳkelle was þat barge, it mỳght not lightly saile,
& so heuỳ of charge, & þe wỳnde gan faile.
To wite what þei were went a marinere,
Respons þei gaf him þere, " þei were men of mistere,
" Fro Antioche were went vnto kỳng Philip,
" & for vs has he sent, & his is þis schip.

[1] *Sic.*

Said

Said þe kyng R. " Sir prince if þou be,
" Bi tyme turne to me ward, for I wille speke with þe.
þe prince com fulle sone, Sir Richard did he calle,
" Do dight & mak ȝow bone, þe schip ere Sarazins alle,
" Tille Acres þei þam rape, venom for our men lede,
" & if þei vs ascape, þe Cristen may þam dede.
Ecce dicit Rex. þan cried Richard on hie, " now batale vs belyue,
" þorgh help of our ladie, þat schip salle alle to ryue.
[1] Ilk man þat may wynne tok to his partie,
To set chalange þer inne salle no man be hardie.
þe kynge's owen Galeie, he cald it Trencthemere,
þat was first on weie, & com þe schip fulle nere.
Oþer were þer inowe, þat þer after drouh,
Bot he com with a suowe, þat þe schip to rof.
þe schip cast trokes out, þe galeie to þam drouh,
þe kyng stode fulle stout, & many of þam slouh.
Wilde fire þei kast, þe kyng to confound,
His schipmen were fulle wrask, els had he gon to ground.
þe kyng abaist him nouht, bot stalworthly fauht,
Alle to dede he brouht, þat his Galeie ouer rauht.
þe galeie þer þorght schete, & þe kyng was gode,
þe schip þat was so grete, it dronkled in þe flode.
þei teld fiueten hundred Sarazins, þat drenkled were,
Fourti & sex wer sundred, & alle þo were saued þere.
þe summe couth no man telle of gold þat was þer in
& oþer riches to selle, bot alle mot þei not wyn.

---

[1] Et ait [*sive* eyt] chescun la gwayne [*vel* son wayne] | saunz altre chalenger *Codices Gallici.*

þe

þe venom alle þei hent, in þe se cast it awaỳ,
þe folk it mot haf schent, þat about Acres laỳ.
Armour þei had plente, & god besquite to mete,
It sanke son in þe se, half mỳght þei not gete.
[1] Richard bade, " hale vp hie ȝour sailes, þer God vs lede,
" Our men at Acres lie, of help þei haf grete nede.
þe date was a þousand, a hundreth nienti & one,
Fro Cipres he was sailand, a toun he wan Acon.
¶ Als grace of God wild be, þe wỳnde gan him drỳue, Ricardus applicuit ad portum de Acres.
þe euen of þe Trinite vnder Acres R. gan arỳue,
Dame Jone & Berengere bifor him fond he eft:
Isaac þe Emperere at Triples was left.
þe folk of Griffonie, whan R. was gone,
To Statin had envie, a monk þei ches ilkone,
þat Isaac cosyn was, & corouned him for kỳng.
þei did a foule trespas, it was vnsemlỳ þing.
Statin wild þei greue, mispaied was Roberd,
He said, " þei salle mischeue," whan he þat tiþing herd.
Night & daỳ þei woke, Roberd & Statỳn,
þorgh force þe monke þei toke, & brouht him to Cherỳn.
ȝit he skaped out, þe monke of prisoun,
[2] þei cried, " has armes about Roberd fro toun to toun.
þe folk whan þei were comen to Statỳn & Roberd,
Eft þe monke þei nomen, at Cherỳn þei him sperd.
Opon þe þrid daỳ þe folk he did somoune,
Lered men & laỳ, fre & bond of toune.

[1] Le Reỳ Richard les sygles comaunde eschaucer, Et haster vers Akres, les Cristiens eỳder, *Gallice*. [2] On hors de la prisone noctauntre est passe, Statỳn & Robert af armes ount crye, *Gallice*.

A quest þan wild he take of þe monke þat bare þe coroune,
His abite he gan forsake, his ordre lete alle doune.
& ȝit a noþer sawe of behoues be spoken,
Ageyn þe comon lawe, þe prison has he broken.
Som chesons þei cast, & som for him said,
Bot here now at þe last, what dome was on him laid.

De monacho rege suspenso.

SAID Sir Roberd, " monk þou was whilom,
" For wirschip of þe werld forsoke þou alle & som.
" To God þou mad a vow in þi professioun.
" His traitour ert þou now, þou did him a tresoun.
" For þe worldè's blisse þou left þin habite,
" & now þou wost for wisse of boþe ert þou quite.
" We toke þe als robboure in þis ilk cuntre,
" þou reft þe kyng his honour, þat felle not vnto þe.
" To Cherỳn þat ilk toun, þider was þou led,
" & þer þou brak prisoun, & awaỳ þou fled.
" Eft we did þe take, in prison we þe bond,
" þat lawe I salle þe make, þat is Richard lond.
" Galwes do ȝe reise, & hỳng þis cheitefe.
" Better him wer with eise in clostre haf led his life,
" þe seruise of his song recorded & lered,
" þan chalange with wrong þat kyng R. conquered,
" & þi messe songen, & serued God alle mỳght,
" þan to be hongen in þi frendis sight.

NOW of þis olde monk & þis new kyng,
þat was not worth a fonk, don has his endyng.

þe

þe folk was alle pesed, to Statýn wild þei cheue.
Of Statýn þat was sesed Roberd toke his leue
With ricchesse inouh, þat he to Acres led,
& teld kýng R. how of alle þat he had sped,
" þe folk of Griffonie a monk þei chese to kýng,
" Sib Isaak a partie had mad a chalangýng.
" In Cipres wer þei comen, þer maistrie gan þei kiþe,
" & we ageýn þam nomen, & tok him als suiþe.
" To Cherýn we him led, & þer he brak prisoun.
" Eft we toke him fled, brouht him ageýn to toun,
" þe courte opon him sat, þe quest filed him & schent.
" For trespas of þat, he toke jugement.
" Allas! for vilenie," said R. þe kýng,
" þat a kýng suld so die, hanged for no þing!
" Roberd þou ert to blame, þou did ageýn resoun,
" Certes þou has don schame tille alle þat bere coroun.
" Sir," said Roberd, " þer of is not to speke;
" Late alle þis be sperd, on Gode's enmýs þe wreke.
" Siþen Philip hider cam, he gaf neuer non assaut:
" It wer mýkelle scham to mak suilk a defaut.
" A partie has þou sped, þanked be God alle mýght;
" ȝit salle þou mak þam dred, or com a fourtenýght
" Do reise vp þin engýns, & wýn̄ of þam þise dikes.
" I trowe þe Sarazins our comýng mislikes.

RICHARD als suiþe did reise his engýns, Ricardus paravit se ad castellum.
þe Inglis wer þan bliþe, Normans & Peteuýns.
In bargeis & galeis he set mýlnes to go,
þe sailes, as men sais, som were blak & blo,

Som

Som were rede & grene, þe wýnde about þam blewe,
A sellý sight to sene, fire þe sailes þrewe.
þe stones were of Rýnes, þe noýse dredfulle & grete,
It affraied þe Sarazins, as leuen þe fire out schete.
þe noýse was vnride, it lasted alle daý,
Fro morn tille euentide, þer of had maný affraý.
To while þei had wondrýng, of þis þat þei ne knew
Stode R. our kýng, þe chýne in tuo he hew,
& sesid þe Sarazin dikes, maugre þam euerilkon.
Now þe Sarazins mislikes, to Mahoun mad þei mone.
Our Cristen wer fulle faýn, þe sauh R. þerin,
þe dikes wer all drawen with iren chýnes þrin.

¶ "Certes," said þe Soudan, þat was in Acres toure,
"þis is a kýng a man, þis is a werreoure,
"Me þink els a wonder, bot he salle do grete wo,
"He salle sched vs o sonder, fro Acres salle we go.
"If he forth haf grace, as he now bigynnes,
"Hiþen salle he vs chace, & alle þis lond he wynnes.

Lamentatio facta ad Regem pro fame Christianorum per episcopum.

¶ The bisshop of Perouse com to kýng Richard,
"Sir, ouer meruailouse our duellýng here is hard;
"Sir, here biforn of men haf we told
"Fourti þousand lorn for hungre & cold.
"þe hungre was so grete, & þe cold so stark,
"þat a quarter whete was at tuentý mark.
"For ten mark men sold a litille bulchýn,
"Litille lesse men told a bouke of a motoun.
"Men gaf fiueten schillýnges for a goos or a heen,
"For þe grete lordýnges bouht to seke men.

"An

" An aẏ bi it selue for fiue schillynges was bouht,
" A pere for penẏes tuelue, or þei had it nouht.
" þe comon of þe oste bouht þam hors flesch,
" Or mules or assis roste, or haf bien mete lesse.
" Manẏ grete mishappes, manẏ hard trauaile,
" Haf comen vs hard clappes, whan þei gan vs assaile.
" He told to þe kẏng manẏ hard chance,
" þat tellis here no þing, bot alle in þe romance.

¶ He tellis in þe romance, sen Acres wonnen was, Ecce probitas Ricardi.
How God gaf him faire chance at þe bataile of Caẏfas.

¶ Siþen at Nazareth, at þe Assompcion messe,
At Assur he did to deth þe Sarazins more & lesse.

¶ Siþen at Japhet was slaẏn fanuelle his stede,
þe romance tellis grete pas þer of his douhtẏ dede.
Bot þe bisshop sais vnto kẏng Richard,
How þam felle oþer wais so manẏ woes & hard.
" Bot," Sir, " we here wele telle, ȝe ere so trew a kẏng,
" Our folk þat here duelle, ȝerne ȝour comẏng.
" Ouer alle now is said, his comẏng þank we God,
" Our hope is on̄ him laid, & fulle wele is it trod,
" þat ȝe salle wele spede, to schorten our soiorne,
" & mend our grete nede, to ioẏ þat it mot torne.
" ȝour wille is euer so gode, & ȝour treuth so treist,
" ȝour douhtẏnesse of blode þe Sarazins salle freist.
" Now, Jhesu, for þat croice, þou þoled on̄ passioun,
" Here our sinfulle voice, & grant ȝow wẏnne þe toun.

Whan

WHAN kyng R. herd, þe Cristen had suilk pyn,
Fulle soft he him ansuerd, wepand with his ine,
" To Criste for me biseke, þat he gyue me þat grace,
" þe Cristendom to eke, þe Sarazins to chace.
R. also suiþe did set his pauilloun,
His maistrie sone gan kiþe, he dight him to þe toun.
Now ere þe dikes wonnen opon Gode's enmys,
& sautes has bigonnen, þorgh whilk he getis pris.
So did kyng Philip with sautes on̄ þam gan pres,
Bot for a forgetilschip R. & he boþe les.
Philip left his engynes withouten kepyng a nyght,
þat perceyued þe Sarazines, with fire brent þam doun right.
For he com on̄ þe morne, assaut he wild haf gyuen,
His Engyns fond he lorne, brent & tille askes dryuen.
R. said his avis, blamed him for þat dede.
A werreour þat were wys, desceyt suld euer drede,
Wele more on̄ þe nyght, þan opon þe day,
In mirke withouten sight wille enmys mak affray.
R. lent him of hise, Acres for to assaile;
Philip withouten fayntise did alle his trauaile.
þe to kyng & þe toþer assailed it so hard,
þat þe Soudan broþer cried pes opon forward.
Alle þei went to here, what þe Soudan wild say:
þe folk com alle in fere with þo kynges tueye.
¶ þis was þe Sarazins sawe, " þe toun ȝeld ȝow we wille,
" If ȝe grant vs þe lawe, I salle say ȝow þe skille.
" Late vs alle out com, þis is þe first we chese.
" þat non be slayn ne nom, ne life no lymme lese;

&

" & if þat we wille take a baron of ȝour oste,
" & Cristen kẏng him make, to regne bi þis coste,
" Him þan wille we saẏ, who is moste valiant,
" If ȝe consent þat waẏ, þe marchis of Mounfraunt.

De pace tractata secundum formam inter Reges & Saracenos.

RICHARD was hastif, & ansuerd þat stund,
" Certes þou lies cheitif, & as a stinkand hund,
" Here ere a þousand mo more worþi haf pris,
" þan he þou tellis fro, þat ilk traitoure marchis.
" It salle auaile him nouht, þat he ȝour Soudan sent.
" I se þat he has bouht þe lond with his present,
" & þis lond is oure, & our right wonẏng,
" For oure ancessoure hereof was he kẏng,
" & ȝe ere our enmẏs, þe Cristendam to spille,
" & now is þe marchis turned to ȝour wille.
" I rede out of þis oste þe marchis go his gate,
" Bi God þat mẏght has moste, he maẏ go to late.
" If he þorgh traytorie salle be at ȝour deuẏs,
" I salle do him hang hie, or drawe with runcẏs.

SAID þe kẏng of France, " R. whi art þou wroth,
" What is ȝour distance, þat he is þe so loth?
" & he is gentille knẏght, of kẏnge's blode comen,
" If he with vnright ouht of þin haf nomen,
" He salle at þi wille mak alle þin amendes,
" & late alle be stille, þat þou him defendes.
¶ Said þe kẏng R. " Sir, at ȝour honoure,
" In þat ilk forward he ȝelde me mẏ tresoure,

" þat mý fadere Henrý gaf to þe Holý lond.
" He toke it wikkedlý out of þe Hospitelers hond.
" Fourti þousand pounde, & if he ȝelde it me,
" We salle fare & founde als frendes falle to be.
Sir Philip stille he stode, worde ne spak he more,
In þat same waý þei gode, right als it was ore.
Richard asked þo landes, þat þe Cristen wan
Out of þe Sarazins handes, & chaced þe Soudan.
þe Sarazins wild not ȝelde so moný londes sere,
Ne þe kýnge's ne wilde acorde in oþer manere.

OFT tille our Inglis men was schewed a mervaile grete,
A darte was schot to þem, bot non wist who it schete.
In þe schaft was purtreit, þorgh þe holý goste trowe I,
Ecce miraculum. *In nomine patris*, it said, *& filii & spiritus sancti.*
Was neuer Cristen man couþe perceýue þe certeýn,
Ne wist what týme no whan it passed out eft ageýn,
It com fro þat tureile, þat R. had doun smýten,
Alle þe Sarazins conseile in þe schaft was writen,
& alle þer ordinance, kýng R. it wiste,
It was a fulle faire chance schewed þorgh Jhesu Criste.
R. mad þankýng to Jhesu for þat sond,
& for þat schewýng to wirschip him suld he fond.

[1] TO Philip & Richard þe Sarazins said þei wild,
In a gode forward, þe toun to þam ȝeld.

---

[1] A Phelipp & Richard les | Sarecýns volaint Souent la cite

Of Jerusalem þe land þei said he suld it haue,
þerto tuenti þousand of Cristen men to saue.
þei treistid not þer tille, bot þei did it in dede,
þe kýnge's with gode wille vnto assaut ȝede.
R. had minoures, þat mýned vndere þe walle,
A pece with a grete cours at ons felle doun alle.
þe Frankis bare þam stoute, þe mýned boþe & cast
Vnto a toure Maudut, & wan it at þe last.
þe Sarazins som þei slouh, & som for drede fied,
At þat týme wele inouh þe Frankis manlý sped.
þe Inglis at þer triste bifor þam bare alle doun,
& R. als him liste þe waý had redý roun.
Now has R. entre, & Acres taken es,
þe Sarazins com fulle fre, & offred him grete riches.

Acres civitas capta est per Ricardum.

VNTO Philip of France þe Frankis mad a crie,
" þi worschip to auance com in als kýng hardie.
" Com in as lord of fe, for hedeles ere þei hopped
" & slaýn alle maý þou se, þat þi waý stopped:
& now is Acres taken þorgh R. þe conquerour,
His banere held þam waken was put of o toure.
Kýng Philip did also, his baner was forth laid,
& righ it felle þerto, for no man him withsaid.
¶ [1] þe erle of Ostrece cam, & put his banere out,
& R. asked þorgh wham þe erle bare him so stout.

---

cite rendre & bien promettaýnt, Ke la seinte tere Jerusalem rendraýnt, Et vint mille Cristiens qen prisoun auaint. Ne Phelipp ne Richard de ceo se affýaýnt, Mes de jour en altre al assalt alaýnt, *in Codd. Gallicis.*

[1] Le duk de Austrice i veent, & banere desplýe. *Gall.*

Kỳng R. þorght hatie after þe Erle sent,
& asked, " of what seignorie holdes þou lond & rent,
" þat þou has put out here þi baner for maistrie,
" Among kỳnges baneres, withouten auowrie?

" SIR, said þe duke, " I am now comen here,
" þise Sarazins to rebuke, & slo at mỳ powere.
" Mỳ lond I hold with right, at no man's dome,
" Bot of God alle mỳgh, & Saỳnt Petir of Rome.
" [1] If þou to non þat lyues," said R. " þou chene ne bowe,
" þi lond men salle gife tille one þat maỳ it vowe.
Grete scathe afterward in a litille þrawe
Com tille kỳng R. for þat envios sawe.

De obsidione castri Pilgrim, & de remocione Philippi.

NOW haf þe Cristen won Acres þat was lorn,
þe Sarazins ouer ron with force & doun born.
þe folk was mỳkelle & strong, of mete þei had grete nede,
þam burd departe þer þrong, þat lond mot þam not fede.
þei parted þe oste in tuo, þorgh comon acordance.
R. wille was so, so was Philip of France.
A castelle was þer biside fro Acres a jorne,
Grete scaþe it did bi tide to þe Cristen in þe cuntre.
þe castelle hight Pilgrỳm, of alle it bare þe flour:
þe Sarazins kept it þat tỳm for þer chefe warinstour.

---

quin & duk *etiam infra in MSS. Gallicis. Adeo ut apud interpretem nostrum idem valeat* erle *quod* duk, *id quod paullo post etiam liquet, ubi* duke *plane habet.*

[1] Sire duke, dist le Reis, par le fiz Marie, Si tu nas seỳgnour, ta tere ert altrỳe, *Gallice.*

þat

þat castelle was fulle strong, & ille for to wynne,
þe Sarazins kept it long, þei wer inow þer in.
Philip went him þidere, þat castelle to conquere,
þe Frankis alle togider did nouh whan þei com þere.
¶ Richard oste forth ran, & grace bifor him fond,
Auht jornes he wan with in þe Sarazins lond.
Philip þat þer laý to spede had he no grace,
It was not worþe an aý, his dede no his manace.
R. herd it saý, he dred an oste mot skip
Behind, & stop his waý bituex him & Philip,
" & if þe Soudan ros opon Philip of France,
" & I wer þan in clos withouten cheuisance,
" So mýght it in a while þe gode torn tille ille,
" A man salle aý drede gile, þe gode is not at wille.
R. his oste did turne, tresore he had inouh,
Nouht wild he soiorne, to Philip fast he drouh.
¶ Whan kýng Philip hard, þat R. was comand,
How faire hap with him ferd, so fer wan in þe land,
þat R. turned ageýn, his marschalle teld him whý;
& said Philip, " certeýn our dede is not worþi.
" Our dede has bene nouht sen we hider camen,
" To turne haf I þouht tille Acres alle samen.
" If R. hider com, wynne it bifor vs alle,
" þat we þis sege nom, schame it wille vs falle.
" þan salle men doute vs lesse, men se we do no dede,
" þe Sarazins our pruesse not so mykelle wille drede.

NOW is þe oste Frankis tille Acres alle went,
& comen ere þe Inglis with pauilloun & tent,
& loged þam right wele ouer alle þer þam þink,
Inouh þei had catele, & plente mete & drỳnk.
Whan þei had alle eten, & watches mad alle preste,
To gete þat þei had geten, R. ȝede to reste.

Ecce deprecacio Ricardi per totum.

¶ Orely on̄ þe morn his messe he ȝede to here,
To Jhesu of Marỳ born þis was his praỳere:
" Lord Jhesu," he said, " als so verraỳly
" As mỳ luf is on þe laid, & on̄ þi moder Marỳ,
" Help me to venge þi dede of þis Sarazins kỳnd,
" þat gaf conseile & rede, þe to bete & bỳnd,
" & namlỳ on þat blode, þat com of fals Pilate,
" þat wist sakles þou stode, whan he on̄ þi dome sate.
" Jhesu for þin honour, if it be þi wille,
" I ask þe now socoure, mỳ ȝernỳng to fulfille.

Ecce quæ dicit Ricardus.

RICHARD at Godesbord his messe had & his rightes,
Here now swilk a word he spak to his knỳghtes:
" Of þis kyng Philip haf we no maner of help,
" Togidir I rede we kip, þat men of vs ȝelp.
" I vowe to Saỳnt Michael, & tille halwes þat are,
" þat for wo ne wele hiþen ne salle I fare,
" Ne tille Acres go, tille þe castelle be taken,
" þat Philip went fro, for vs has it forsaken.
" For his awen defaut with vs he has envie,
" Go we to þe assaut þat God vs alle condie.

De capcione castri per Ricardum.

¶ þe dikes were fulle wide þat closed þe castelle about,
& depe on̄ ilk a side, with baukis hie without.

Was

Was þer non entre, þat to þe castelle gan ligge,
Bot a streite kauce, at þe end a drauht brigge,
With grete duble cheynes drauhen ouer þe gate,
& fyfti armed sueynes porters at þat ȝate.
With slenges & magneles þei kast to kyng Richard,
Our Cristen bi parcelles kasted ageynward.
[1] Ten sergeanz of þe best his targe gan him bere,
þat egre wer & prest to couere him & to were.
Himself as a Geant þe cheynes in tuo hew,
þe targe was his warant, þat non tille him threw.
Right vnto þe ȝate with þe targe þei ȝede,
Fightand on a gate, vndir him þe slouh his stede.
þer for ne wild he sesse, alone in to þe castele
þorgh þam alle wild presse, oñ fote fauht he fulle wele.
¶ & whan he was withinne, & fauht as a wilde leon,
He fondred þe Sarazins otuynne, & faubt as a dragon.
Withoute þe Cristen gan crie, "allas! R. is taken,
þo Normans were sorie, of contenance gan blaken.
To slo doun & to stroye, neuer wild þei stint,
þei left for dede no noye, ne for no wounde no dynt.
þat in went alle þer pres, maugre þe Sarazins alle,
& fond R. on des fightand, & wonne þe halle.
No body bot he alone vnto þe Cristen cam,
& slayn he had ilkone, þe lordes bot þre he nam.
With þo þre o lyue his messengers went,
Tille Acres gan þei dryue, to Philip mad present.

De probitate ejus, quando pugnavit per se in castro.

[1] Dis seriauntz des plus feres, e de melz vanez, Deua- unt le cors le Reis sa targe ount portez, *Codd. Gallici.*

NOW is grete honour comen to Inglis men
þorgh R. þe conquerour, his douhtýnes we ken.
Kýng Philip of France fulle gretelý is he noýed,
þat R. had suilk chance, þe castelle had destroýed.
þorgh spíe þe Soudan wist, þat Philip was no paýed,
No gamen him ne list, bot held him alle dismaýed.
To Philip a letter he sent þe Soudan Saladýn,
A noþer to R. went, þat brouht a Sarazýn.
þus þan gan he seýe, als it wer for þer prowe,
Unto þe kýnges tueýe, " þe Soudan gretes ȝow,
" & sais for seuen ȝere God þan were þe trewe.
" If ȝour God be so clere, & of so grete vertewe,
" As ȝe preche oft tide, for sothe ȝe schew & seíe,
" We Sarazins on our side be þat týme salle purueie,
" þat þis lond salle be ȝours, & we bicome Cristen,
" Withouten mo stours or blode spillýng of men,
" & haf alle þat ȝe wan withouten gansaýing.
þerto ansuer gan Philip þe kýng,
& said, " þer men bedis skille, skille men ouh to take.
" þo þat wille not þat tille, skille salle þam forsake.

" ALLAS!" saíd Richard, " þat euer it suld be couth,
" Or spoken efterward said of Cristen mouth,
" þat for a Sarazins sawe, contreued of fals quaýntise,
" A Cristen man suld him withdrawe fro Jhesu Criste seruise.
" Alle ere we hider comen, Jhesu Criste to serue,
" þe waý for him we nomen, for him to lyue & sterue.
" His childre ere we alle, of God our fader biforn,
" þis lond suld to vs falle, þer our fader was born.

" Jhesu

" Jhesu was born here, & alle our first lẏnage,
" We ere his childre dere, we claẏme þis our heritage,
" þat þise paen hondes our ancestre haf reft,
" & þorgh hard woundes of þam salle reẏme it eft.
" Bot if þei wille with pes þis lond ȝeld vs alle quite,
" þei salle þan haf reles, of faẏth gode respite.
" If þei at no certeẏn wille ȝeld it vs with pes,
" We salle wynne it ageẏn, þat þei bifor vs les.
" [1] þat dos not his deuere with dede no with rede,
" Hastelẏ þis ȝere falle him þe ferẏnges dede.

PHILIP vnderstode, R. wild not consent,
þat ilk conant forth ȝode, þat þe Soudan sent.
Philip held him stille, & bigan to smẏle,
Men sais þat comes of ille, & þinkẏng som gile.
Noþeles daẏ & oþer he purueied priuelẏ,
Of mast, saile, & roþer he dight his schip redẏ.
¶ Oft he sent for leue vnto kẏng R.
Sekenes gan him so greue, þat he mot wende homward.
He was in poẏnt to ȝelde þe gaste, & sone to die,
For euel he ne mẏght him welde, in bed behoued him lie.
Sen oþer wais ne mẏght vaile, þan said R. for wo,
" Philip now wille me faile, & alle gate wend me fro.
" Conant holdes he non, þat he to Jhesu hight,
" With bodẏ & soule alon to venge him at his mẏght.
" Sen Jhesu he wille not venge, ne hold his vowe no þing,
" He salle him chalenge þe daẏ of his endẏng.

Philippus licentia petita à Ricardo ad Franciam se paravit.

[1] Ke son deuer ne face, pur quaẏ la croice perist, [*sive* prist, [Hastiement luẏ prenge la male mort subit, *Codd. Gall.*

" If

" If he wille go or duelle, as he wille I wille wele,
" þe despite, þat is to telle, to God is don ilk dele.
¶ Fulle oft biforhand bituex þam was distance,
For wynnýng of þe land, þat R. wan þorgh chance.
Haluendele asked Philip, as for first conant,
& for felawschip of Cipres conquerand.
Of þat Philip of France, for he suld haf grantise,
Mad R. a quite clamance fro him & alle hise,
& neuer þorgh no destresse suld clayme þer of no right.
Philip with grete mekenesse his trouth þerto plight,
Gascoýn & Normundie suld ȝeme at his powere,
Withouten vilanie, tille his comýng were nere.

PHILIP tok his leue, withouten more essoýne
His suld alle to cheue, tille Sir Hugh of Burgoýne.
Alle þe Frankis oste Sir Hugh had in kepýng,
Now sailes fro þat coste, home wendes Philip þe kýng.
In þe se sailand he lendes toward Lumbardie,
[1] þe erle of Ostrice wendes with him companie.
R. stille he leues, þe lond he wild more se,
& Saladýn he reues þe flom of [2] Cisare.
At þat ilk flom Richard gaf batáile,
Greuance had he som, here now of his trauaile.
In Antioche, in Acres, in alle þo ilk cuntres,
He set wardeýns watres, to kepe alle þe entres.
Siþen toward Caýfas displaied his banere,
& euer his nauie was in þe se biside not fere.

[1] Le duk de Austrice *Codd. Gallici.* [2] Cesaree, *sive* Cesarye, *MSS. Gall. tam hîc quam & infra.*

Richard

De pugna ad flumen Cisarie.

RICHARD [1] his his spie on̄ Soudan Saladỳn,
Som said he suld lie at þe toun of Joppỳn.
To Joppỳn whan he cam, þe Soudan was not þere,
þe flom þe Soudan nam, R. forto affere.
Saladỳn priuely was bussed beside þe flom,
& spied strete & stie what R. suld com,
þat he suld not pas, ne [2] mo man of his oste.
þe water stopped was, þer passage suld be moste.
[3] Saladỳn did stoppe þe dikes [4] kank & bro,
þat non suld ouer hoppe, ne man ne hors suld go
þorgh þat enbussement, þat was so priuelỳ,
R. suld be schent, if þat waỳ he com bỳ.

RICHARD fast him drouh toward Cisare,
To witte where or how þe best passage mot be.
Whan R. þider cam, he sauh þer was tre gette,
Passage non he nam, þe forthes wer withsette.
R. beheld aboute, of gile he drede him neid,
Of Sarazins a grete route, (þe lond was vmbeleid,)
& alle þat suerd mot bere, or oþer wapen weld,
Were sette R. to dere, enbussed þorgh þe feld.
He said, "Jhesu mercỳ, & þi moder dere,
"Wherfore we com & whỳ, now we fỳnd þam here.
Whan he sauh he ne mỳght passe on non wise,
In þre parties to fight his oste he did deuise.

---

[1] *F.* has. [2] *F.* no. *Nam Codices Gallici,* De Richard nỳ passe, ne nul de sa partỳe. [3] Saladỳn les hoers de flum ad saisỳe *Gallice.* [4] *F.* bank.

Sir

De Jacobo Auenue.

SIR James [1] of Auenu he had þe first eschele,
Was non of his vertu in armes did so wele,
Gentille of norture, & noble of lynage,
Was non þat bare armure, þat did suilk vassalage.
Of werre & of bataile he was fulle auise,
þer wisdom suld auaile was non so trewe als he.
Pere had he non in þe lond þer he was born,
He praied þe kyng on one he mot be first biforn,
& he gaf him þe vamward, þe Sarazins oste to cleue,
& he at kyng R. for euer þan toke his leue.
þe kyng withoute essoyn suld be in þe midde,
[2] & þe erle of Burgoyn he suld haf þe þridde.
With were þe templers, & þer fraternite,
Fals in alle maners, so tellis þe stori me.

De turmis Saladini.

ON þe toþer side þe of þe Sarazin,
In þe vamward suld ride þe Soudan Saladyn,
Paien most worþi of alle þe lond of his kyn,
So told me þe stori þat I fond writen in.
In þe secund turbe was maister Coradyn
Lord of Damas, his fader was Safadyn.
[3] Soudan so curteys neuer drank no wyne,
þe same þe Romans sais þat is of Richardyn.

---

[1] *In the MS. of the Heralds Office 'tis* de Aucunes, *in one of Mr. Anstis's* de Aucune, *but in the other* de Auenues. *Yet below both of Mr. Anstis's Copies have* Auenues. [2] Al duk de Burgoyne la terce est comaunde, Et al mestre du Temple oue [*sive* ou, *vel* ouf] sa fraternete, *MSS. Gallici.* [3] Soldan plus curtoys ne goustait vnkes vyn. De la terce eschele mestre fu Melchyn, Seygnour de Bandas, e Melchi-

¶ & ouer þe þrid pas was maister Sir Melchỳn,
Lord of Baudas, & Sir Matifasỳn,
Lord of Galile, & þe stede þat Chaỳn,
& Sire of þat cuntre, þer Abel was slaỳn.
¶ [1] James of Auenue, he was verraỳ pilgrỳn,
He gan first remue þe croice mad on his brỳn.
On̄ þer first eschel he smot in fulle hastif,
& þorgh þam ilka del, als grehound or mastif,
Tuỳs withouten encumbre, with suerd in his hand,
He slouh withouten numbre, bifor him mot non stand.
Biside com a Sarazins, bituex him & a bank,
Sir Kalaphes Durỳns, he smote of James schank.
¶ þan spak James, " þo a kosỳn help Richard,
" Fulle fer ert þou me fro, kast þe now to me ward.
" þi sister sonne am I, þou eam & I cosỳn.
" [2] þi fader kỳng Henrỳ in þe castelle Constantỳn
" Mỳ moder þan gate he opon dame Auelyn.
" Countas of Marche was sche, & or I ȝit do mỳ fỳn
" Mỳ dede salle I venge on Kalaphes Durỳn.
" With a gode suerd of lorenge he smote þorgh þe Sarazin,
James lese þer his hand, & died in þat pỳn. De morte Jacobi.
On̄ þe morn men him fand, & þe frere Baudwỳn,

Welchifasỳn, [*sive* Wetiphasin] Seỳgnour de Galỳle & del leu on Caỳn Tua son frere Abel par [*vel* on] feloun engỳn *Codd. MSS. Gallici.*

[1] Sire Jaqes de Aucunes, [*sive* Auenues] verraỳ pelrỳn, Se seỳgne de la croice & prent son chemỳn [*sive* chỳmỳn *vel* chimyn] *MSS. Gall.* [2] Le Reỳ Henrỳ ton pere en chastel Constantỳn Engendra ma mere sur dame Auelỳn, Countesse de la Marche, pur Dieu & Seint Martỳn Venez venger ma morte sur ceo Saracỳn, *Codd. Gallici.*

A frere of þe hospitalle, þe erle's sonne Paulýn,
Was lord of Morian alle & of Mount [1] Modýn.

WHAN R. herd saý, þat James was slaýn,
He wend for dole to deý, he com as a wode man,
[2] & Saladýn sauh him cam, þer of fulle wele he lete,
Ageýn R. he nam, togider gan þei mete,
A kýng & a Soudan of alle þe world þe beste.
R. tille him ran, a stroke on him he fest,
He smote him in þe helm, bakward he bare his stroupe.
þe bodý he did ouerwhelm, his hede touched þe croupe,
He felle doun with þe dýnt, bot son he ros vp light,
Herneýs nouht ne týnt, bot eft oñ hors fulle wight.

De insultatione regis Ricardi & Saladini.

R. at þat turne þe flom he wan fulle wele,
For Sarazin ne wild he skurne þat were of his eschele.
Fourti þousand paien, what drenkled & what slaýn,
& a þousand Cristen, so was þe tale certeýn.
For soth þe þrid eschele fulle hard was bisted,
þe templers ilk a dele failed & þien fled.
þe [3] erle" bakward was born, & alle þe Frankis men
Fulle nere had þei bien lorn, bot þei cried, *help Cristen.*
þe erle bigan to crie, " turne and help vs Richard,
" Or els salle we die, þat ere in þis rereward.

[1] Moryn *Codd. Gall.* [2] Qaunt Saladýn lý vait de bone volentez Aproche al Reý Richard, ia sunt encountrez, *Gallice.* [3] Duk de Burgoýne *Codd. Gall.*

[1] Sir,

[1] "SIR," said kyng Guyon, "turne ageyn, I rede,
"Frankis & Burgoillon, els alle gos to dede.
"þe Soudan Saladyn has þam nere conquered,
"þe templers magre myn, fals þei er & ferd.
"If þei had standen nere, þe myght haf wonnen pris,
"Non dos þer deuere, bot Raynald þe marchis.
Said þe kyng R. "if þe duke be taken,
"It salle be þam hard, bot þei haf him forsaken.
þe flom sone he left, ageyn toke his gate,
þe duke fro þam he reft, welnere he com to late.
[2] þe duke at þat bataile lost sex & þrittȳ knyghtes,
þre hundreth of pedaile, a hundreth sergeanz at rightes.
þe duke alle þese les, & þo þat were olyue,
R. for alle þe pres sauely did þam vp ryue.
At þat tyme R. þere many a man slouh he,
þe kyng sonne of Dare he smote in tuo his the.
þe Soudan Saladyn he was fulle vnfayn,
He fled with mykelle pyn vnto þe mountayn.
R. has þe pris at þe flom of Cisare,
þe Sarazin force doun his, Jhesu we þank þe.

---

[1] De Jerusalem le Reỳ Guỳoun gentỳls Dist al Reỳ Richard, Sire tournez le vỳs, Le duk e sa eschele sunt ia taunt supris, Le Soldan Saladyn apoỳ [*sive* ad poỳ, *vel* a poỳ] les ad conquỳs, *Codd. Gall.* [2] Le duk pardist cel houre chiualers trent & sỳs, Treis centz de petayle, seriauntz cent e dỳs. Et de cel eschele, qauntz qe sount remỳs, Fet le Reỳ passer le flum a [*vel* ad] lour amỳs, *Codd. Gall.*

[1] þise

[1] ÞISE Sarazins were so fesid, þat fled was Saladýn,
& Cisare has he sesid, Japht & Joppýn,
Cades & Ascalon, alle has kyng Richard:
Under him kýng Guýon had þam alle in ward.
þe duke was in a cas, his wondes wer so grým,
þat his leche was in ille hope of him,
& R. was fulle dred, þe leche mot him not saue."
Tille Acres þei him led, better hele to haue.
In þer waý ilk dele þei fond voide als hethe.
þe toun of Mount Carmele, þe toun of Nazareth,
þe strong castelle Pilrýn, þat first wonnen was,
Alle tok Ricardýn, Caloýn & Kaýfas.
Ilkon þise þei seised, tome alle þei fond,
Seke were þer heised, heled þam of wound.

Saldanus venit tractare pacem.

¶ þe Soudan to R. sent, to speke togider in glath,
For þe pes it ment, & of no maner wrath.
Ne no þing suld it greue vnto þe Cristiente,
þe barons said bi leue, welcom mot he be.
Saladýn come þider þat daý þat he sette,
þe barons wer togider, þe kýnge & þam he grette.
¶ "Sir," said Saladýn, "þi God has grete powere,
"Er alle þise Cristen þin, þat þou kepes here?
"þise Inglis," said R. "in my kepýng þei are,
"þe Frankis haf oþer ward, wiþ þe erle of Burgoýn þei fare.

---

[1] Richard Reis Englaýs ad saisýe Cesaree, Joppen e Scalon, Cades & Japhe, Et al Reý Guýoun la garde ad done. Le duk de Burgoýne est si male mene. Qe lý Sirogene del duk est desperee, Et le Reý Richard mout [*sive* mult] desconforte, *MSS. Gall.*

"Bot

" Bot þei be of þi faith, els do þei wrong,
" þei stand alle to gode graith, whan þou ert þam among,
" & þou ert comen fro ferne, & riche kyng is of fe,
" If þou pes wille ȝerne, for þe & þi meyne,
" & trewe for seuen ȝere, I consent þertille,
" If þou has þat manere, to do euenhede & skille.

" CERTES Saladyn, " said þe kyng Richere, Responsio Ricardi.
" To mak partie ageyn myn ȝit ha þou gode powere,
" & for þe pes to seke has þou no mystere,
" þertille to mak me meke, my herte to ȝit in wehere.
" þou has power inouh, wherto askes þou pes?
" & my wille wille not bouh, to grante þat þou ches.
" If þou þe lond wille ȝeld, þerof is to speke,
" & siþen if þou wild þi lay forsake & breke,
" & take our bapteme of funte, as childre ȝing,
" I salle gyue þe a reame, & do þe coroun kyng.

[1] " SIR," said Saladyn, " þank I auh ȝow conne, Saldanus dixit.
" þat þou me profers of þin, & has non enchesonne.
" If I myght þe paemie justise þam ilkone,
" & non had seignorie bot I my self alone,
" þan I trow my þouht myght acord to þin,
" Bot now dar I nouht. [2] My broþer Safadyn

[1] Sire, dist Saladyn, gre te dey sauer, Ke tu saunz desert me vols honourer, *Gallice.* [2] Mon frere Safadyn teent son regne entere, Ses fiz sunt grantez seygnours, ne volent lesser Tere ne tenement, pur nuly precher, *Gall.*

" Is riche of tenement, his sonnes strong & stith,
" þer wille wille not be went, ne lete þer lond ne lith.
" Wild þe bicom Cristen, fulle eth I were to drawe,
" Bot I dar not for þam alle one to leue our lawe.

RICHARD said, " per faỳ, go now & conseile þe,
" & bi þe þrid daỳ, þat salle haf certeỳnte.
" Bi þan I salle þe saỳ, how þat it salle go,
" Of pes to haf þe waỳ, or werre, on of þe tuo.
Listen now a gile of Sir Safadỳn,
Contreued a wikked wile oñ his broþer Saladỳn.
¶ Now wendes Saladỳn þer his oste gan lie,
His [1] boþer Safadỳn his comỳng did spie,
He sent to kỳng R. a stede for curteisie,
On of þe best reward, þat was in paemie:
Bad him bi þat ȝere token, ware him for tricherie;
Said, " Saladỳn was fulle foen, on him maỳ non affie,
" He sais behind þi bak, in strange companie,
" Wordes þat er to lak, he dar þe wele diffie,
" If he & þou alone mỳght ȝow togider alie,
" He mỳght withouten mone of þe wynne þe maistrie;
[2] " &, Sir, if þou be suilk, als men of þe crie,
" Rebuke him for þat ilk of þat auauntrie.
" If I maỳ be auaile of hors or armurie,
" Forsoth I salle not faile, to mende þi partie:
Bot or þat daỳ felle to stand, þat þer acorde suld be,
Had R. herd tiþand out Normundie.

[1] *Sic.* [2] Si tu soỳs taunt vaỳllaunt, com le mounde te crỳe, Rebukez le bien de sa sur quiderỳe, *Codd. Gallici.*

¶ þe

¶ " þe folk out of France to Normundie were comen,
" To R. desceÿuance his londes haf þei nomen.
" Bot he com right son, Normundie to fende,
" His right bes nouht doun soner þan anÿ wend.
[1] Wherfore to som of his he schewed þam þe skille,
To treus oñ alle wise him burd grant þertille.

UNDER þe mount Thabor, in a faire medue,
Boþe þe parties wer þore to conseile for þe treue"
[2] " Sir," said Saladÿn, " is it þi wille to saÿ,
" þis daÿ is mÿn & þin, chese þou now what waÿ.
For Safadyn's sawe R. had enuie,
Wherfore a gode þrawe he stod in a studie.
þat sawe þat he þer said, so wele it was of leten,
In boke it was vp laid, ȝit is it not forgeten.
R. þis ansuerd to Saladÿu for treu,
For þo men þat it herd wrote vs þat word alle new.

De pace tractata & ordinata per Ricardum & Saladinum.

" TREUS þou askes a þrowe, for tuo ȝere or þre,
" þo men, þat þe knowe, saÿ þou skornes me.
" þe folk of paiemie þe word þer of fer gos,
" Of alle þat seignorie þorghout þin is þe los;
" In armes is þer none, þat to þi renoun reches,
" Wherfor þou has goné, & of þi pruesse preches,

[1] Le Reÿ Richard as vns la chos certifÿe, Et a parler de trewe al Soldan plus se plÿe, *MSS. Gall.* [2] Est Saladÿn venuz en amour saunz boÿdie, Et prÿe al Reÿ Richard, que son plaisir lÿ dÿe, *Codices Gall.*

" þat if þou me mot mete bi our seluen tuo,
" Mỳ lif I suld forlete, or mỳ hede for go.
" & if þou wille it proue, þat þou ert so worþi,
" A stede tille our behoue here is on alle redi.
" Now for þi grete valow, I ask þe a bone,
" þat or we grante trew, fight we als so sone,
" þan on non oþer side bodỳ so bolde to be,
" On fote ne hors ride, to socour me no þe.
" & whilk of vs is doun, & mad is recreant,
" Cleỳme & accioun he lese, & þe remanant
" Of þat ilk land, þat Cristen euer auht,
" þat þei held in þer hand of God þat þam it tauht.
¶ þan said Saladỳn, " if þou fỳnd anỳ man,
" Cristen or Sarazin, [1] þat what tỳme or whan,
" I mad auancement with þe alone to fight,
" Bot I to bataile went for mỳ reame's right,
" Here I salle þe gỳue alle mỳn heritage,
" & als along as I lỳue to be in þin ostage.
¶ þe maister of þe Temple com procurand þe pes,
" No more of þis to demple, tak þat þat ȝe first ches.
Saladỳn for alle hise hette to hold conaunt,
Seuen ȝere at his deuise, & R. þer to graunt,
þat ilk a Cristen man suld hold & haue certeỳn
Alle þat he þer wan, & no þing ȝeld ageỳn.

[1] *Id est*, that knows or can tell what, *&c.*

Now

NOW is it in forward alle pesed & wele ent,
Now turne kyng R. tille Acres is he went.
After kyng Guyon & for his sonne he sent,
Of Antioche Reymon him also he ment,
Aunfrey of Turoyn he was per present,
Of Triple erle Bumoun fulle suipe pider glent,
Sir [1] Ruffyn broper Leoun, alle pise held parlement.
Kyng R. his resoun said pam, " how he was schent,
" Philip did him tresoun, destroied his tenement.
" For to stanch his foysoun homward haf I ment.
" Normundie alle doun, mykelle per of is brent
" & slayn blak & broun of alle pat he mot hent.
" I wille of pat feloun tak vengement,
" pat so fordos my coroun, if grace be to me lent.
¶ " Wherfor ge lordynges, ge ere me lefe & dere,
" I take in gour kepynges pe londes pat we wonne here.
" pe freres of pe hospital, & pe temple also,
" Biseke pam I salle, pat pei help gow perto.
" Now haf I don & said, & tauht gow pat I may,
" My hope is on gow laid, lordynges haf gode day.

THE prince of Antioche, & pe kyng Guyon,
Bumunde erle of Triple, & Aunfrey of Turoun,
pise had in per ward cite, kastelle & toun,
pat pe kyng R. wan of Sarazin seloun,
& Isaac pe Emperour takes his liuerisoun,
With freres mad soioure in temple dominoun.

Rex dixit baronibus suis & peciit licenciam ab eis, & iter arripuit versus Angliam.

[1] *So 'tis also in one of Mr. Anstis's Copies. But in the other, as also in that of the Heralds Office, 'tis* Rupyn.

His douhter with þe quene was for hir warisoun,
& so felle it to bene, hir fader lese þe coroun,
& as R. home went toward þis regioun,
Or he were taken or hent, or holden in prisoun,
He gaf his sistere þat while vnto þe erle Reymoun
Lord of Saynt Gile, aman of grete renoun.
[1] I fond in my boke, what skille ne for whi,
þat he his folk forsoke, & ȝede so priueli.
[2] Aufrice to aspie him were better haf left,
þer in þorgh felonie was he robbed & reft,
Taken with enmys & holden in prisoun,
I kan not say þe pris was gyuen for his ransoun.
In prison was he bonden, as þe Romance sais,
In cheynes & lede wonden, þat heuy was of peis.
A noþer pyne he had, if it may be trod,
With [3] iren nayles sad, it sais, his fete was schod.

[1] *Forte,* I ne fond. [2] *Potius,* Austrice, *cum MSS. Gall.* [3] *Without all doubt King Richard was used very roughly, and not agreeable to his Royal Dignity, after he was imprisoned. 'Tis for that very reason, that some Historians tell us (notwithstanding it be not mentioned in this Chronicle) that a Lyon was brought to him when he was confined in prison, with an intent to have (by that means) destroyed him. But instead of that, he kill'd the Lyon (to the great confusion and astonishment of his enemies) by thrusting his arm into his mouth, and thereby bruising him so at the heart, that he died. John Rastall is one of those, that speaks of this memorable Action, taking notice, at the same time, of the causes of his being set upon, and of the vast sum of money that was demanded and paid for his ransom. At the same time he likewise observes, that, according to some, he was called* Cure de Lyon *from this Heroical Exploit, but, according to others,*

thers, (who take no notice of this Affair) from his invincible Courage. Rastall himself seems to think, this Denomination was occasion'd by his killing the Lyon; and for that reason, as I take it, it is, that the wooden Cut, which he hath given us of K. Richard, represents him with the Lyon between his Legs, and thrusting his right Arm down his Throat. 'Tis probable he had seen old Pictures that confirm'd this Representation. 'Tis also likely, that his Brother-in-law Sir Thomas More (from whom he had receiv'd so much assistance in his Historical Enquiries) approved of it. Indeed I have not yet seen (that I remember) any other old Figure, (besides this in Rastall) in which K. Richard is drawn after this manner. And yet I cannot but think, that he was sirnamed Cure de Lyon *from some particular Action, rather than from his Courage in general, it being usual with our Ancestors to give Sirnames from particular remarkable Accidents, such as distinguished them in a peculiar manner from other eminent persons. And as Richard I. had got a very great name for his overcoming the Lyon (as well as he had for abundance of other very uncommon Instances of Courage) so others also strived to follow his Steps, and were forward to encounter Lyons, and were willing to have themselves pictured as engaging with them. And, for better remembrance of such Adventures, they were often painted in old Halls, just as were also the Encounters that Gentlemen of Activity in Feats of Arms had with any strange Knights, such as those of the Blesells, hinted at by Leland, Itin. Vol. VII. p. 61. Such Pictures were look'd upon very justly as great Ornaments to Halls, and 'tis pity more care hath not been taken to preserve them. Sometimes there were figures in our old Wainscotts that had Allusion to Heroical Actions, and these, therefore, ought also to be regarded by curious Persons, who may even from thence be capable of illustrating some Particulars in our History. I have seen curious Works of this nature in some old Houses in Oxford. They were much in vogue in Q. Elizabeth's time, as they had been also in the Reign of her Father K. Henry VIIIth. when Cabinets were, withall, finely adorn'd with Pictures of Antiquity, as may appear as well from other instances, as from that which had been Leland's Cabinet in the Bodleian Library. But instead of exspatiating, I*

shall give Rastall's own words, as I find them in the Copy of his Chronicle that was lent me by my kind Friend Mr. Murray.——This kynge Rycharde perceyued that the Chrysten people decresyd in the holy lande | aswell by infyrmytes as lacke of vytell | toke a truce for. iii. yere and returned whomewarde | and sent the quene his wyfe by the see | and he sayled with a small company into Hiistra & there landed | where he was takyn prisoner by the duke of Ostreche and by him put in prison | and brought to Henry Emperour of Almayne | whiche put hym in stronge prison | and after Raunsomed hym at c. M. li. whiche duke of Ostrychе was afterwarde therfore accursed of the pope for the wronge done to kynge Rycharde.

kynge rycharde takyn prisoner.

¶ Also for the payment of this sayd Raunsome | afterwarde the woll of all the whyte monkes and chanons in Englande was solde | and rynges | iewels of prelates and vessels and chalyces of all the churches thorowe the lande | and dyuers and many shrynes scraped and spoyled of theyr golde and syluer. Dyuers causes there were as wryters reherse | that the Emperour sholde owe grudge to kynge Richarde | one was because kynge Rycharde had promysed to the Emperour an ayde for the wynnynge of the kyngdome of Cicyle | whiche the Emperour claymed as his inheritance | whiche promyse kynge Rycharde as he sayd brake. Another cause was for that the kyng Rycharde toke from a knyght of the duke of Ostryche the dukes banner and trode it vnder his fete in dispyte of the duke and of the Emperour his lorde | & therfore the duke & the Emperour were gladde to do kynge Rycharde displeasure.

¶ It is sayd that a Lyon was put to kynge Rycharde beynge in prison to haue deuoured hym | and when the Lyon was gapynge | he put his Arme in his mouthe and pulled the lyon by the harte so hard | that he slewe the lyon. And therfore some say he is called Rycharde Cure de lyon | but some say he is called Cure de lyon because of his boldenesse and hardy stomake.

perfor

þerfor þe pape of Rome cursed þam wroþerheile,
Alle þat did þat dome, or þerto gaf conseile.
His moder dame Alienore, & þe barons of þis land,
For him trauailed sore, & brouht him out of band.

WHAN he of bond was brouht for raunson þat was riche,
His moder so bisouht, he arẏued at Sandwiche.
To Canterbire fulle euen he souht to haf his bote,
Miles he ȝede seuen to Saẏnt Thomas on̄ fote.
With fulle riche offerẏng he wirschipped S. Thomas.
His praier did him brẏng out of his hard cas,
þanked God & him so wele for him had schaped,
þat of his anguẏs grim so lightlẏ was escaped.

TO while þat R. was biȝond þe se in hold,
Jon did him trespas, his rentes tok & sold,
His castels sesed & brak, bigan a grete distance,
& neuer no word spak of R. deliuerance.
Bot als a kẏng of lond Jon bare him fulle stoute,
þerfor R. wele fond with dome to chace him oute,
& deme him als a noþer, for his vnkẏnd folie.
To kẏng R. his broþer Jon mercẏ gan crie,
þer moder þam bisouht, for to be at one.
Of trespas þat he had wrouht R. forgaf it Jon
& said, " þi misdede be in þi mẏnsyng,
" Euer more to drede, eft to do suilk þing,
" & I wille neuer more on þi trespas þenk,
" If þou repent þe sore, þat þou did suilk a blenk.

Dummodo Rex R. incarceratus fuit ultra mare, Johannes frater ejus commisit [1] multis injuriis contra eum.

[1] Sic.

Ri-

De parliamento apud Londonias.

RICHARD to Londen wendes, to hold parlement,
For his barons sendes, & þei alle to him went.
At Westminster ilkone parlement þei held,
To þam he mad his mone, & þus to þam teld.
¶ " Lordýnges of mý chance wele ȝe auh to wite,
" & þat þe kýng of France wille me disherite.
" For þat I was bistad biȝond þe se in hold,
" þerfor Philip is glad, & beres him fulle bold.
" Mý castels he takes, & seises mý citez,
" Destruction he makes of rentes & feez.
" Wherfore barons dere, sais me a gode certeýn,
" & how & what manere mý lond to gete ageýn.

Ecce comes sapienter & breviter respondit.

¶ þan spak þe erle Rogere, as a man fulle wýs,
" Erles with þar powere, barons þat er of pris,
" Knýghtes gode & wight, sergeanz alle in ferd,
" þise salle alle be dight, & help þe with þer suerd.
" Bisshopes & persons, burgeis of citez,
" & rich merchandes eftsons salle help with þer [1] mone.
" Abbaý & priorie, & oþer religions,
" For vs salle praý & crie in þer afflictions.
" Better is holy bede of man þat right lýues.
" & standes vs in more stede, þan alle þe gode he gýues.
¶ þe comen wele was paied of þat conseilýng,
þat it were not delaied so was R. þe kýng.

NOW wille kýng R. alle his lond extende,
Merschalle & stiward þerfor about dos sende,
& homage & feaute he askes & releue,
þe barons er fulle frc, to do as to þer chefe.

[1] *F.* mones.

Now

Now has þe kýng wele sped, & comen ageýn to London,
& penies with him led, & spendýng has he fondon.
His barons alle aboute fast tille him drowe,
With hors & armes stoute, þer com tille him inowe.
R. wendes to schip, he wille no lenger duelle,
þe boste of kýng Philip faýn þan wild he felle.

Transfretavit versus Normanniam & Gasconiam contra Regem Franciæ, & cepit Burrez & Gisors.

ARIUED is R. at Depe in Normundie,
He laý þer half a ȝere, estres to aspie.
& whan he sauh he mýght, oñ his folk affie,
[1] His werre ordeýnd & dight to þo þat couþe þam guýe.
To Gascoýne þat he were fulle smertly he gan hie,
Cursels a castelle þere he wan with maistrie.
þe sergeanz þat it held wer in poýnt to die,
To prison þei þam ȝeld, bot mercy gan þei crie.
ȝit he tok a praý, þorgh quayntise & spie,
Burrez he wan þat daý, boþe hous & seignorie,
At þe dangu þat nýght he tok his herbegerie.
To Cursels Philip had tight with alle his companie,
He ne wist it ȝolden was, tille he com so nehi.
Whan he wist, he fled þat pas, to Gisors tok þe stie.
R. perceýued þis, þat Philip to Gisors fled,
He comanded his Inglis, þat after fast þei sped.
þei com Philip so nere, þat he cried, "tak þe kýng,"
Bot non so hardi were, to smýte him for no þing.
Me þouht kýng Philip inouh was disconfite,
Whan he & alle his trip for nouht fled so tite.

[1] Sa gwere fet ordiner, les dutres establýe, Deuers A. quytaýgne sa banere desplýe, *MSS. Gall.*

[1] Pa-

[1] Pauillon & tent Philip bihỳnd him left,
To R. was it sent, no þing þerof reft.
For mỳkelle lete þei ligge, þerof mad þei no force,
Philip vnto þe brigge þei chaced him of Gisors.
On þe brigge were alle þe vamward & þe rere,
Under þam þe brigge gan falle doun in to þe riuere.
Philip & his meỳne in þe water laỳ,
Schame him was to fle, & so him com þat daỳ.

Markade dixit derisionem regi Franciæ.

A Knỳght a bourdour kỳng R. hade,
A doubtỳ man in stoure, his name was Markade.
He sauh kỳng Philip als he laỳ in þe water,
" Sir kỳng rise vp & skip, for þou has wette þi hater.
" þou fisshes not worþe a leke, rise & go þi waỳs,
" For þou has wette þi breke, schent is þi hernaỳs.
þe brigge was brode & long, boþe of tre & stones,
Whan so mỳkelle þrong was þer on̄ at ones.
Sex hundreth mot men se, so fele fallen þer were,
Of whilk þrittỳ & þre did þer endỳng þere.
R. comanded alle gate, þat Philip suld men saue,
For no þing suld þei late, bot help þat lif mot haue.
Of Mount Morice Mathi a baron renome,
Sir Alaỳn of Russie, Sir Fouke de Geffre,

[1] Tent e pauỳllioun, ke Phelipp werpist, Sunt al Reỳ Richard tote saunz countredit. Phelipp oue [*sive* ouf] ses Fraunceỳs al aler se prist, Richard oue [*sive* ouf] ses Englaỳs chacaunt [*sive* chaschaunt, *vel* chasaunt] les suist Al pount de Gysors, qe nest pas petit. En la rere garde nes vn Fraunceỳs remist. Molt fu le pople grant, qaunt le pount chaist, Le Reis en la Rỳuere entre les altres gist, *MSS. Gall.*

þise

þise grete were alle taken, & þer knẏghtes þam bi,
Makade held þam waken, & tok of þam tuenti.
þe prisons he had in ward, for he was gode & trewe:
Now turnes kẏng R. to se his lond Anjowe.
Sen þis ilk tẏme bifore or afterward,
I knowe no more to rẏme of dedes of kẏng R.
Who so wille his dedes alle þe soth se,
þe romance þat men redes þer is the propirte.
þis þat I haf said it is Pers sawe,
Als he in romance laid, þer after gan I drawe.

THE ferth daẏ formest next Palmesonendaẏ,
þe tẏme, as I gest, R. ȝede to playẏ
þorgh a cuntre, men calle it Lẏmosin,
þe castelle manaced he þat Philip had þer in.
R. com ouer nere, þe castelle to aspie,
þat sauh an alblastere, a quarelle lete he flie,
& smote him in þe schank, for þat stroke, allas!
It bigan to rank, þe querelle envenomed was.
Siþen on̄ þe nẏent daẏ died kẏng Richard,
He ligges at an abbaẏ men calle Founz Ebrard.
He regned nien ȝere, & sex monethes mo,
Maugre þe alblastere, þat þus R. gan slo.
I wene it hate Chahalouns, or it hate Galiard,
Ouþer þe castelle or þe toun, þer smẏten was R.
A thousand & a hundred þe date nienti & nien,
þat R. fro vs sundred, dede he was with pine.

De morte Ricardi per balisterium.

M°. C°. XC°. IX°.

Now

NOW is kyng R. dede, & laid in stone,
Non heire was afterward, bot his broþer Jon.
His broþer erle Geffreý right heire felle to be,
(Bot after R. daý Jon tok þe dignite
Or Arthure his [1] sonne,) if he had had his lif.
Bot Jon was þe enchesonne, & moued þer a strif.
Tiþing here we saý, þat Jon wille wedded be,
þe erle of Aquileý his douhter takes he,
Elizabeth þe gent, fair ladý was sche,
Tuo sons of þer descent, tuo douhters ladies fre.

Johannes Rex coronatus est per Hubertum Archiepiscopum Cantuariæ.

THE Ersbisshop Hubert of Canterbire þe se
Com with gode hert, to do þe solempnite.
At Westmýnster, þorgh assent of erle & baroun,
[2] To þat I ore ment Hubert gaf þe coroun,
& enoýnted he was als kyng þorgh resoun.
Jon did aý trespas, men fond in him enchesoun,
He lýued in wo & strife, & in tribulacioun.
He was of licherous life, þorgh what his nacioun
Partie ageýn him ches, & wild haf born him doun.
Normundie he les at his confusioun,
In þe courte of France he was cald a feloun
For Arthure dede þat chance, his broþer sonne Geffroun,
Erle was of Bretaýn, þat to þis lond had right
For to haf bien cheftaýn. If Jon his dede had dight
Mý maister nouht he wrote, to write he me forbede.
Noþeles wele I wote, siþen þe child was dede,

[1] *Id est*, Geffrey's.

[2] A Johon le fiz Richard ad done la coroun, Enoýnt est en Reis oue [*sive* ouf] grant denocioun, *MSS. Gall.*

Jon

Jon had right þertille, þe lond to haf in ward.
þat Arthur suld bi skille haf bien heyre next Richard:
Arthure sister ȝing for dole þat maiden suete
For sorow scho mad endyng, hir name was Margarete.

NOW þe bode is gon to France, Arthure is dede,
& somond haf þei Jon, to Philip courte him dede,
To tak his Jugement of þat [1] felonse,
His dede to him þei ment, Arthur's þe Bretaynie.
Jon dred þat wendyng, to France wild he nouht,
Wherfor Philip þe kyng oñ londes souht,
Tolouse & Tolousan seised & Normundie,
þorgh slauhter of þat man Jon les þat seignorie.
What dos þe kyng of France? atires him gode nauie
Tille Inglond, ochance to wynne it with maistrie.
He wend haf wonne þis lond as he did Tolousan,
þe cuntre sone he fond in his berd redy ran.
þe Walsch & oþer inow, with þam of Peuenese,
þe Frankis men þei slow, Philip was fayn to fle.

NOW is Philip fled, here wan he bote lite,
& Jon Northward him sped, his lond for to visite.
Unto Scotlond he sent after kyng William,
To Lincoln William went, & Jon ageyn him cam,
Withoute þe toun a myle, & in þe wyntertide,
þe day of Saynt Cecile þer parties gan abide.
Homage he did him suere, & feaute in fere,
þat faith he suld him bere, at alle his powere.

[1] *L.* felonie.

Boke

Boke þer was non fette, ne non þer after fore,
Hubert his croice doun sette, & William þeron suore.
þis is þe same Hubert, þat þe saw of nam,
þat trrnslate S. Gilbert in þe hous of Sempýngham.

De morte Huberti, & electione conventus, & minacione Regis apud conventum & archiepiscopum.

NOW Hubert is dede our Sire, & to God is gon,
þe Prioure of Canterbire sendes to kýng Jon,
Bisouht him of leue, to mak eleccion,
To chese þe suld cheue aman of gode renoun.
Jon wrote to þe couent, bisouht þam alle holýche,
þat þei wille make present to þe bisshop of Norwýche.
Of som he had grantise his wille forto do,
& som said oþerwise, þat it suld not be so.
Alle þe priour side þe suppriour þei ches,
Oþer for enuie & pride þe voice of manỳ he les.
þe priour said, " þis daỳ þe suppriour chese we,
þe toþer side said, " naỳ, þe kýnge's praier salle be.
With him of Norwiche grete partie gan hald,
Wherfor boþe holyche to Rome þe parties cald.
Monkes fourtene with him of Norwýche held,
In a voice alle bidene vnto þe kýng þe teld,
& suore him in leaute, how so euer bitid,
Norwýche he suld be Ersbisshop sacrid.
þise monkes stoute & stark, to spede wele þei wend,
þe kýng þre hundreth mark gaf þam forto spend.

Now

NOW er þei alle on gate, vnto þe courte þei cam,
Eleccion þorgh hate it falles to no fram.
To þe pape of Rome þei mostred þer resoun,
þe pape at his dome þer elites quassed doun,
Eft he bad þam chese a man of gode renoun,
Or þei suld þer voice lese of alle þer eleccioun.
Now is þer voice alle laid to Norwỳche partie,
Bifor þe pape þei said, Norwỳche is most worþie.
þe pape wild not consent, he quassed þer elite.
þe monkes alle were schent, suspended þam als tite.
þe pape þei felle biforn, mercỳ gan him crie,
Unto þe kỳng þe suorn, to maỳnten his partie.
þe pape þam assoled, & set þam vp at des,
So þei were conseiled, of Langton Steuen þei ches.
þise monkes were dismaied for Steuen of Langton,
þe pape þer of was paied, mad þe confirmacion.
Maister Steuen of Langtone Ersebisshop salle be,
þe kỳng casten doun. who was wroth bot he?

WHAN þe kỳng vnderstod, þat his clerk was forsaken,
For soth þan was he wode, & maister Steuen taken.
þe clergie of þat schire so euelle he þam led,
þe monkes of Canterbire fro þer cloistere þam fled,
& gaf it to Brabans þe cloister in kepỳng.
þorgh conseil of Sathans wrouht þer Jon þe kỳng,
þe pape sauh out of cours þe wikkednes of Jon,
Him & his fautours he cursed euerilkon,
& enterdited þis lond, þat messe was non said,
A ded man if men fond, in kirke ȝerd was non laid.

De feritate Johannis.

He was a fole of lif, & vsed lichorie,
Both maẏden & wif alle wild he ligge bie.
De Anglia interdicta & Rege excommunicato.
What did þe baronage & burgeis of Cite?
Distroied & did outrage of castelle, toun & fe.
About þei gan him chace, & hunted him als haẏre,
Long had he no space to duelle no wele fare.
Manẏ men of his kẏnde sauh him so abaued,
For him þei fauht with mẏnde, & oft so was he saued.

ALS þis wo was lastand in cursẏng perilouse,
De Rege Scottorum.
Kẏng William of Scotland did his douhter spouse
To þe erle of Boloẏn, & whan Jon it wist,
Withouten anẏ essoẏn, North alle gate him list.
Son he wan Berwik, a castelle he þouht to reise,
He cast þe groundwalle þik, his folk he þouh þer eise.
William he þouht to greue, for þat grete despite,
þat he withouten leue, his douhter gaf marite.
Edenburgh & Rokesburgh vp þat he asked quite,
& his sonne Alisandere for ostage ȝeld him tite.
Bot þe kẏng William alle þis ageẏnsaid,
In conaunt þat þei nam with pes alle was it laid.
¶ Of William has Jon þe pris, toward þe South he drouh,
& rennes oñ his enmẏs, & dos þam schame inouh,
De contumelia regis & baronum.
& his enmẏs oñ him, & destroẏed alle his fez,
Ilk one tille oþer were grim þorgh tounes and citez.
So þat holy kirke, & alle þe ordinez,
& bisshop wo he wike, & clerkes of dignitez:
þei rene þam prouendes, þorgh power þat þei haue,
& no man þam defendes, no wille þam help no sauc.

¶ Of

¶ Oft was þe pleynt mad vnto þe papė.
þe manfesours ateỳnt, & cursed ouer þe nape.
þe pape of þer erroure had fulle grete pite,
He sent to þer socoure tuo legates ouer þe sė.
At Douere þei gan ariue, Pandolf & Durand,
To London gan þei driue, þe barons þer þei fand,
þorgh Pandolf prechỳng þer werre was brouht tille ende.
þe barons & þe kỳng were mad felauhes & frendes,
Asoiled & alle on euen, bot þe kỳng an oth suore,
He suld him venge on Steuen, whider so euer he fore,
& of þo fourtene monkes, where men mot þam finde,
Be beten alle fonkes or in prison þam binde.
¶ Pandolf & Durand did com forth þe Ersbisshop, De pace per legatos.
& þe monkes forþ þei fand, Jon said, þei suld hedeles hop.
Pandolf proued þe kỳng, in his disputeson,
He maỳntend wrongfulle þing, & wild to no reson.
He proued þorh wisdam in ilk manere cas,
þat þe kỳng misnam, & did grete trespas.
Alle gate þe kỳng he pesed, so þat þe werre was ent,
& ilk a clerke sesed ageỳn to haf his rent.
Pandolf tok his leue, & to Rome went,
I trow o͞n him gan cleue manỳ riche present.
Now is Pandolf gone, & Steuen Ersbisshop es,
Assoiles kỳng Jone of alle his wikkednes.
Jon has sonnes tuo bi Elizabeth þe quene, De filiis & filiabus Regis.
& tuo douhters also, fairere were non sene.
Henrỳ was eldest, heỳre of alle his þing,
& Richard ȝongest, of Almaỳn chosen kỳng.

Isabelle fair as floure, þat neuer childe had,
Frederik þe Emperour Emperice home hir lad.
þe erle of Leycestre þe toþer weddid here,
De morte Johannis. & Jon regned in þis estre kyng auhten ȝere.
At þe abbaý of Suýnesheued þer he drank poýson,
At [1] Hauhe his lif he leued, so saý men of þat toun.
M°. ccmo° [3] XIIII°. A þousand & tuo hundred þe date was & sextene,
His týme was alle forwondred, & endid alle with tene.

Henricus tercius coronatus est. AT [2] Westmýnstere euen es Jon laid solempnelý,
þe Ersbisshop Steuen corouned his sonne Henrý,
A gode man alle his lýue, oſ pouer men had mercie,
Clerkes þat wild þrýue, auanced þam richelie:

[1] *What he says here about King John's dying at Haughe (which is in Catcworth hundred in Lincolnshire) is very remarkable, and contrary to other Historians, who make him die in the castle of Newark. But it seems Robert of Brunne (for 'tis not in the French) had it from tradition, the people of Haughe talking frequently of it in his time.*

[2] *It should be rather* Worcester, *as it is in other Historians, and indeed in the French Peter de Langtoft.* En labbeýe de Swýnheued home lenpusonaýt, Il gist a Wircestre, il memes le volait. Ore est le Reý Jon mort, e senelýe Lerceuesqe Esteuen ad coroune Henrý. Prodhome fu touz jours, des pouers aueýt mercý, Plus ama seinte Egleyse qe nul Reý deuaunt ly. Clers ke chaunterent bien sunt tost enrichý. Eglýses & prouandes ne sunt esparný, Ke Clerk de la chapele nait porcioun par mý, *in the MS. of the Heralds Office. But in one of Mr. Anstis's Copies we have,* home lem poý sonay t, Egista Wyrcestre, *and a little after,* plus ama seyntEglises, *and after that,* Eglises ne prouandres. *Which variations are not of so much consequence as those in the other of Mr. Anstis's Copies, where the whole passage is read thus:* Al Abbaýe de la Swýneheued home lenponsonait, Il

[3] *L.* XVI°.

gist

Kirkes wild he dele prouendis þat wer worþie,
To clerkes of his chapele, þat wele couþ sýng & hie.

HENRÝ kýng our prince at Westmýnster kirke
þe erlýs douhter of Prouince, þe fairest maý o lif,
Hir name is Helianore, of [1] gentille norture,
Bizond þe se þat wore was non suilk creature.
In Inglond is sche corouned þat ladý gent,
Tuo sonnes, tuo douhteres fre Jhesus has þam lent,
Edward & Edmunde, knýght gode in stoure,
Of Laicestre a stounde was Edmunde erle & floure.
Vnto þe Scottis kýng was married Margarete,
Of Bretaýn Beatrice ging þe erle had þat maýden suete.
Faire is þe werk & hie in London at Westmýnster kirke,
þat þe kýng Henrie of his tresore did wirke.
Grace God gaf him here, þis lond to kepe long space,
Sex & [2] fiftý gere withouten werre in grace;
Bot sone afterward failed him powere,
Bot his sonne Edward was his conseilere.
Our quene þat was þen dame Helianore his wife,
þe gode erle of Warenne [3] Sir Hugh was þan olife,

---

gist a Wilecester, il meme le volait.

Anno Domini M. cc. xvi.

Ore est le Ray Joh mort, et en senely Lerceueske E. steuene ad corounet Henri. Prodhome fust tuz jeurs, de pouers auait mercy, Plus ama seint eglise ke nul Rays deuaunt lý. Deus en sa chapele fu noblement seruý, Par chapelayns et clers de la reuestery. Clers ke chauntent ben sunt tost en richi. Eglises et prouendes ne sunt pas esparny, Ke clerk de la chapele nad porcioun par my.

[1] De gentyl parente *MSS. Gall.* [2] *Rectius*, fourty, *cum Codd. Gall.* [3] Sire Huge lespenser *MSS. Gall.*

Sir William of Valence, Sir Roger Mortimere,
Jon Mauncelle þe clerke, & an erle Richere,
& oþer knẏghtes inowe of bi ȝond þe se,
To þe kẏng drowe, auanced wild þei be.
Edward suffred wele, his fadere haf his wille,
þe barons neuer a dele said þe kẏng did ille,
Aliens to auaunce ouþer in lond or rent.
To mak disturbaunce þei held a parlement.
Of þe aliens ilk taile þe lond voided clere,
Of þe kẏng & his consaile þei sent a messengere.
þe [1] kẏng sent þam ageẏn, his barons alle þei grette,
At Oxenford certeẏn þe daẏ of parlement sette.

AT þis parlement rested þat distaunce,
For þer was it ent, aliens to auaunce.
þe kẏnge's state here paires, þorgh conseil of baroun,
To him & his heẏres grete disheriteson.
Of wardes & relefe þat barons of him held,
þer ne was ore of chefe, tille him no þing suld ȝeld;
& oþer þat held of þam, þer þe kẏng felle be partie,
Nouht of þat suld claẏm of all þat seignorie.
Tille ilk a lordẏng suld ward & relefe falle,
Bot tille þe kẏng no þing, he was forbarred alle.
þe kẏng perceẏued nouht of þat ilk desceit,
þe chartre was forth brouht with wittnes enseled streit.

---

[1] Le Reis les respount, [*vel*, Le Rays pur respouns] jour les fet doner, Tut drait [*vel*, droyt] a Oxenforde la parlementer, [*vel*, a Oxenford v tout parlementer,] *MSS. Gall.*

[1] Ne

[1] Ne no men þat were strange in courte suld haf no mẏght,
Ne office to do no chance withouten þe comon sight.
þis þei did him suere, als he was kẏng & knẏght,
þat oth suld he were, & maẏnten wele þat right.

THE kẏng was holden hard, þorgh þat he had suorn,
His frendes afterward, þo þat were next born,
þe com to him & said, " Sir, we se þin ille,
" þi lordschip is doun laid, & led at oþer wille.
" We se þis ilk erroure nouht þou vnderstode.
" It is a dishonoure to þe & to þi blode,
" þou has so bonden þe, þei lede þe ilk a dele.
" At þer wille salle þou be, Sir, we se it wele,
" Calle ageẏn þin oth, drede þou no manace,
" Nouþer of lefe ne loth, þi lordschip to purchace,
" þou maẏ fulle lightly haf absolutioun,
" For it was a gilerẏ, þou knew not þer tresoun.
" þou has frendis inowe in Inglond & in France,
" If þou turne to þe rowe, þei salle drede þe chance.
¶ þe kẏng listned þe sawe, at þat consail wild do,
þe barons had grete awe, whan þei wist he wild so,

Barones miserunt pro Sẏmone de [a] de" monte forti.

[1] Et qe nul estraunge en court eyt pussaunce, Ne qe le Rey saunz els de tere nul auaunce, Ne mette en baylle saunz lour ordinaunce, *in the French MS. of the Heralds Office. And so also in one of Mr. Anstis's Copies, unless it be that it hath* ey *for* eyt; *but in the other of his Copies the passage is read thus:* Ke nul alẏens en curt eust pussaunce, Si noun par assent de commun volẏaunce. Et ke la Rays apres de terres nul auaunce, Si Englays ne sait et de la nessaunce. [2] *Dele.*

þei tok & sent þer sond after Sir Sỳmoun.
þe Mountfort out of lond was, whan þis was don.
A message þei him sent, þe Mountfort son home cam,
þe barons with on assent to Sir Sỳmon þei nam.
þei teld him þe processe of alle þer comon sawe,
& he as fole alle fresse fulle eth þer to to drawe.
Withouten his conseile, or þe kỳnge's wittỳng,
To maỳnten þer tirpeile he suore ageỳn þe kỳng,
þe statute for to hold in werre & in pes,
þe poỳntes þat þei him told, þerfor his life he les.
Hardelỳ dar I saỳ he did a perte folie,
Als wỳs men þis waỳ, here ferst þe toþer partie.

De guerra inter regem & barones & de Mounfort.

SIR Sỳmon was hastif, his sonnes & þe barons
Sone þei reised strif, brent þe kỳnge's tounes,
& his castels tok, held þam in þer bandoun.
On̄ his londes þei schok, & robbed vp & doun.
þo þat þer purueiance of Oxenford not held,
With scheld & with lance fend him in þe feld.
In alle þis barette þe kỳng & Sir Sỳmon
Tille a lokỳng þam sette, of þe prince suld it be don.
An oth suore þei þare, to stand to þe ordinance,
Ouer þe se to fare bifor Philip of France,
At his dome suld it be, withoute refusỳng.
þer for went ouer þe se Sir Henrỳ our kỳng.
þe quene wild not duelle, to þe kỳng gan hir hie.
þus mỳ boke gan telle, scho tok grete vilanie
Of þe Londreis alle, whan scho of London went.
Whi þat it suld falle I ne wote what it ment;

Bot

Bot whan þe kýng of France had knowen certeýnlý,
þat þe purueiance disherite kýng Henrý,
He quassed it ilk dele þorgh jugement.
þe kýng was paied wele, & home to Inglond went.
Whan Sir Sýmon wist, þe dome ageýn þam gon,
His felonie forth thrist, samned his men ilkon,
Displaied his banere, lift vp his dragoun,
Sone salle ȝe here þe folie of Sýmoun.

THE erle did mak a chare at London þorgh gileŕý, De bello apud Leaus.
Himself þer in suld fare, & seke he wend to lý.
Sexti þousand of London armed men fulle stoute
To þe chare were fondon, to kepe it wele for doute.
þer þe bataile suld be, to Leaus þai gan þam alie,
þe kýng & his meýne were in þe priorie.
Sýmoun com to þe feld, & put vp his banere,
þe kýng schewed forth his scheld, his dragon fulle austere.
þe kýng said on hie, "*Sýmon ieo vous defie;*
Edward was hardie, þe Londres gan he ascrie.
He smote in alle þe route, & sesid him þe chare,
Disconfited alle aboute þe Londreis þat þer ware.
Edward wend wele haf fonden þe erle þer in,
Disceýued ilk a dele, he went & mýght not wýn.
Towhille Sir Edward was aboute þe chare to take,
þe kýnge's side, allas! Sýmoun did doun schake.
Unto þe kýnge's partie Edward turned tite,
þan had þe erle þe maistrie, þe kýng was disconfite.
þe soth to saý & chese, þe chare's gilerie
Did Sir Edward lese þat daý þe maistrie.

þe

þe [1] fourtend daỳ of Maỳ þe batail of Leaus was
A þousand & two hundreth sexti & foure in pas.
Rex Almanniæ captus est, [2] multi alii.
¶ þe kỳng of Almaỳn was taken to prisoun,
Of Scotlond Jon Comỳn was left in a donjoun.
þe erle of Warenne, I wote, he scaped ouer þe se,
& Sir Hugh Bigote als with þe erle fled he.
Manỳ faire ladie lese hir lord þat daỳ,
& manỳ gode bodie slaỳn at Leaus laỳ.
þe numbre non wrote, for telle þam mot no man,
Bot he þat alle wote, & alle þing ses & can.
Edward, þat was ȝing, with his owen rede,
For his fader þe kỳng himself to prison bede.
For þe kỳng of Almaỳn his neuow was ostage,
In prison nere a ȝere was Edward in cage.

---

[1] *Others say the* 12*th. of May. See Stowe's Annals, pag.* 194. *Ed. fol. But not so rightly, as I take it. See Dugdale's Baronage, Tome I. p.*408. *Rastall says in his Chronicle, that it was fought the* 23*d. of May.*—And than (*says he*) the barons with a great multytude of the citye of London | and with a great hoost of other people came agaynst the kynge—betwene whome the. xxiii. daỳ of May was fought a maruelous cruell battell at Lewys | and the Londoners that gaue the fyrst assent | by reason of the sharpe shot of Arowes & strokes gyuen by them of the kynges partes began to drawe backe.

The batell at Lewys.

But the barons incurraged theyr men in suche wyse that they nat onely set vpon them with fresshe men | but incurraged so them that gaue backe | that they turned agayne & fought so fersly that the kynges parte gaue backe | & the kyng lost the fylde. where the kyng hym selfe & the kyng of Romayns & Edwarde the kynges son were takyn prisoners & many other mo | and. xx. M. men slayne for this battell contynued the more part of the day. [2] *Præfige, &.*

Aboute

Aboute with Sir Sÿmoun þe kÿng went þat ȝere,
Cite, castelle & toun alle was in þe erle's dangere.
It was on̄ a daÿ Edward þouht a wile,
He said he wild asaÿ þer hors alle in a mile.
He asaÿed þam bi & bi, & retreied þam ilkone,
& stoned þam alle werÿ, standand stille as stone.
A suÿft stede þer was a ladÿ þider sent,
Edward knowe his pas, þe last of alle him hent,
Asaied him vp & doun, suÿftest he was of alle.
þat kept him in prisoun, Edward did him calle,
" Maister haf gode daÿ, soiorne wille no more,
" I salle ȝit, if I maÿ mÿ soiorne, trauaile sore.
þe stede he had asaied, & knew þat he was gode,
In to þe watere he straied, & passed wele þat flode.
¶ Whan Edward was ouere graciously & wele,
He hoped haf recouere at Wigemore castele.
Edward is wiselÿ of prison scaped oute,
Felaus he fond redÿ, & mad his partie stoute.
þe erle's sonnes wer hauteÿn, did manÿ folie dede,
þat teld a knÿght certeÿn to þe erle als þei boþe ȝede.

Edwardus evasit de carcere Herfordiæ; Et de evasione ejus.

THE erle ȝede on a daÿ, to playÿ him with a knÿght,
& asked him on his playÿ, " what haf I be sight?
þe knÿght ansuerd & said, " in ȝow a faute men fÿnde,
" & is an ille vpbraid, þat ȝe ere nere blynde.
þe erle said, " naÿ perde, I maÿ se right wele.
þe knÿght said, " Sir naÿ, ȝe vnneþ is anÿ dele.
" For þou has ille sonnes, foles & vnwise,
" þer dedes þou not mones, ne nouht wille þam chastise.

Ecce dictum militis ad comitem de filiis.

" I

" I rede þou gẏue gode tent, & chastise þam sone,
" For þam ȝe maẏ be schent, for vengeance is granted bone.
þe erle ansuerd nouht, he lete þat word ouer go,
No þing þer on he þouht, tille vengeance felle on þo.
Euer were his sonnes hauteỳn, & bold for þer partie,
Boþe to knẏght & sueỳn did þei vilanie.
For lefe ne for loth, folle wild þei not spare,
Wherfor wex with þam wroth Sir Gilbert of Clare.
Sir Gilbert herd saẏ of þer dedes ille,
Of non þe had aẏ to stẏnt ne hold þam stille.
þer of Edward herd saẏ, þat Gilberd turned his wille,
To Gilbert tok his waẏ, his luf to tak & tille.
Sone þei were at one, with wille at on assent
His luf fro Munfort gon Itelle Sẏmon for schent.
Treuth togidere þei plight Edward & Gilbert,
Ageỳn Sẏmon to fight, for ouht þat mot be herd.

De filiis Symonis & stultitia eorum per totum.

Mercẏ suld non haue Sẏmon no his sonnes,
No raunson suld þam saue for doute of drede eftsones.
Schent is ilk baroun, now Gilbert turnes grim,
þe Mountfort Sir Sẏmoun most affied oñ him.
" Allas! Sir Gilbert þou turned þin oth,
" At Strẏuelỳn men it herd, how God þer for was wroth.

THE erle sonnes vp & doun of parties mad þei bost,
Towhils at Northamptoun þise kẏnges gadred ost.
Sẏmon sonnes it left, to Killỳngworth þei went,
& þer þe soiorned eft, þer rioterie þam schent.
Suilk ribaudie þei led, þei gaf no tale of wham,
Towhils Sir Edward had seisid alle Euesham.

¶ þe

De bello de Euesham per totum lege.

¶ þe fift daẏ it was after Lammesse tide,
& writen is in þat pas, at Euesham gan þei ride.
In þe alder next þat þe bataile was of Leaus,
þe gẏnnẏng of heruest, as þe storẏ scheawes,
Com Sẏmon to feld, & þat was maugre his,
Or euer he lift his scheld, his wist it ȝed amẏs.
He was on his stede, displaied his banere,
He sauh þat treson ȝede, doun went his powere.
He sauh Sir Edward ride, batailed him ageẏn,
Gloucestre þe toþer side, þan wist þe erle certeẏn,
His side suld doun falle, tille his he said sone:
" God haf our saules alle, our daẏes ere alle done,
Edward first in rode, & perced alle þe pres.
þo þat him abode þer lẏues alle þei les.
He mad his fader quite of prison þer he laẏ,
Deliuerd him als tite with dẏnt of suerd þat daẏ.
Hard was þat bataile, & ouer grete þe folie,
So scharply gan þai assaile, so mykille folk gan die.
Stoutly was þat stoure, long lastand þat fight,
þe daẏ lost his coloure, & mirk was as þe nẏght.
þe lif of manẏ man þat ilk daẏ was lorn,
þo þat it first bigan wrotherhaile wer þei born.

NOW is þe bataile smẏten, Sir Sẏmon is þer slaẏn,
His sonnes, als ȝe witen, died on þat plaẏn.
His membres of þei schare, & bare þam to present
Sir Hugh Despenser, þare als he to dede went.
Sir Rauf þe gode Basset did þer his endẏng,
Sir Pers of Mountfort fet his dede at þat samenẏng.

Sir

Sir Guy Baliol died þore a ȝong knyght & hardy,
He was pleyned more þan oþer tuenty.
þise & many mo died in þat stoure,
þe kyng may sauely go, & maynten his honour.
Pris þan has þe sonne, þe fadere maistrie,
þer went Northampton, so wild kyng Henrie.

De parliamento apud Northamptoniam.

AT þe parlement was flemed barons fele,
þe countas of Leicestre, hir sonnes wild no man spele.
Oþer lordes inowe of erles & barouns,
To þe wod som drowe, & som left in prisouns.
To say longly or schorte, alle armes bare.
[1] Almerik or Mountfort depriued was þare,
& þe tresorie, þat he had in kepyng,
& gaf þat ilk bailie tor þe Mortimere sonne ȝing.

De Octobono legato.

¶ A legate Ottobon þe pape hider sent,
To mak þe barons on þorgh his prechement.
þe quene com out of France, & with hir alle þo,
þat for þe purueiance were exild to go,
Saue Jon þe Maunselle, he died bigond þe se,
Als chance for him felle, þe toþer welcom be.

A°. M°. cemo. LXVI°.

¶ A thousand & tuo hundred, & sex & sexti,
þat þat er fled & sundred þo rise ageyn Henri.
For after þe takyng of Kilyngworth castelle,
þe flemed ageyn þe kyng ros eft fulle rebelle.

---

[1] Emerike de Mountfort sloqes fu pryuez De la tresorye, dount fust estallez En leglyse Seint Pere, de Euerwik nomez, Als fiz le Mortymer le Rey lad donez, *MSS. Gall.*

For

For þe men þat were fled disherited of þer londes,
To purches þam þei sped, now ilk of þam so fondes.
Robert of Ferers he robbed boþe & slouh
Bi nẏght in stede sers, & tille his felawes drouh.
Of þam was þer non þat lufed kẏng Henrẏ,
To Chestrefeld ilkon þe com vngratiouslẏ.
þe kẏng did þam spie with gode men of renoun,
Com oñ þam priuelie, assailed þam in þe toun.
þe barons fauht ageẏn, þei wist of no socoure,
Manẏ of þam wer slaẏn, & som passed at honour.
þat was þe gode Deẏuile, he did wele his deuere,
þat stoure he held a while, & passed quite & clere.
¶ In þe monẏng eft bigan a new stoure,
Robert Ferers þer left, Baudewyn þe vauasoure
Lord of Chestrefeld, þise mẏght not lightly fle.
þer side alle doun held, taken were þer meẏne.
Robert Wollerton, I trowe for som trespas,
He had grete renoun, on Kene hanged he was.
¶ þis douhtẏ Deẏuile his name was Sir Jon,
Of Axholm to þe Ile he scaped himself alon.
For to robbe & reue, þer he held his haunt,
He wild spare ne leue burgeis no merchaunt.
& whan he dred him ouht, for ouercomẏng of mo
Toward þe South he souht, als he were non of þo,
Bot as a passand man, felawes forto seke,
So often awaẏ he wan, & vmwhile cheke bi cheke.
þus did þe Deẏuile more þan haf a ȝere,
& gadred him þat while inouh of powere.

¶ Whan

¶ Whan þei wer inowe, on whilk þei mot afie,
To Lyncoln þei drowe, & þer þei suld relie.
þe tuelft daỳ of Aprile, whan þer powere was grete,
& went alle at o wile, in to Lyncoln þei schete.
þorghout þe Jueryˇ þei robbed þam & slouh,
þe cofres with tresoryˇ þe braken & þe aweỳ drouh.
þe chartres & þe scris þat noied Cristen men,
þat laỳ for vsure in pris elleuen als for ten,
Were casten in fire & brent in podels vilaỳnlỳ,
Of Jues slaỳn & schent a hundred & sextỳ.

De rapacitate Judeismi apud Lincoliniam.

¶ Whan Sir Edward herd, þat þei had Lỳncoln taken,
& þe Juerie misferd, þer tresorie ouerschaken,
He sped him þider in haste, with hilled hors of pris,
He com & fond alle waste, awaỳ were þo enmỳs,
þei went to þe ilde of Helỳ vnto Sir Hugh Pecche,
þei manned þam so boldelỳ, on þam had non entre.
Edward lete not wele, þat he with þam not mette,
To Kilỳngworth castele he went, þe sege to sette.
Fro Midsomeretide to þe Apostle S. Thomas
þe fled maỳntend þer side, þe castelle holden was.
For alle þat þider went, Sir Edward & ilkon,
Untille þe pape sent his legate Ottobon.
Whan þis legate was comen, of som he was bisouht,
In forward out þei nomen, els wild þei nouht.
Sir Henrỳ of Hastỳng he ȝald it bi his wille,
Ouer alle maner þing life & lymmes haf stille,
& alle þer tresorie, þat þerin was fonden,
Withouten vilenie vnto þe pes bonden.

þis

þis legate Ottobone mad a cursyng hard
Of þam euerilkone, þat brak þat afterward;
& som of þer heyres so hard charged wore,
& ȝit many it peyres, & som has satled sore.
¶ þan went þis Ottobone þorghout þe cuntre,
& quaynted him with ilkone, lewed & ordine,
& many of þam wer mendid of folies þorgh his dome,
& he þe better spendid als he went to Rome.

SIR Edward vnto þe ilde he went of Hely,
With many man fulle wilde to bataile redy.
Edward alle aboute he spied in to ride,
With in had þei no doute, defendid on ilk side.
So ageyn Edward þei held it half a ȝere,
þei sauh þe sege so hard, þei sent a messengere,
þei ilde forto ȝelde at his owen biddyng,
If he þam saue wilde ageyn Henry our kyng.
Edward was curteys, & man fulle of mercy,
With hors & herneys he went to kyng Henry.
¶ Right in alle þis fare wex an euel chek,
Ageyn Gilbert of Clare þe kyng was in contek.
Sir Edward was witnes, whi þe wrath suld be,
Bot ȝit to me it es forsoth als priuete.
þe men þat were in þe ilde of þis contek herd,
þe conseiled þam a while, & siþen to London ferd
To Gilbert of Clare, & mayntend his powere.
With him bileft þei þare a quarter of a ȝere.
Men in hert it kast, þat were of gode avis,
It myght not long last suilk werre & partis.

þe partis conseile hent, messengers þei ches,
Unto þe kyng þei sent, for a finalle pes.
At þe last right nede, pesed behoued it be,
So þat ilk man ȝede with pes to his cuntre.

EDWARD als so quik toward þe North him sped,
þe castelle of Alnewik he tok, & with him led
þe gode lord Vescy, þat was so trew a knyght,
To kepe þat seignory he tok tille on þat myght.
Sir Edward com to London, þer was his fader Henry.
On̄knes he felle to grounde, & praied for the Vescy.
þe kyng was fulle curteis, forgaf him ilk a dele,
þe lord of Kilyngworth als þat tyme sped wele.
His body did þe saue withouten prisoun,
His londes forto haue, he gaf þe kyng raunson.
¶ Right als þis werre was ent, & þe lond in state,
þe pape his bulle sent hider vnto þe legate,
& comanded him to preche þorgh alle þe lond,
þe Sarazins do grete wreche, þe Cristen for to schond.
Unto þe kyng of France was sent an oþer legate,
þat teld him of þat chance, whan Lowys herd of þat,
Himself þe first was croised on̄ his flessh.
Forto wend þat pas, his wille was euer fressh.
Sir Henry of þis lond was þat ilk wille,
His sonne þer to him bond, his fader mot leue stille.
Sir Edward toke þe croice, for his fader to go,
Jhesu þou grant him voice, to venge him̄ on þi fo.
Anno M°. CC^mo. LXX°. A þousand tuo hundred mo, & sexti & ten,
Sir Edward forto go he gadres him douhty men.

The

THE next Letenes tide Sir Lowys went his way,
No langere wild he bide, for þing þat men mot say,
With erles & barouns, with knyghtes gode of plight,
Als suilk prince of renoun felle to haf þorgh right.
He hied him fulle ȝare toward þe Grekis se,
þank God his gode fare, whan he schipped suld be.
Withouten any hime þe wynde gan him driue
Untille þe lond of [1] time, & þer he gan vp ariue.
þe Sarazins to destroie fulle nobilly he gan,
þe Cristendam mot it noie þe dede of suilk a man.
[2] Long dured he nouht, siþen he comen was,
Bot þat God wille haf wrouht els his dede, allas!

THE next heruest folowand Edward was fulle ȝare,
Bi Rome he went þat land, with þe pape spak he þare.
Siþen in Cezile alle þe wyntere he lay,
þe somer com in a while, & he went on his way,
In þe se sailand to [3] time, & whan he com to lond
Tiþing com him vntime, Sir Lowys dede he fond.
þer duelled he no more, tille Acres went our kyng,
þe Cristen þat þer wore wer fayn of his comyng.
Grete folk of Frisland, þat to Acres were comen,
Tille him þei were willand, for lord þei alle him nomen.
þe oste was sprede fulle wide, about Acres þat lay,
Alle paemie þat tide was in grete affray.

Iter arripuit versus terram sanctam.

[1] *Sic MS. Rectius*, Tune, (*i.e.* Tunes, *sive* Thounes, *ut in Codd. Gall.*) [2] Mout fu grant damage, qe viuer ne poayt, Mort le prist, allas! sa vie terminayt, *MSS. Gall.* [3] *Sic etiam & hoc loco MS. nostr. Angl. at* Tune *potius legend. Nam.* Tunes *sive* Tounes *in Codd. Gall.*

Of men of armes bold þe numbre þei ame,
A thousand & tuo hundred told of Cristen men bi name.
[1] þe lond þei suld haf wonne þorgh powere þat þei had,
Bot if treson had gonne, & þorgh disceit bien lad.
Mỳkelle was þe drede þorgh out paemie,
þat Cristendam at nede mot haf suilk cheualrie.
þe Soudan was in wehere þe Cristen had suilk oste,
Sir Edwarde's powere ouer alle he dred moste,
þerfor daỳ & nỳght he was in grete studie,
On̄ what manere he mỳght Edward slo þorgh spie.

De haut assise,[2] locus nobilitatis inter Saracenos, ubi custodiuntur pueri cum gaudio, nec metuunt mortem, sed æstimant semper vivere.

THER es a stede of wynne, þei calle it *haut assise*,
Men norise childre þer inne, on merveilous wise,
Euer in joỳ & blisse, in alle þat þei maỳ do,
þei wene it salle neuer misse, ne oþer dede com to.
þei faire right als dos foles, þei do as men þam saỳ,
þe childir of þo scoles, þei þink to lỳue aỳ.
þe Soudan of þo in cloþes of gold him clad,
Tille Edward suld he go, & do as þe Soudan bad.
A letter þis fole tok, bad him for nessh or hard
þeron suld no man̄ loke, bot onlỳ Sir Edward.
Envenomed knỳfe he bare also priuely,
þat non þer of were ware, who so stod him bỳ.
Bi þam self alone in chambir suld þei be,
So bad þe Soudone schewe him his priuete.

---

[1] La tere fu lour waỳne par poer saunz desceit, Ne fust la meschaunce, qe les encombrayt, *Gallice*. [2] *Sic*.

" &

" & whan þou sees leỳsere, þat he ne perceỳue þi witte,
" With þe knỳf him [1] to with þe knỳfe him to smite.
¶ Comen is þe Sarazin to speke with Sir Edward,
Clad in cloþes fỳn, himself is a mosard.
He said he wild speke with þe kỳng priuelỳ,
Conseile non to breke, no telle it alle on̄ hy.
Sir Edward granted wele, tille his chambre him brouht,
Of treson neuer a dele, no þing þer on he þouht.
þe letter in his hand laid, enselid & in silke bounde,
þe envenomed knỳfe out braid, & gaf Edward a wounde.
To, I wene, he lauht, als his Romance sais,
A trestille Edward rauht, þat heuỳ was of pais.
þe Sarazin so he smote in þe hede with þat treste,
þat braỳn & blode alle hote & izen alle out gan brest.

De vulneracione Edwardi.

NOW for Edward woundes þe Cristen ere sori,
þat with in fo stoundes ere chances fallen selli.
His surgien him tolde, if he suld him saue,
& his lif holde, reste behoued him haue.
þat was a mischance, þat þer hede doun laỳ,
& þe kỳng of France died þat oþer daỳ.
A noþer zit more stark, þe pape þat tỳme was dede,
& þe patriark þe legate liggis in lede.
þe kỳng of Nauer hight his help to Sir Edward,
In Cecile þe dede him dight, als he was þiderward.
[2] To God his fader foundes mad his testament,
Sir Edward of his woundes was in grete tourment.

---

[1] *Sic cum spatio. quodnam vero verbum desit vernaculum.* | *è Gallicis non colligo.* [2] Sire Edward par ses playes est en grant

After þe Martỳnmesse þat he died here,
He regned more ne lesse þan sex & fiftỳ ȝere.
At Westmỳnstere he lis toumbed richelỳ,
In a marble bis of him is mad storỳ.
Sen þat he was dede God has schewed his life.
Edward with his rede in his lyue tok a wife,
þe kỳnge's douhter of Spaỳn da Helianore fulle ȝing.
Of hir fairhede was faỳn Edward our ȝong kỳng.
In Acres of hir is born a maỳden childe dame Jone,
Was non fairer biforn of Inglis als scho one.

Anno. M°. CCmo. LXXII°.

A þousand & tuo hundred þe date sexti & tuelue
Sir Edward help is sundred, o lỳue is bot him selue.
¶ þe daỳ of Saỳnt Edmound, þat martir [1] is & kỳng,

De morte Henrici Regis tertii.

Sir Henrỳ at Londoun in God mad his endỳng.
þat tỳme his sonne Edward was in paemie,
His chance felle þer so hard, þat home behoued him hie.
For alle his help was dede, als I said beforn,
þis lond behoued haf hede, his heritage in born.
þe date of Criste pundred, þes fele ȝeres to mene
A þousand & tuo hundred sexti & fourtene.

Anno. M°. CC°. LXXIII°.

grant torment, Le Reỳ Henry son pere ad fet soun testament. Apres le seint Martỳn kaunt Maladỳe luỳ prent, L. &. vi. annz fu Reis enterement. Il gist a Wemonstere en toumbe [*vel* en toumbez] richement, Sachez ke dieu [*vel* deus] pur ly ouer apertement, *MSS. Gall.*

[1] *This is the* 20*th. of Nov.* *but then others (among whom is Rastall) observe, that he died on the day of Saint Edmund archbishop of Canterbury, which is the* 16*th. of that Month, and this I look upon as the truest account, notwithstanding the former is followed (through mistake) by Dr. Brady, contrary to his own Author Matthew Paris.*

¶ IN

Printed by Mercier and Chervet,
No. 32, Little Bartholomew Close, London.

2839 1